





MEMORANDA

THE  
**A J A X**  
FILE FOLDER

No. 1 Extra Heavy

MADE IN CANADA



PART C.



SECRET



### PART C.

The information that is contained in this section of the book, is associated with six great units of the British Commonwealth of Nations. They are...The Dominion of Canada, The Union of South Africa, India and Pakistan...and...Ceylon, The Commonwealth of Australia, The Dominion of New Zealand, and Ireland.

The geographical distribution of these units is such that they are widely separated from each other by the three great oceans of the world. They are associated with a number of continents, and hold positions of importance in the Empire.

Each unit represents a "Stage" which has its own stage-setting in its geography. This includes its position, its surface features, its climatic conditions, its scenery, its physical and political divisions, and its industries and products.

Throughout the ages the players have been quite numerous, and they had golden opportunities to present their plays. The native people played their parts during early times and even in modern times. The early explorers and settlers established foundations upon which those who followed were able to build. The later settlers helped to establish the commercial, industrial, and political importance of the regions in which they lived, and contributed a great deal toward making them successful.

The various units mentioned above passed through various stages in their political development. They were Crown Colonies that were administered by the Colonial Office in the Imperial Parliament. Later they were granted Responsible Government, and still later, when it was felt that they were ready to assume the responsibility of looking after their own affairs, they were granted Dominion Status.















THE GREAT DOMINIONS

AND

IRELAND







THE DOMINION OF CANADA.



THE DOMINION OF CANADA.



## CONTENTS.

### THE DOMINION OF CANADA.

#### North America (General)

##### Canada (Geography)

The Physical Divisions.

Climate.

The Early People (Brief)

The Political Divisions.

The Industries and Products.

The Railroads.

The Canals.

Exploration (Brief)

Natural Resources.

##### Canada (History)

The Native People (History)

Exploration.

The French Period 1608-1763.

The Early English Period 1763-1812.

The English Period 1812-1867.

The Growth of Canada from 1867 to the Present.

The Wars and Rebellions associated with Canadian History.

The Fur-traders and Fur-trading Companies.

The Establishment of Settlements, Immigration and Colonization.

The Struggle for Responsible Government.

Confederation and the Growth of Canada.

The International Relationships that have existed between Canada and the United States.

Canada and the Mother Country.

Canada and the Second World War.

The Army. (General Notes)

The Air Force.

The Navy.

The Home Front.

The People of Canada.

The Origin of Place Names in Canada.

Education.



CONTENTS.

THE DOMINION OF CANADA.

North America (General)

Canada (Geography)  
The Physical Divisions.  
Climate.  
The Early People (Brief)  
The Political Divisions.  
The Industries and Products.  
The Railroads.  
The Dominion.  
Exploration (Brief)  
Natural Resources.

Canada (History)

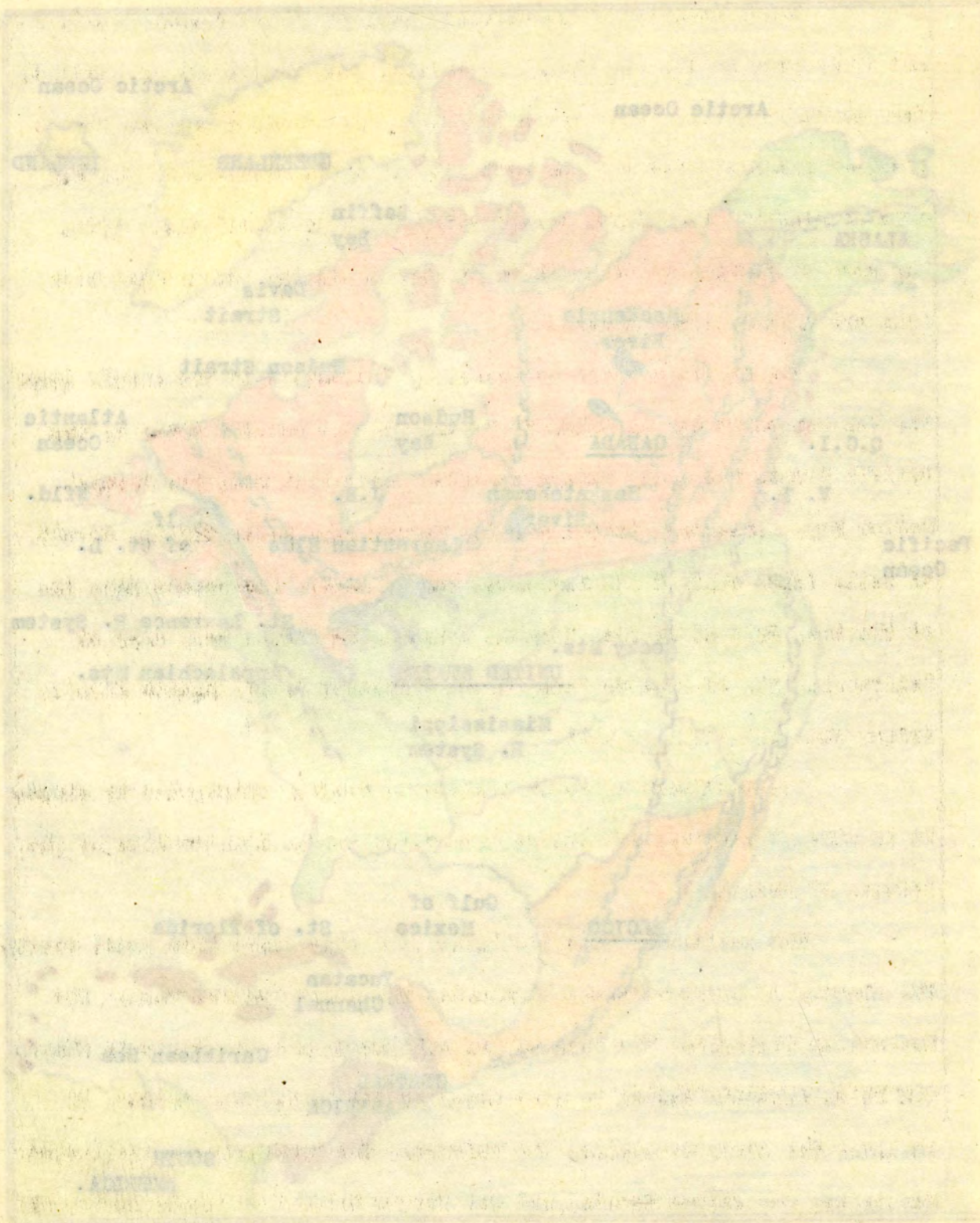
The Native People (History)  
Exploration.  
The French Period 1535-1763.  
The Early English Period 1482-1812.  
The English Period 1812-1867.  
The Growth of Canada from 1867 to the Present.  
The Wars and Rebellions associated with Canadian History.  
The Fur-traders and Fur-trading Companies.  
The Establishment of Settlements, Immigration and Colonization.  
The Struggle for Responsible Government.  
Confederation and the Growth of Canada.  
The International Relationships that have existed between Canada and the United States.  
Canada and the Mother Country.  
Canada and the Second World War.  
The Army. (General Notes)  
The Air Force.  
The Navy.  
The Home Front.  
The People of Canada.  
The Origin of Place Names in Canada.  
Bibliography.



NORTH AMERICA (GENERAL)









## NORTH AMERICA...(GENERAL)

North America is the northern part of the western hemisphere, and forms part of the New World. It extends over 70 degrees of latitude from north to south. This represents about five-thousand miles. The greatest distance from east to west is over three-thousand miles. The area is roughly ten-million square miles. This is almost three times the area of Europe. It ranks third in size among the continents, with Asia and Africa being larger.

The northern shore is washed by the waters of the Arctic Ocean; the eastern shore by the Atlantic Ocean, and the western shore by the Pacific Ocean. The coast waters include....Beaufort Sea, Fox Channel, Hudson Bay, James Bay, Hudson Strait, Baffin Bay, Davis Strait, Strait of Belle Isle, Gulf of St. Lawrence, Bay of Fundy, Chesapeake Bay, St. of Florida, Gulf of Mexico, Yucatan Channel, Caribbean Sea, Gulf of California, St. of Juan de Fuca, Queen Charlotte Sound, Hecate Strait, Bering Sea, and Bering Strait.

The continent of North America is roughly triangular in shape. It is wide at the top, and tapers toward the south. This section is the Isthmus of Panama.

The surface of this continent is divided into five great areas:- The western or Rocky Mountain Highlands; The great Central Plain; The Laurentian Highlands; The Appalachian Highlands, and the Atlantic Slope. The Rocky Mountain System is also known as the Cordillera System. It includes the Rocky Mountains, the Selkirks, the Coast Range, the Cascade Mountains, the Sierra Nevada, and the Sierra Madre Mountains. It extends from Alaska to the Isthmus of Panama. The Great Central Plain extends



NORTH AMERICA... (GENERAL)

North America is the northern part of the western hemisphere, and forms part of the New World. It extends over 70 degrees of latitude from north to south. This represents about five thousand miles. The greatest distance from east to west is over three thousand miles. The area is roughly ten million square miles. This is almost three times the area of Europe. It ranks third in size among the continents, with Asia and Africa being larger.

The northern shore is washed by the waters of the Arctic Ocean; the eastern shore by the Atlantic Ocean, and the western shore by the Pacific Ocean. The coast waters include... Beaufort Sea, Fox Channel, Hudson Bay, James Bay, Hudson Strait, Baffin Bay, Davis Strait, Strait of Belle Isle, Gulf of St. Lawrence, Bay of Fundy, Chesapeake Bay, St. of Florida, Gulf of Mexico, Yucatan Channel, Caribbean Sea, Gulf of California, St. of Juan de Fuca, Green Charlotte Sound, Heceta Strait, Bering Sea, and Bering Strait.

The continent of North America is roughly triangular in shape. It is wide at the top, and tapers toward the south. This section is the isthmus of Panama.

The surface of this continent is divided into five great areas: the western or Rocky Mountain Highlands; the Great Central Plain; the Laurentian Highlands; the Appalachian Highlands, and the Atlantic Slope. The Rocky Mountain System is also known as the Cordillera System. It includes the Rocky Mountains, the Selkirk, the Coast Range, the Cascade Mountains, the Sierra Nevada, and the Sierra Madre Mountains. It extends from Alaska to the Isthmus of Panama. The Great Central Plain extends



from the Arctic Ocean to the Gulf of Mexico, between the Rockies, the Laurentians and the Appalachians. The Laurentian Highlands extend from the peninsula of Labrador south-west toward the Great Lakes, and then bend to the north-west and approach the Arctic coast near Hudson Bay. The Appalachian Highlands start in the Gaspé Peninsula and extend south-west to the State of Georgia in the United States. The Atlantic Coastal Plain or Slope lies between the Appalachian Mountains and the Atlantic Ocean.

The great river systems of the continent include the St. Lawrence River System; the Mississippi River, the Saskatchewan River System, and the MacKenzie River System. In addition to these there are a number of important rivers along the west coast. These are the Colorado, Sacramento, Columbia, Fraser, and the Yukon. The river emptying into the Gulf of Mexico is the Rio Grande.

The political division of North America are Canada, the United States, Mexico, Central America, and the West Indies.

<sup>units of the Empire</sup>  
The British possessions in North America and North American Waters include Canada, Newfoundland, Bermuda, the Bahamas, Jamaica, British Honduras, Leeward Islands, and the Windward Islands, <sup>Barbados, Trinidad and Tobago.</sup>  
<sup>unit of the Empire</sup>  
The British possession that is to be considered in this section is the Dominion of Canada which forms the northern part of the continent. It is north of the United States, and extends from the Atlantic Ocean to the Pacific, and as far north as the North Pole in the Arctic Ocean. The east-west distance of the Dominion is about three-thousand miles. The eastern sea-board faces toward Europe, and the western sea-board faces toward Asia.



from the Arctic Ocean to the Gulf of Mexico, between the Rockies, the Laurentians and the Appalachians. The Laurentian Highlands extend from the peninsula of Labrador south-west toward the Great Lakes, and then bend to the north-west and approach the Arctic coast near Hudson Bay. The Appalachian Highlands start in the Gape Peninsula and extend south-west to the State of Georgia in the United States. The Atlantic Coastal Plain or Slope lies between the Appalachian Mountains and the Atlantic Ocean.

The great river systems of the continent include the St. Lawrence River System; the Mississippi River, the Saskatchewan River System, and the Mackenzie River System. In addition to these there are a number of important rivers along the west coast. These are the Colorado, Sacramento, Columbia, Fraser, and the Yukon. The river emptying into the Gulf of Mexico is the Rio Grande.

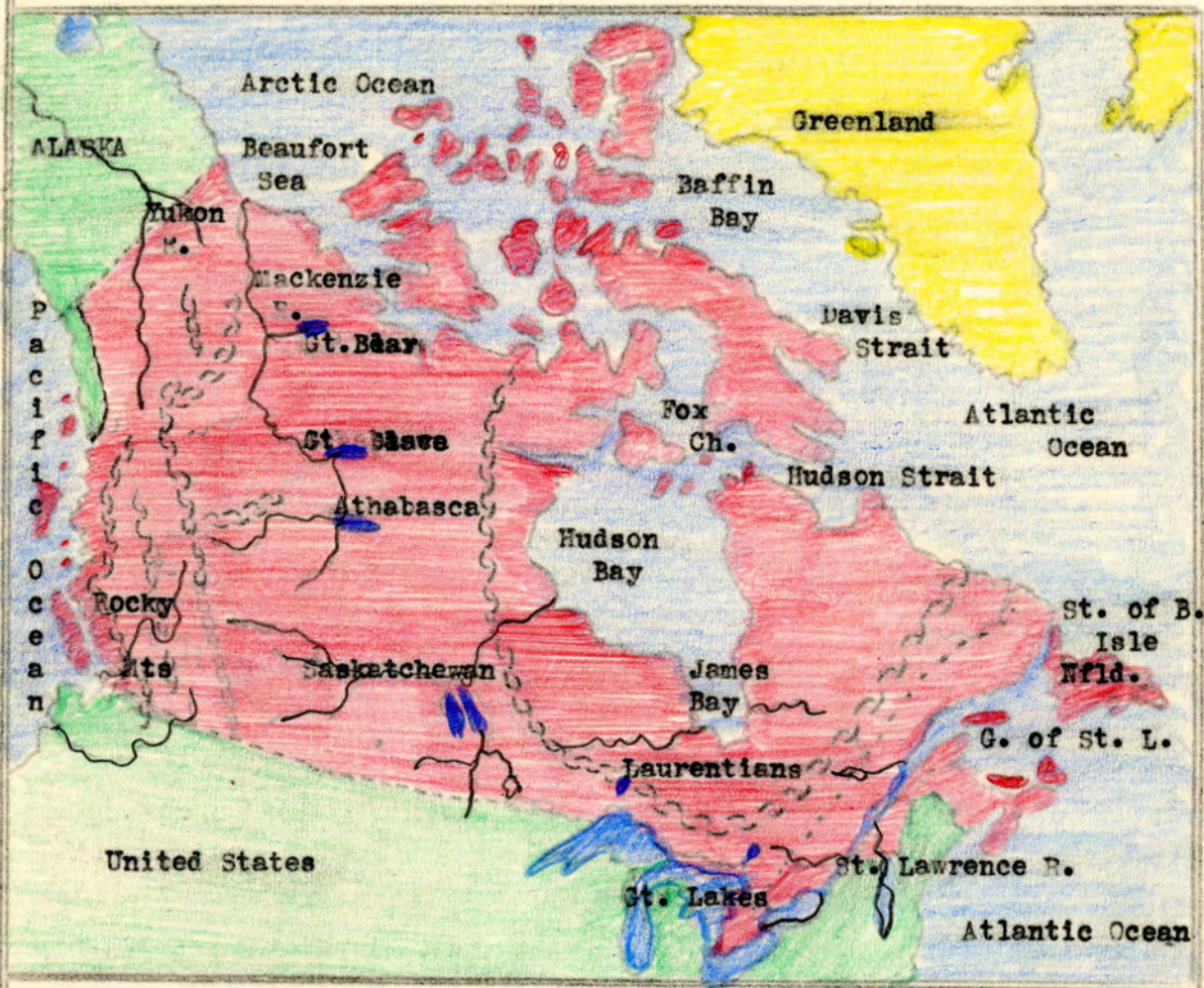
The political division of North America are Canada, the United States, Mexico, Central America, and the West Indies.

The British possessions in North America and North American islands of the Empire

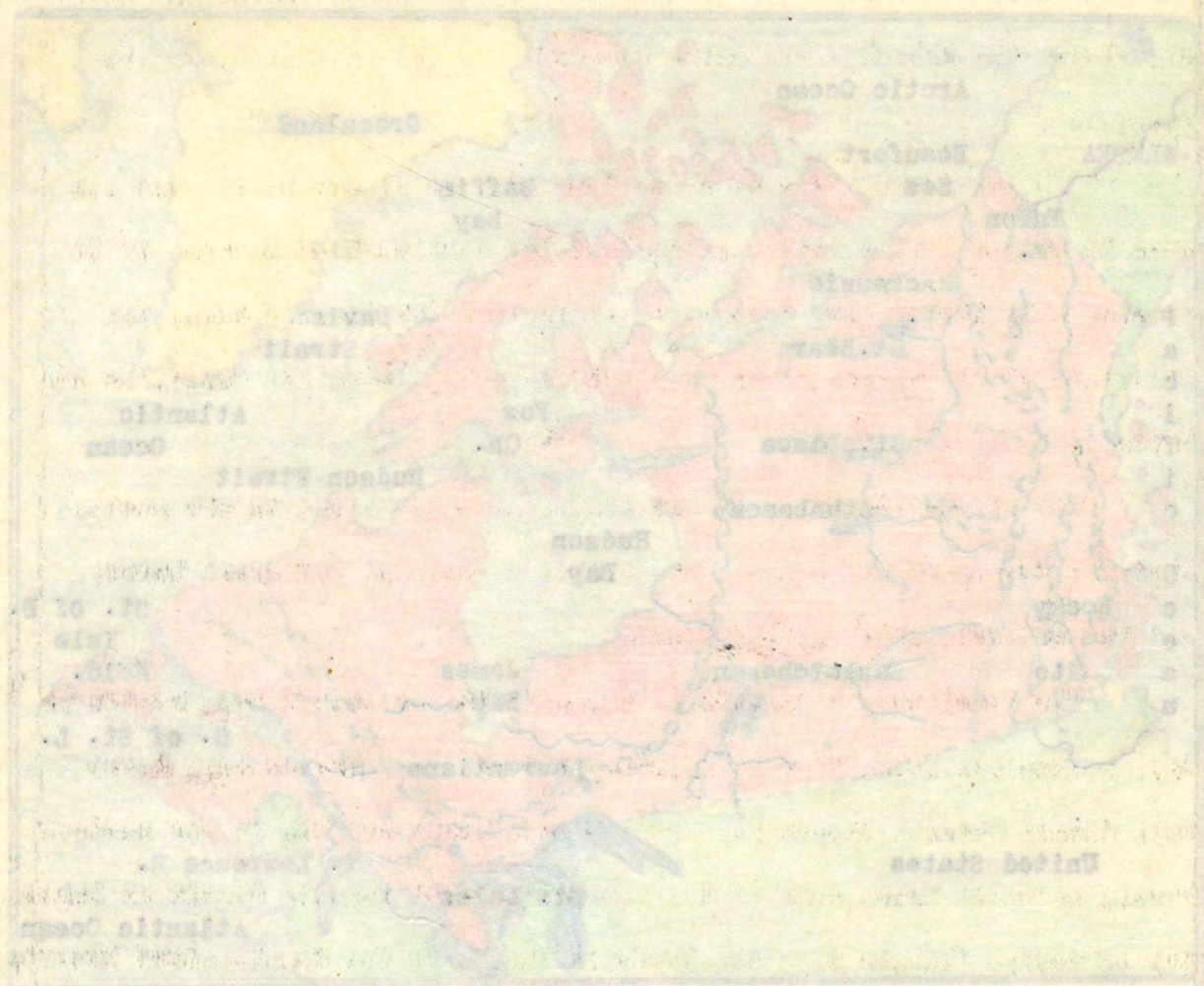
British possessions include Canada, Newfoundland, Bermuda, the Bahamas, Jamaica, British Honduras, Leeward Islands, and the Windward Islands. The British possessions that is to be considered in this section

is the Dominion of Canada which forms the northern part of the continent. It is north of the United States, and extends from the Atlantic Ocean to the Pacific, and as far north as the North Pole in the Arctic Ocean. The east-west distance of the Dominion is about three-thousand miles. The eastern sea-board faces toward Europe, and the western sea-board faces toward Asia.











## CANADA...

The Dominion of Canada is that part of North America which lies north of the United States of America, and includes all of the land except Newfoundland, Greenland, and Alaska. The Arctic Ocean washes the northern shore; the Atlantic Ocean the eastern; and the Pacific Ocean the western.

This <sup>country</sup> continent contains about four million square miles, and its area is only a trifle less than that of the continent of Europe. It is considerably larger than Australia. It ranks third in size among the countries of the world. It is surpassed only by the Soviet Republics and China.

The boundaries are...On the North...Arctic Ocean; On the East...Atlantic Ocean; On the South...The United States and the Great Lakes; and On the West...The Pacific Ocean.

The coast waters include...On the North...Beaufort Sea, Mackenzie Bay, Coronation Gulf, Gulf of Boothia, Fox Channel, Hudson Bay, James Bay, Hudson Strait, Ungava Bay, Baffin Bay, Davis Strait. On the East...Strait of Belle Isle, Gulf of St. Lawrence, Cabot Strait, Strait of Canso, Bay of Fundy, Chaleur Bay, St. Lawrence River. On the South...Lake Ontario, Niagara River, Lake Erie, Detroit River, Lake St. Clair, River St. Clair, Lake Huron, St. Mary River, Lake Superior, Pigeon River, Rainy Lake, Rainy River, Lake of the Woods. On the West....Strait of Juan de Fuca, Strait of Georgia, Queen Charlotte Sound, Hecate Strait, Dixon Entrance.

The islands near the coast of Canada are...On the North...Victoria, Banks, Southampton, Baffin, Ellesmere, and a great many others; On the East...Newfoundland, Anticosti, Prince Edward, Cape Breton; On



The Dominion of Canada is that part of North America which lies north of the United States of America, and includes all of the land except Newfoundland, Greenland, and Alaska. The Arctic Ocean washes the north-western shore; the Atlantic Ocean the eastern; and the Pacific Ocean the western.

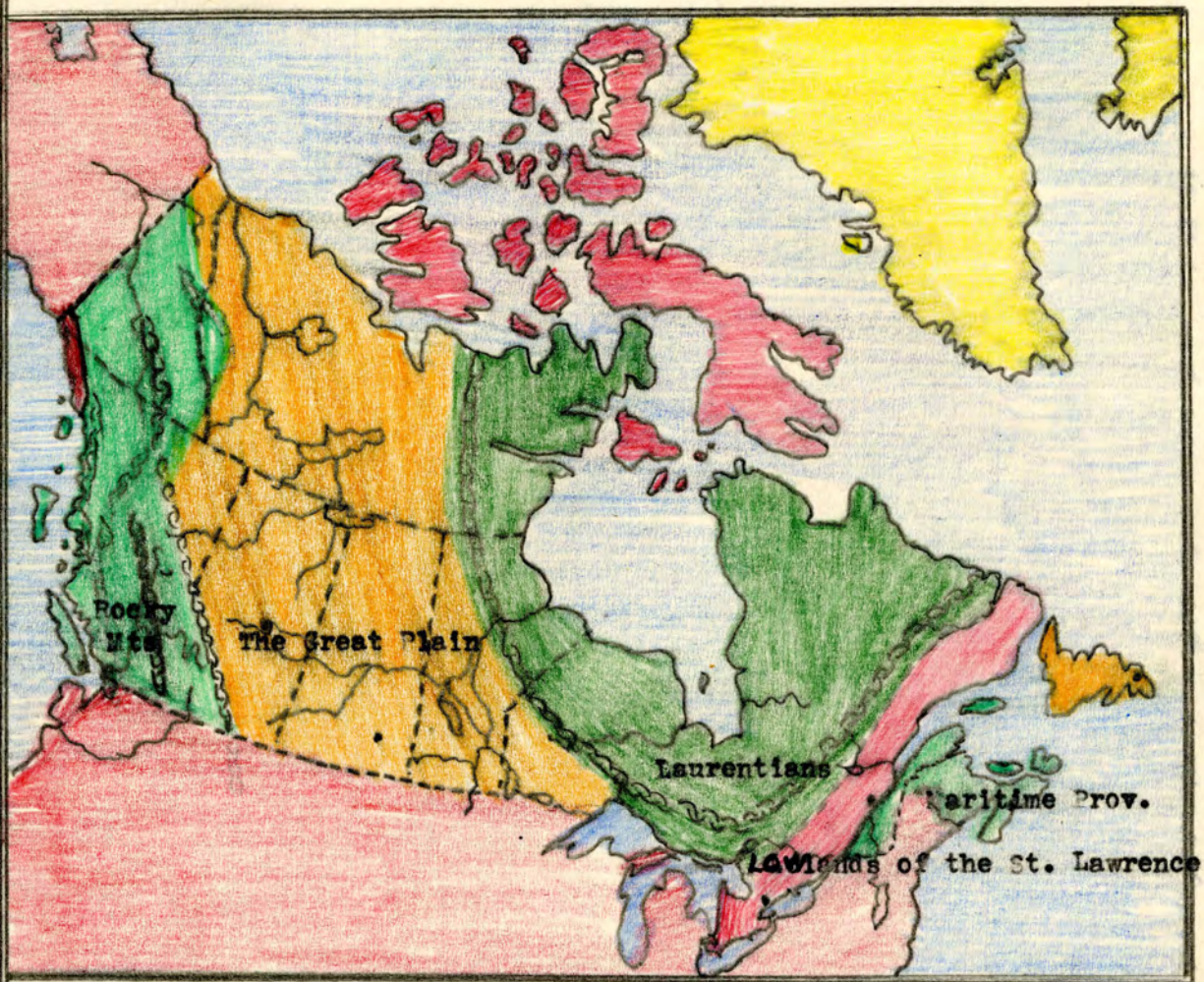
This Dominion contains about four million square miles, and its area is only a little less than that of the continent of Europe. It is considerably larger than Australia. It ranks third in size among the countries of the world. It is surpassed only by the Soviet Republic and China.

The boundaries are... On the North... Arctic Ocean; On the East... Atlantic Ocean; On the South... The United States and the Great Lakes; and on the West... The Pacific Ocean.

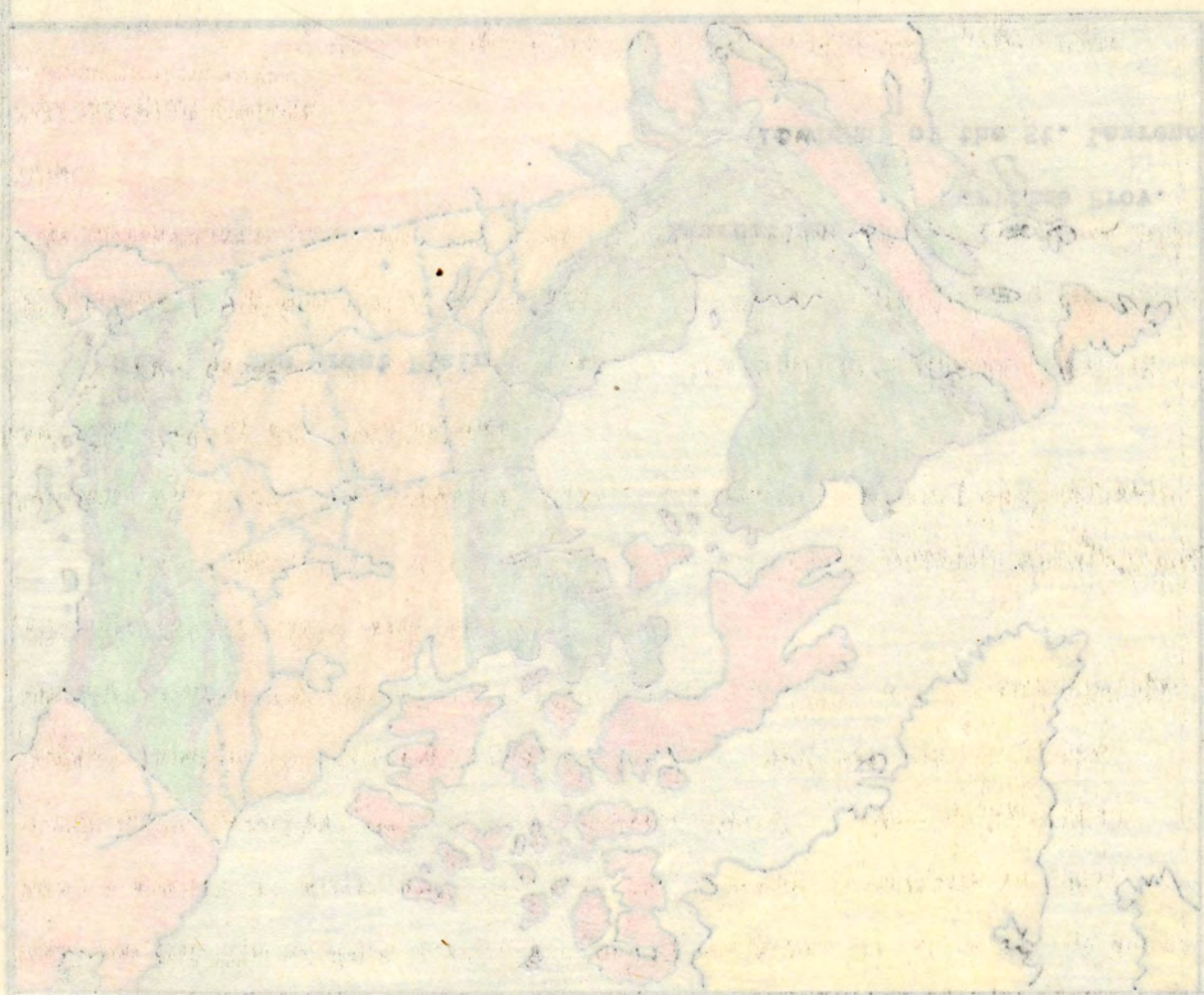
The coast waters include... On the North... Beaufort Sea, Mackenzie Bay, Coronation Gulf, Gulf of Boothia, Fox Channel, Hudson Bay, James Bay, Hudson Strait, Ungava Bay, Baffin Bay, Davis Strait. On the East... Strait of Belle Isle, Gulf of St. Lawrence, Cabot Strait, Strait of Canso, Bay of Fundy, Chaleur Bay, St. Lawrence River. On the South... Lake Ontario, Niagara River, Lake Erie, Detroit River, Lake St. Clair, River St. Clair, Lake Huron, St. Mary River, Lake Superior, Pigeon River, Rainy Lake, Rainy River, Lake of the Woods. On the West... Strait of Juan de Fuca, Strait of Georgia, Queen Charlotte Sound, Hecate Strait, Dixon Entrance.

The islands near the coast of Canada are... On the North... Victoria, Barkan, Southampton, Baffin, Kimmewat, and a great many others; On the East... Newfoundland, Anticosti, Prince Edward, Cape Breton; On











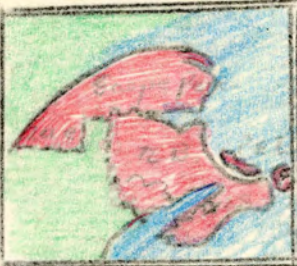
the West...Vancouver, Queen Charlotte.

The coastline of Northern Canada is quite irregular, but very little is really known about it because of the climate of the region which prevents a thorough exploration of its numerous indentations. The eastern and the western coasts are very irregular, and as a result they have a number of excellent harbours. The southern coastline is along the forty-ninth parallel of latitude from the Pacific Ocean to the Great Lakes; through the Great Lakes, and across to New Brunswick. In the eastern region the boundary dips as low as the forty-second parallel in places, but it isn't continuous.

The states along the Canadian border include...Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, New York, Pennsylvania, Ohio, Michigan, Minnesota, North Dakota, Montana, Idaho, and Washington.

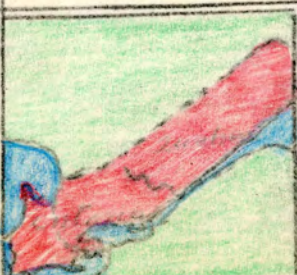
The surface of Canada is divided into five well-marked physical divisions. They are the Acadian Region, The Lowlands of the St. Lawrence, The Laurentian Highlands, The Great Central Plain, and The Rocky Mountain Area.

#### THE ACADIAN REGION:



This region embraces the Maritime Provinces...Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island... and South-eastern Quebec, the Gaspé Peninsula, and the south shore of the St. Lawrence River.

#### THE LOWLANDS OF THE ST. LAWRENCE.



This region includes part of Quebec and Ontario (old Canada). In Quebec it extends from the Laurentian Highlands to the St. Lawrence River. In Ontario it includes the broad plain stretching from Lake Ontario



the West... Vancouver, Queen Charlotte.

The coastline of Northern Canada is quite irregular, but very

little is really known about it because of the climate of the region

which prevents a thorough exploration of its numerous indentations. The

eastern and the western coasts are very irregular, and as a result they

have a number of excellent harbours. The southern coastline is along the

forty-ninth parallel of latitude from the Pacific Ocean to the Great

Lakes; through the Great Lakes, and across to New Brunswick. In the

eastern region the boundary dips as low as the forty-second parallel in

places, but it isn't continuous.

The states along the Canadian border include... Maine, New Hampshire,

Vermont, New York, Pennsylvania, Ohio, Michigan, Minnesota, North Dakota,

Montana, Idaho, and Washington.

The surface of Canada is divided into five well-marked physical

divisions. They are the Arctic Region, The Lowlands of the St. Lawrence,

The Laurentian Highlands, The Great Central Plain, and The Rocky Mountains.

Arctic.

THE ARCTIC REGION

This region embraces the Maritime Provinces... Nova

Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island...

and South-eastern Quebec, the Gaspé Peninsula, and

the south shore of the St. Lawrence River.

THE LOWLANDS OF THE ST. LAWRENCE

This region includes part of Quebec and Ontario from

Canada). In Quebec it extends from the Laurentian

Highlands to the St. Lawrence River. In Ontario it

includes the broad plain stretching from Lake Ontario





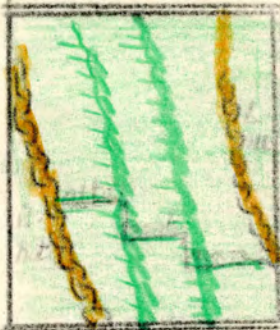
to the Laurentian Highlands, and the fertile peninsula enclosed by lakes Ontario, Erie, and Huron.

#### THE LAURENTIAN HIGHLAND REGION:



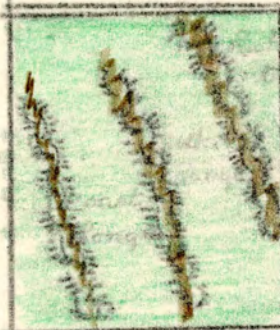
This region includes the Labrador Peninsula, and extends south-westerly toward the Great Lakes...north of these and bends toward the north-west and reaches the Arctic Ocean not far from Hudson Bay. It embraces Northern Quebec, Northern Ontario, and Northeastern Manitoba, as well as part of the Provisional District of Keewatin.

#### THE GREAT CENTRAL PLAIN:



This area lies between the Laurentian Highlands on the east and the Rocky Mountains on the west. It extends from the United States on the south to the Arctic Ocean on the north. In it there are three distinct steppe areas.

#### THE ROCKY MOUNTAIN AREA:



This region extends from the Great Central Plain to the Pacific Ocean, and from the Arctic Ocean to the United States. It is found chiefly in British Columbia. The chief mountain ranges are the Coast Range, the Selkirks, and the Rockies.

#### DRAINAGE:

The Acadian Region is drained by the Restigouche R., Mirimichi, St. Johns, and St. Francis River. The Lowlands of the St. Lawrence.... Saugenay, St. Maurice, Ottawa, Severn, French, the Great Lakes and connecting Rivers, and the St. Lawrence R. The Laurentian Highlands... Nipigon, Hamilton, Albany, Nelson, and Churchill R.

The Great Central



to the Laurentian Highlands, and the fertile peninsula  
enclosed by James Ontario, Erie, and Huron.

# THE LAURENTIAN HIGHLAND REGION:

This region includes the Labrador Peninsula, and extends  
north-westerly toward the Great Lakes... north of these  
and bends toward the north-west and reaches the Arctic  
Ocean not far from Hudson Bay. It embraces Northern  
Quebec, Northern Ontario, and Northwestern Manitoba,  
as well as part of the Provisional District of Keewatin.



# THE GREAT CENTRAL PLAIN:

This area lies between the Laurentian Highlands on the  
east and the Rocky Mountains on the west. It extends  
from the United States on the south to the Arctic Ocean  
on the north. In it there are three distinct stages



# THE ROCKY MOUNTAIN AREA:

This region extends from the Great Central Plain to  
the Pacific Ocean, and from the Arctic Ocean to the  
United States. It is found chiefly in British Columbia.  
The chief mountain ranges are the Coast Range, the  
Selkirk, and the Rockies.



The location of the Pacific Ocean is shown by the Pacific Ocean R., Kilmichael.

St. John, and St. Lawrence River. The headwaters of the St. Lawrence...

Quebec, St. Lawrence, Ottawa, Huron, French, the Great Lakes and

connecting rivers, and the St. Lawrence R. The Laurentian Highlands...

Winnipeg, Hamilton, Albany, Nelson, and Charlottetown.

The Great Central



Plain.... Red, Saskatchewan, Athabasca, Peace, Mackenzie, Slave, and Liard. The Rocky Mountain Region... Fraser-Thompson, Skeena, Stikine, and the Yukon.

CLIMATE:

The Acadian Region enjoys a Maritime climate. The rainfall is abundant, but generally the climate is moderate. The Lowlands of the St. Lawrence has a variable climate and is subject to sudden changes. Winds from various directions influence the climate of this region because there are no high mountains to protect it. Rainfall and snowfall are abundant. The winters are moderately cold and long, and the summers are quite warm. The Laurentian Highlands have a variable climate. The winters are long and cold, and the summers are short and hot. Snowfall and rainfall are abundant. The Great Central Plain has a variable climate. The eastern section has a Continental climate with great variations between winter and summer. The western section is influenced by the Chinook winds which are warm periodic winds. Toward the north the climate is more variable. The Rocky Mountain Region has a variety of climates. The southern coastal section has a very mild climate because the warm winds influence it. The interior of the country has a drier and more variable climate. The Rocky Mountain region is subject to extremes.

In general Canada is noted for its long severe winters and short hot summers. Western Canada is warmer than Eastern Canada because the prevailing winds blow over the warm waters of the Japan Current, and then over the land. The northern part of the continent has a climate that is more extreme than the southern part. The eastern part is subject to fogs during Spring because the winds blow over the warm water of the Gulf Stream and the cold waters of the Labrador current and then landward.



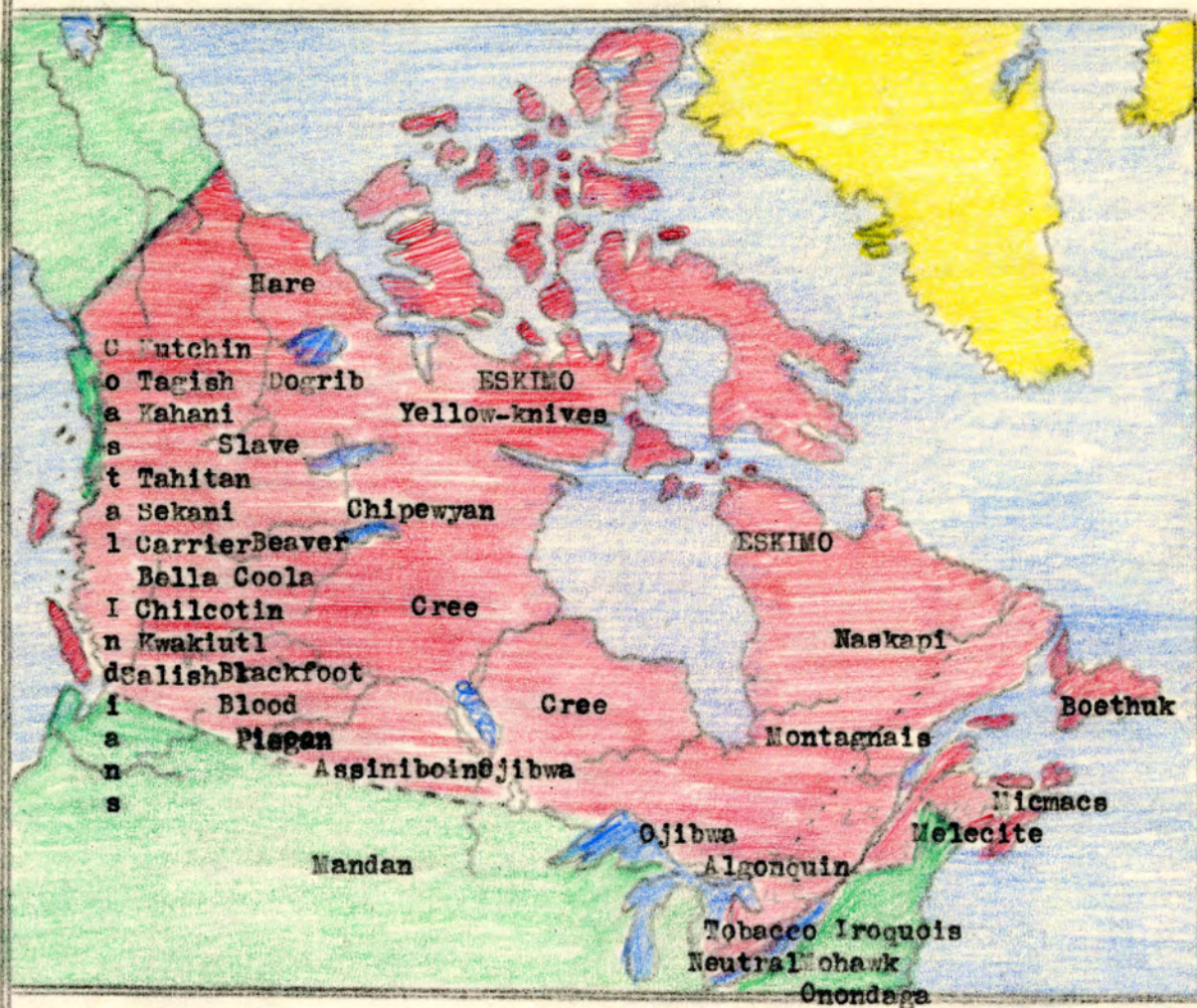
...and the Yukon.  
Island. The Rocky Mountain Region... Fraser-Thompson, Simpson, Stikine,  
...and the Yukon.

#### CLIMATE:

The Atlantic Region enjoys a Maritime climate. The rainfall is abundant, but generally the climate is moderate. The lowlands of the St. Lawrence has a variable climate and is subject to sudden changes. Winds from various directions influence the climate of this region because there are no high mountains to protect it. Rainfall and snowfall are abundant. The winters are moderately cold and long, and the summers are quite warm. The Laurentian Highlands have a variable climate. The winters are long and cold, and the summers are short and hot. Snowfall and rainfall are abundant. The Great Central Plain has a variable climate. The eastern portion has a Continental climate with great variations between winter and summer. The western section is influenced by the Chinook winds which are warm periodic winds. Toward the north the climate is more variable. The Rocky Mountain Region has a variety of climates. The southern coastal section has a very mild climate because the warm winds influence it. The interior of the country has a drier and more variable climate. The Rocky Mountain region is subject to extremes. In general Canada is noted for its long severe winters and short hot summers. Eastern Canada is warmer than Western Canada because the prevailing winds blow over the warm waters of the Japan Current, and then over the land. The northern part of the continent has a climate that is more extreme than the southern part. The eastern part is subject to fogs during spring because the winds blow over the warm water of the Gulf Stream and the cold waters of the Labrador current and then landward.



CANADA...EARLY PEOPLE....EARLY CANADA.









## CANADA...EARLY PEOPLE:

The early people of Canada were Indians and Eskimo. The Indians were divided into a number of tribes, and lived in practically all parts of the country.

### THE ATLANTIC COAST INDIANS.

- a. They were hunters and fishermen.
- b. This group included the Micmacs of Nova Scotia; the Melecite of New Brunswick; and the Naskapi of Eastern Quebec.

### THE AGRICULTURAL INDIANS OF EASTERN CANADA.

- a. They established fairly permanent habitations.
- b. They occupied the Lowlands of the St. Lawrence and extended south of the St. Lawrence River.
- c. This group included the Hurons, Neutrals, Iroquois, Onondaga, Mohawk, Montagnais, and Algonkin.

### THE NORTHERN OR WOODLAND INDIANS:

- a. They were nomadic hunters and fishermen who did not establish permanent habitations.
- b. This group included the Ojibwa, and the Crees.

### THE PLAIN INDIANS:

- a. They were nomadic Hunters.
- b. This group included the Assiniboine, Piegan, Blood, Blackfoot, Beaver, Chipewyan, Slave, Dogrib, Yellow-knives, and Hare.

### THE WEST COAST AND MOUNTAIN INDIANS:

- a. They lived in more or less permanent villages of houses made of logs and planks.
- b. This group included the Coast Salish, Interior Salish, Kootka, Haida, Kwakiutl, Chilcotin, Bella Coola, Carrier, Sekani, Tsimshian, Tsetsaut, Tahltan, Kahani, Tagish, and Kutchin.

In the History section which appears later, there is a general note in connection with "The Indians." In it the remarks are general, and apply particularly to the Indians of Eastern Canada which were living in the country during the early period of exploration, and even later because they influenced the history of the country.

For reference part of the book "The Picture Gallery of Canadian History" by C. W. Jefferys published by The Ryerson Press would add considerably to facts associated with the Early people of Canada.



consequently to these measures with the right hands of justice.

Thereby, it is a national obligation at the present time and

not otherwise, that of the book, the historic setting of situation

remains that influences the history of the country.

In the country during the early history of exploration, and even later

early development to the history of present country which were taking

in connection with the history. In the country the country, and

in the history section after various years, there is a country now

history, history, history, history, and history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.

History, history, history, history, history, history, history, history.



CANADA.....POLITICAL DIVISIONS.









CANADA....

THE POLITICAL DIVISIONS OF CANADA:

PROVINCE	CAPITAL	DATE OF ENTRY
Prince Edward Island	Charlottetown	1873
Nova Scotia	Halifax	1867
New Brunswick	Fredericton	1867
Quebec	Quebec	1867
Ontario	Toronto	1867
Manitoba	Winnipeg	1870
Saskatchewan	Regina	1905
Alberta	Edmonton	1905
British Columbia	Victoria	1871

OTTAWA is the Capital of the Dominion of Canada.

THE INDUSTRIES AND PRODUCTS OF CANADA.

INDUSTRY	PRODUCT	B.C.	ALTA.	SASK.	MAN.	ONT.	QUE.	N. B.	N.S.	P.E.I.
Farming	Grain		Alta.	Sask.	Man.	Ont.	Que.			
	Stock-r. Cattle		Alta.	Sask.	Man.	Ont.	Que.			
	Lumbering Lumber	B.C.				Ont.	Que.	N.B.		
	Fruit-gr Apples	B.C.				Ont.		N.B.	N.S.	P.E.I.
Fishing	Fish	Pacific				Gt.L.				Atlantic.
Mining	Coal	B.C.	Alta.						N.S.	
	Gold	B.C.				Ont.			N.S.	
	Silver	B.C.				Ont.	Que.			
	Iron	B.C.				Ont.		N.B.	N.S.	
	Co-Nick.					Ont.				
	Asbestos						Que.			
	Oil		Alta			Ont.				
	Salt					Ont.				
Canning	Fruit /					Ont.				
	Meats F.	B.C.				Ont.	Que.			
Manufact.	Bu. Ch.					Ont.	Que.	N.B.	N.S.	P.E.I.
	Cot. Wool					Ont.	Que.	N.B.	N.S.	P.E.I.
	Autos					Ont.	Que.			
	Furnit.					Ont.	Que.	N.B.	N.S.	P.E.I.

In addition to the Industries and Products listed above there are a number of others listed in the Geography Text-books. They should be considered, and if an outstanding Industry or product is known, it should be added to the above list.



# THE POLITICAL DIVISIONS OF CANADA:

CANADA.....

PROVINCE	CAPITAL	DATE OF ENTRY
British Columbia	Victoria	1871
Alberta	Edmonton	1905
Saskatchewan	Saskatoon	1905
Manitoba	Winnipeg	1870
Ontario	Toronto	1867
Quebec	Quebec	1867
New Brunswick	Fredericton	1867
Nova Scotia	Halifax	1867
Prince Edward Island	Charlottetown	1873

OTTAWA is the Capital of the Dominion of Canada.

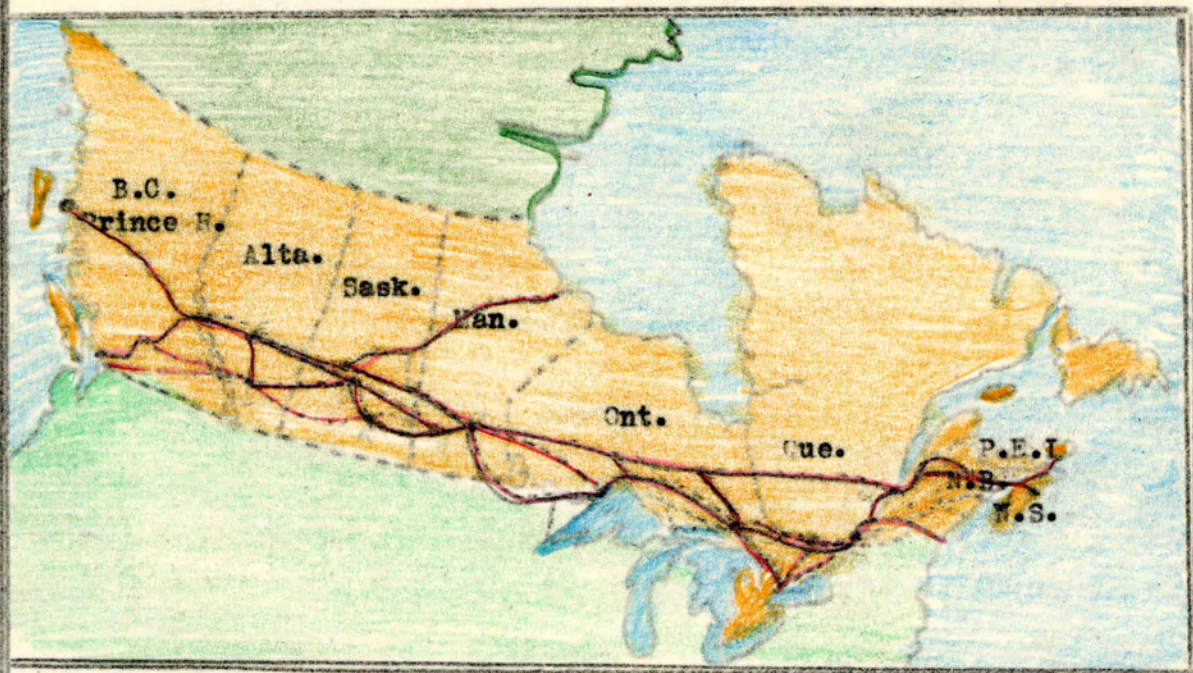
## THE INDUSTRIES AND PRODUCTS OF CANADA.

INDUSTRY	PRODUCT	N.B.	N.S.	P.E.I.	Q.B.	ONT.	MAN.	SASK.	ALTA.	B.C.
Farming	Wheat				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
Stock-raising	Cattle				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
Timbering	Lumber				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
Wool-growing	Wool				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
Fishing	Fish				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
Mineral	Coal				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
	Gold				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
	Silver				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
	Iron				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
	Co-Nickel				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
	Asbestos				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
	Oil				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
	Salt				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
Canning	Fruit				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
Manufacture	Woolen Goods				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
	Woolen Goods				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
	Woolen Goods				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.
	Woolen Goods				Que.	Ont.	Man.	Man.	Alta.	B.C.

In addition to the industries and products listed above there are a number of others listed in the Geography Text-books. They should be considered, and if an outstanding industry or product is known, it should be added to the above list.



CANADIAN RAILROADS.









## CANADA...THE RAILROADS AND CANALS:

### THE RAILROADS:

There are two great Rail-road systems in Canada. They are the Canadian National and the Canadian Pacific Railroads. The mileage of these railways is about forty thousand miles.

THE CANADIAN NATIONAL RAILROAD is operated by the Canadian Government. It includes....The Intercolonial Railroad from Halifax, Sydney, and St. John to Moncton. It serves the local traffic of the Maritime Provinces and part of Quebec; The Transcontinental from Moncton to Winnipeg; The Canadian Northern from Quebec, Montreal, and Toronto to Vancouver; The Old Grand Trunk Pacific from Winnipeg to Prince Rupert in British Columbia; The Old Grand Trunk from Portland, Maine, through southern Ontario. The mileage of this system is 22,663.

THE CANADIAN PACIFIC RAILWAY is operated by private individuals. It extends from St. John, New Brunswick, to Vancouver and has a main line that is 3,387 miles in length. Branch lines that have been added give an additional 15,885 miles.

#### *Ontario Northland Railroad*

THE TEMISKAMING AND NORTHERN ONTARIO RAILROAD extends from North Bay to Cochrane. It is a Provincial Railroad. For a number of years it was used by the Canadian National System, but it is operated under a Provincial management at present.

### THE CANALS

CANAL	LENGTH	LOCATION	REASON FOR BUILDING
Sault Ste. Marie	1m.	At Sault Ste. Marie	To overcome the Sault Rap.
Welland	26m.	Pt. Colborne to Pt. Dalhousie.	To overcome Niagara Falls.
Murray	5m.	W. of Bay of Quinte.	To make a short-cut.
St. Lawrence			
Galops.....	7m.	At Prescott.	To over-come Galops Rapid.
Rapide Plat....	4m.	At Morrisburg.	To overcome Plat Rapids.
Farran's Point.	3m.	At Morrisburg	To overcome Farran's Pt.
Cornwall.....	11m.	At Cornwall	To overcome Long Sault R.
Beauharnois....	11m.	At Valleyfield.	To overcome Coteau, Cedar,
Soulanges.....	14m.	At Coteau	and Cascade Rapids.
Lachine.....	8m.	Lachine to Montreal.	To overcome Lachine Rapid.
Ottawa Canals.			
Carillon.....	3m.	Above Carillon	To overcome Carillon Rap.
Grenville.....	5m.	Below Grenville.	To overcome Long Sault R.
Culbute.....	300ft.	W. of Allumette.	To overcome Waterfall.
x Rideau.....	126m.	Ottawa to Kingston.	To make a short-cut.
Tay.....	6m.	Perth to Lake Rideau.	To make a short-cut.
Trent Valley....	200m.	Trent R. L. Simcoe, Georgian Bay.	To make a short-cut.
Chambly	12m.	On Richelieu R.	To make a short-cut and overcome rapids.







# EXPLORATION:









## EXPLORATION:

The coastal regions of North America were explored by the Norsemen, the French, the English, and the Russians.

The Norsemen visited the north-eastern coast. The French visited the east coast in the region of the St. Lawrence River and the Gulf of St. Lawrence. The English visited Newfoundland; the eastern coast to the south of the Maritime Provinces, and the west coast from Vancouver Island to the north. The Russians visited the north-western coastal region.

The interior of the country was explored by the French, the English, and the Spanish. There was a certain amount of over-lapping in the exploration, but the combined efforts of the French and English unrolled the map of the northern part of the continent, and revealed the country which became known as the Dominion of Canada.

The chart which appears below lists some of the explorers who played a part in unrolling the map for us.

DATE	EXPLORER	FOR
985 A.D.	Bjarni	Norsemen
1000	Leif Eriksson	"
	Other Norsemen	"
1497-8	John Cabot	British
1524	Verrazano	France
1524	Amerigo Vespucci	"
1534-1542	Jacques Cartier	"
1604-1616	Samuel de Champlain	"
1607-1610	Henry Hudson	England
1632	Etienne Brule	France
1634	Jean Nicolet	"
1658-1663	Radisson and Groseilliers.	"
1669-1687	La Salle	"
1671-2	Father Albanel	"
1672-3 and Joliet	Marquette and Joliet	"
1690-92	Henry Kelsey	British
1713-43	La Verendrye	France
1770-74	Samuel Hearne	British
1778	Captain James Cook	"
1773-1852	Joseph Howse	"
1778-1793	Sir Alexander Mackenzie	"
1792-4	Captain George Vancouver	"
1776-1808-1862	Simon Fraser	"
1770-1811-1857	David Thompson	"

The Spaniards established settlements around the Gulf of Mexico, and the Russians established settlements around the north-western sea-coast of British Columbia and Alaska.



# APPENDIX

The coastal regions of North America were explored by the Norsemen, the French, the English, and the Russians.

The Norsemen visited the north-eastern coast. The French visited the east coast in the region of the St. Lawrence River and the Gulf of St. Lawrence. The English visited Newfoundland; the eastern coast to the south of the Maritime Provinces, and the west coast from Vancouver Island to the north. The Russians visited the north-western coastal region.

The interior of the country was explored by the French, the English, and the Spaniards. There was a certain amount of overlapping in the exploration, but the combined efforts of the French and English unveiled the map of the northern part of the continent, and revealed the country which became known as the Dominion of Canada.

The chart which appears below lists some of the explorers who played a part in unveiling the map for us.

DATE	EXPLORER	FOR
985 A.D.	Njarni	Norsemen
1000	Leif Eriksson	"
	Other Norsemen	"
1497-8	John Cabot	British
1498	Verrazano	France
1499	Americo Vesputi	"
1499-1500	Jacques Cartier	"
1504-1516	Gamuel de Champlain	"
1507-1510	Henry Hudson	England
1512	Etienne Brule	France
1512	Jean Nicot	"
1515-1523	Hudson and Grosvonts	"
1523-1527	La Salle	"
1571-2	Nathan Akins	"
1575-7	Bartholomew and Joliet	"
1580-2	Henry Kelsey	British
1582-4	La Verendrye	France
1590-2	Gamuel de la Roche	British
1592	Gaspard de la Roche	"
1592-1593	Joseph House	"
1593-1594	Sir Alexander Mackenzie	"
1594	Gaspard de la Roche	"
1594-1595	Simon Fraser	"
1595-1597	David Thompson	"

The Spaniards established settlements around the Gulf of Mexico, and the Russians established settlements around the north-western coast of British Columbia and Alaska.



## CANADA...NATURAL RESOURCES:

The chief natural resource of Canada is the millions of acres of fertile soil suitable for agriculture and its associated industries. Grain-growing, vegetable-growing, stock-raising, fruit-farming, and dairying are carried on in all parts of Southern Canada, and still there are a great many undeveloped sections.

The forests of Canada produce sufficient lumber-products to make this country one of the most important lumber-producing countries. It produces hard-woods and soft-woods that are valuable in a number of industries.

The mineral resources of the Dominion are enormous. No one can even estimate the real value of them because comparatively little of Canada has been thoroughly prospected. All of the leading commercial metals except tin are found. Coal is mined in Alberta, Nova Scotia, and British Columbia. Ontario possesses nine-tenths of the known nickel supply of the world. Quebec leads the world in the production of asbestos. Every year valuable discoveries are made, and soon Canada may expect to rank high among the mining countries of the world.

The fisheries of Canada are quite important, and prove a source of wealth. The fishing grounds are located close to her shores in the Atlantic and the Pacific Oceans, and in the inland lakes and rivers.

The development of the natural resources of the country has produced raw materials for manufacturing so that this industry is one of the leading ones, and has led to the establishment of a large export and import trade. For a list of the articles listed see the Geography text book on page 74.



## CANADA...THE NATIVE PEOPLE.

The early inhabitants of Canada were Indians. They were tall, with straight black hair, and high cheek-bones. They had copper-coloured skins, and they were lithe and active. Their clothing consisted of skins of animals, which were trimmed with feathers and quills. On their feet they wore moccasins of deer-skin. Some of them used only one piece of skin to make these, but others used as many as three.

They lived in tents or tepees which were made of skin or bark. Some of them lived in lodges that were made of logs. The tents were sometimes called wigwams. If the Indians were nomads, their tepees were frequently taken down and transported to a new site. Some of them lived in permanent villages and had more substantial dwellings.

Their food consisted of fish and game; fruit and nuts, and cultivated Indian Corn or maize. The agricultural Indians grew and stored corn, pumpkins, beans, tobacco, squash, and melons, but they depended on the hunt for their meat supply.

The name "Indians" was conferred on the people that <sup>Christopher Columbus</sup> he found when he landed on one of the islands of the West Indies in 1492 after sailing westward from Europe. He thought he had reached the East Indies off the coast of Asia, and since he had discovered the islands after sailing west, he named them "The West Indies" and he called the people, "Indians."

The Indians were very fond of hunting and fighting. They were proficient with the tomahawk and the bow and arrow. They were masters of wood-craft, and were fond of roving. The Hurons and the Iroquois cultivated the land to some extent, and they built some houses of wood and bark. They were fond of feasting, gambling, and dancing. They believed



The early inhabitants of Canada were Indians. They were tall,

with straight black hair, and high cheek-bones. They had copper-coloured

skins, and they were lithe and active. Their clothing consisted of skins

of animals, which were trimmed with feathers and quills. On their feet

they wore moccasins of deer-skin. Some of them used only one piece of

skin to make these, but others used as many as three.

They lived in tents or tepees which were made of skin or bark.

Some of them lived in lodges that were made of logs. The tents were

sometimes called wigwags. If the Indians were nomads, their tepees were

frequently taken down and transported to a new site. Some of them lived

in permanent villages and had more substantial dwellings.

Their food consisted of fish and game; fruit and nuts, and

cultivated Indian corn or maize. The agricultural Indians grew and

stored corn, pumpkins, beans, tobacco, squash, and melons, but they

depended on the hunt for their meat supply.

The name "Indians" was conferred on the people that we found

when he landed on one of the islands of the West Indies in 1492 after

sailing westward from Europe. He thought he had reached the East Indies

off the coast of Asia, and since he had discovered that islands after

sailing west, he named them "The West Indies," and he called the people,

"Indians."

The Indians were very fond of hunting and fighting. They were

proficient with the tomahawk and the bow and arrow. They were masters

of wood-craft, and were fond of roving. The Nations and the Iroquois

cultivated the land to some extent, and they built some houses of wood

and bark. They were fond of feasting, gambling, and dancing. They believed



that objects of nature were inhabited by spirits, and they paid great deference to the medicine-man who was supposed to understand the spirits. They were cruel to their enemies, and often tortured their captives. The squaws had to do most of the drudgery, while the men lounged around or went hunting or on the war-path.

The chief tribes associated with early Canadian History were the Micmacs of Nova Scotia; the Melecite of New Brunswick; the Iroquois of New York State; the Neutrals of South-western Ontario; the Hurons between Lake Ontario and Georgian Bay; the Algonquins of Quebec and Ontario, and the Montagnais of Quebec north of the St. Lawrence River. As time went on the white men came in contact with the Crees of Northern Ontario; the Ojibwas of western Ontario; the Assiniboines of Manitoba; the Blackfoot of the Saskatchewan River region, and Dogrib, Slave, and Hare of North-western Canada. In British Columbia there were a number of tribes of coastal and mountain Indians when the explorers visited that region.

In eastern Canada the Algonquins lived in the region extending from Lake Superior to the Atlantic Ocean. They were the least intelligent of the tribes met by the white explorers. The Hurons lived around Georgian Bay and Lake Huron. They were the most peaceful of the tribes. The Iroquois lived in New York State, and were fond of going on the war-path. This group was composed of five nations at one time, and later of six. They were the Cayugas, Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagas, Senecas, and Tuscororis.

The tools and utensils used by the Indians were stone hatchets, flint arrows, flint arrow-heads, clay pottery, bows and arrows, flint



that objects of nature were inhabited by spirits, and they paid great

deference to the medicine-men who was supposed to understand the spirits.

They were cruel to their enemies, and often tortured their captives. The

warriors had to do most of the drudgery, while the men hunted around or

went hunting or on the war-path.

The chief tribes associated with early Canadian History were

the Micmacs of Nova Scotia; the Hurons of New Brunswick; the Iroquois

of New York State; the Senecas of South-western Ontario; the Hurons

between Lake Ontario and Georgian Bay; the Algonquians of Quebec and

Ontario, and the Montagnais of Quebec north of the St. Lawrence River.

As time went on the white men came in contact with the Great Lakes of Northern

Ontario; the Shawanese of western Ontario; the Assiniboines of Manitoba;

the Blackfoot of the Saskatchewan River region, and the Dogrib, Slave, and

Hare of North-western Canada. In British Columbia there were a number

of tribes of coastal and mountain Indians when the explorers visited

that region.

In eastern Canada the Algonquians lived in the region extending

from Lake Superior to the Atlantic Ocean. They were the least intelligent

of the tribes met by the white explorers. The Hurons lived around Georgian

Bay and Lake Huron. They were the most peaceful of the tribes. The

Iroquois lived in New York State, and were fond of going on the war-

-path. This group was composed of five nations at one time, and later

of six. They were the Cayugas, Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagas, Senecas, and

Tuscaroras.

The tools and utensils used by the Indians were stone hatchets,

flint arrows, flint arrow-heads, clay pottery, bows and arrows, flint



for making fires, rude needles made of bone, and deer-sinews for thread. The Neutral Indians of South-western Ontario developed the making of arrow-heads, and throughout that region flint arrow-heads are frequently discovered as the land is being worked. Burial grounds throughout that section have shown that this art was developed to a high degree of perfection.

The Indians moved from place to place in canoes on the lakes and rivers; on foot through the forests and along the trails; and on ponies on the prairies or in the open country of Western Canada. When they went on the war-path, the eastern Indians invariably travelled on foot.

Our information about the Indians comes largely from narratives of early explorers. In addition considerable has been learned by studying the burial mounds and village sites which have been unearthed, and by reading the accounts that have been written by those who have made an intensive study of the Indians. A number of writers have recorded a wealth of information about them. A study of their writings would add considerably to our knowledge of these people.

Many of the Indians became converted to Christianity, but some of them became the victims of the vices of the white man, especially the drinking of strong liquor and gambling. The early French and English were rivals for furs and territories, and the Indians were much sought after as allies. Therefore they held the balance of power, and felt that they were very important. As the number of white people increased, the importance of the Indians decreased so that they were becoming less important. The conquest of Canada by the British meant that they were not needed as allies, and they became even less important. The Indians



for making fires, rude needles made of bone, and bear-skins for trousers. The Neutral Indians of South-western Ontario developed the making of arrow-heads, and throughout that region Flint arrow-heads are frequently discovered as the land is being worked. Butual grounds throughout that section have shown that this art was developed to a high degree of perfection.

The Indians moved from place to place in camps on the lakes and rivers; on foot through the forests and along the trails; and on ponies on the prairie or in the open country of Western Canada. When they went on the war-path, the eastern Indians invariably travelled on foot. Our information about the Indians comes largely from narratives of early explorers. In addition considerable has been learned by study of the burial mounds and village sites which have been unearthed, and by reading the accounts that have been written by those who have made an intensive study of the Indians. A number of writers have recorded a wealth of information about them. A study of their writings would add considerably to our knowledge of these people.

Many of the Indians became converted to Christianity, but some of them became the victims of the vices of the white man, especially the drinking of strong liquor and gambling. The early French and English were rivals for furs and territories, and the Indians were much sought after as allies. Therefore they held the balance of power, and felt that they were very important. As the number of white people increased, the importance of the Indians decreased so that they were becoming less important. The conquest of Canada by the British meant that they were not needed as allies, and they became even less important. The Indians



of to-day have not assimilated civilization sufficiently to hold their own in the changing world in which we live, so most of them live on reserves, and they are wards of the Dominion Government.

Research work should be done in connection with some or all of the following topics....Indian villages, Language, Domestic animals, Games and amusement, War, Burial, Government, Tribal functions, and Tribal families.

---

#### EXPLORATION:

In this section the information that is listed is very brief, but it shows the progressive exploration of the Dominion of Canada. The first explorers were Norsemen. Bjarni 985 A.D. sighted the north-eastern shore of Canada. When he returned to Greenland, he told about the low wooded shore that he had seen. Leif Eriksson, or Leif the Lucky 1000 A.D. visited Labrador, a land of flat stones; and Markland where he tried to establish a settlement. He saw the natives who were called Skraelings, and visited Vinland or Wineland, but his expeditions were unsuccessful. Other Norsemen from Greenland landed at Wineland, and tried to establish a settlement there, but the colony was a failure. The information about the Norse visits is obtained from the Sagas or historical tales of the Icelandic people. A cairn inscribed 1135 with a Norse inscription was discovered near Baffin Bay, and a stone with a Norse inscription was found in Minnesota. If this is genuine, it proves that the Norsemen visited the Western section of the country.

John Cabot 1497-8 was an Italian who explored for England. He sailed from Bristol in the Matthew, and visited the eastern shore of



of to-day have not assimilated civilization sufficiently to hold their  
own in the changing world in which we live, so most of them live on  
reserves, and they are wards of the Dominion Government.

Research work should be done in connection with some or all of  
the following topics.....Indian villages, language, domestic animals,  
games and amusements, war, burial, government, tribal functions, and  
tribal families.

#### EXPLORATION:

In this section the information that is listed is very brief,  
but it shows the progressive exploration of the Dominion of Canada.  
The first explorers were Norsemen. Bjarni 985 A.D. sighted the north-  
eastern shore of Canada. When he returned to Greenland, he told about  
the low wooded shore that he had seen. Leif Eriksson, or Leif the Lucky,  
1000 A.D. visited Labrador, a land of flat stones; and Newfoundland where  
he tried to establish a settlement. He saw the natives who were called  
Skraelings, and visited Vinland or Winland, but his expeditions were  
unsuccessful. Other Norsemen from Greenland landed at Winland, and  
tried to establish a settlement there, but the colony was a failure.  
The information about the Norse visits is obtained from the Sagas or  
historical tales of the Icelandic people. A cairn inscribed 1185 with  
a Norse inscription was discovered near Ballinbeg, and a stone with a  
Norse inscription was found in Minnesota. If this is genuine, it proves  
that the Norsemen visited the western section of the country.  
John Cabot 1497-8 was an Italian who explored for England. He  
sailed from Bristol in the Matthew, and visited the eastern shore of



Canada, probably Cape Breton Island. He claimed the land for England, sailed through Cabot Strait, and along the south shore of Newfoundland. He established England's claim to the New World.

Verrazano 1524 was an Italian who explored for France. A member of his crew was Amerigo Vespucci. He wrote an account of the voyage, and had America named after him. The expedition visited the east coast of North America, but the North-west Passage wasn't discovered.

Jacques Cartier 1534--1535-6--1541-2, was a French explorer who explored for France. He explored the St. Lawrence River System as far as Hochelaga where Montreal now stands. He established France's claim to North America, and named the country "Canada".

Samuel de Champlain 1604-5, 1609, 1613, 1615-16, was a French explorer who worked for France. He explored Lake Champlain, around Georgian Bay, and Eastern Canada. The Hurons and the Algonquins became allies of the French, and the Iroquois became their enemies.

Henry Hudson 1607, 1609, 10, 11, was a English explorer. He explored for the Muscovy Company, the Dutch East Indies Company, and for Members of the Muscovy Company. He explored north of Europe, the Hudson River, and Hudson and James Bay. His work established England's claim to Northern Canada.

Etienne Brule 1632, was a French explorer who worked for the French. He explored the territory around the Great Lakes, and from Lake Superior to Chesapeake Bay. Considerable territory was added to that which was claimed by France.

Jean Nicolet 1634, was a French explorer. He worked for the French. He explored the watershed between the Great Lakes and the



Canada, probably Cape Breton Island. He claimed the land for England.

sailed through Cabot Strait, and along the south shore of Newfoundland.

He established England's claim to the New World.

Verrazano 1494 was an Italian who explored for France. A member

of his crew was Amigo Vesputi. He wrote an account of the voyage, and

had America named after him. The expedition visited the east coast of

North America, but the North-west Passage wasn't discovered.

Jacques Cartier 1491-1557-1541-2, was a French explorer

who explored for France. He explored the St. Lawrence River system as

far as Hochelaga where Montreal now stands. He established France's

claim to North America, and named the country "Canada".

Samuel de Champlain 1584-5, 1605, 1615, 1618-16, was a French

explorer who worked for France. He explored Lake Champlain, around

Georgian Bay, and Eastern Canada. The Hurons and the Algonquians became

allies of the French, and the Iroquois became their enemies.

Henry Hudson 1607, 1609, 1611, was a English explorer. He

explored for the Dutch East India Company, the Dutch West India Company, and

for Members of the Massachusetts Company. He explored north of Europe, the

Hudson River, and Hudson and James Bay. His work established England's

claim to Northern Canada.

Kilienne Brule 1633, was a French explorer who worked for the

French. He explored the territory around the Great Lakes, and from Lake

Superior to Chesapeake Bay. Considerable territory was added to that

which was claimed by France.

Jean Nicolet 1634, was a French explorer. He worked for the

French. He explored the watershed between the Great Lakes and the



Mississippi River to the west of Lake Michigan. He helped to establish the French claim to the region.

Radisson and Groseilliers 1658-1663, 1670--were French fur-traders who worked for themselves and for the English. They explored from Lake Superior to Hudson Bay, and helped to establish the Hudson's Bay Company in 1670.

La Salle 1667-1687 was a French explorer who explored for the French. He explored the Mississippi River to its mouth in 1682. He claimed the basin of the Mississippi for France, and his claim hemmed the English along the Atlantic Sea-board.

Father Albanel 1671-4 was a French Missionary and explorer who explored for the French. He journeyed from the St. Lawrence River by way of the Saguenay River overland to Hudson Bay, and claimed the region explored for the French.

Marquette and Joliet 1671-3 worked for the French. Marquette was a French Missionary. Joliet was a French explorer. They explored the Mississippi River as far south as the Arkansas, and they established the French claim to the region more firmly.

Henry Kelsey 1690-92, was an English explorer. He worked for the Hudson's Bay Company and explored the region to the west of Lake Winnipeg. He established England's claim to that region.

La Verendrye 1730-1743 was a French soldier and explorer. He explored for the French in Western Canada and the United States. His sons journeyed as far as the foot-hills of the Rocky Mountains, and their combined efforts claimed additional land for France.

Samuel Hearne 1770-1774, was an employee of the Hudson Bay



Mississippi River to the west of Lake Michigan. He helped to establish the French claim to the region.

Radisson and Groselliers 1658-1660, 1670—were French fur traders who worked for themselves and for the English. They explored from Lake Superior to Hudson Bay, and helped to establish the Hudson's Bay Company in 1670.

La Salle 1657-1687 was a French explorer who explored for the French. He explored the Mississippi River to its mouth in 1682. He claimed the basin of the Mississippi for France, and his claim named the English along the Atlantic Sea-board.

Father Albanel 1671-4 was a French missionary and explorer who explored for the French. He journeyed from the St. Lawrence River by way of the Saguenay River overland to Hudson Bay, and claimed the region explored for the French.

Marquette and Joliet 1671-5 worked for the French. Marquette was a French missionary. Joliet was a French explorer. They explored the Mississippi River as far south as the Arkansas, and they established the French claim to the region more firmly.

Henry Kelsey 1690-92, was an English explorer. He worked for the Hudson's Bay Company and explored the region to the west of Lake Winnipeg. He established England's claim to that region.

La Verendrye 1730-1745 was a French soldier and explorer. He explored for the French in Western Canada and the United States. He journeyed as far as the foot-hills of the Rocky Mountains, and their combined efforts claimed additional land for France.

Samuel Hearne 1770-1774, was an employee of the Hudson Bay



Company. He explored part of the country west of Lake Winnipeg; and the Coppermine River region 1770-1. Considerable of our knowledge of the North-west Territories is obtained from his records.

Captain James Cook 1778 was an English navigator who sailed along the west coast of Canada. He discovered and named Cape Flattery at the entrance to the Strait of Juan de Fuca. He sailed north and stopped in a Harbour which became known as Nootka. Then he continued along the coast until he was forced to turn southward on account of the ice. He established the trade in furs with the western inhabitants.

Joseph Howse 1773-1852, was an employee of the Hudson's Bay Company. He journeyed to the west of the Rocky Mountains through Howse Pass, and established a Hudson's Bay Trading Post west of the Rockies.

Sir Alexander MacKenzie 1778, 1787, 1789, 1793, was an employee of the North West Company. He was a Scot who was interested in exploration. He journeyed from Fort Chipewyan on Lake Athabasca to the mouth of the Mackenzie River in the Arctic. He named it "The River of Disappointment" because it did not lead to the western Sea. Later he journeyed to the west, and reached the Pacific coast on July 22, 1793. As a result of his work Western Canada was claimed for the North West Company.

Captain George Vancouver 1792-1794, was an English navigator who sailed along the west coast of Canada. He charted the coast from San Francisco to Alaska, and journeyed around Vancouver Island. The Island was later named after him as a monument to his contribution to the knowledge of the western coast of North America.

Simon Fraser 1776-1862 was a n employee of the North West Company. He explored the river that now bears his name, and named the



Company. He explored part of the country west of Lake Winnipeg and the  
Coppermine River region 1770-1. Considerable of our knowledge of the  
North-west Territories is obtained from his records.

Captain James Cook 1778 was an English navigator who sailed

along the west coast of Canada. He discovered and named Cape Flattery  
at the entrance to the Strait of Juan de Fuca. He sailed north and stopped  
in a harbor which became known as Neches. Then he continued along the  
coast until he was forced to turn southward on account of the ice. He  
established the trade in furs with the western inhabitants.

Joseph Howe 1773-1852, was an employee of the Hudson's Bay

Company. He journeyed to the west of the Rocky Mountains through Horse  
Pass, and established a Hudson's Bay Trading Post west of the Rockies.

Sir Alexander Mackenzie 1776, 1787, 1789, 1795, was an employee

of the North West Company. He was a Scot who was interested in exploration.  
He journeyed from Fort Chipewyan on Lake Athabasca to the mouth of the  
Mackenzie River in the Arctic. He named it "The River of Disappointment"  
because it did not lead to the western sea. Later he journeyed to the  
west, and reached the Pacific coast on July 12, 1793. As a result of  
his work western Canada was claimed for the North West Company.

Captain George Vancouver 1791-1796, was an English navigator

who sailed along the west coast of Canada. He charted the coast from  
San Francisco to Alaska, and journeyed around Vancouver Island. The  
Island was later named after him as a monument to his contribution to  
the knowledge of the western coast of North America.

Simon Fraser 1776-1862 was a employee of the North West

Company. He explored the river that now bears his name, and named the



the country, "New Caledonia."

David Thompson 1770-1857, was a Welsh Astronomer who worked for the Hudson's Bay Company and then for the North West Company. His work was done in British Columbia. He spent considerable of his time at Kootenay House making maps. The Thompson River in British Columbia was named in his honour.

#### THE FRENCH PERIOD: 1608-1883.

The important governors during this period were....Champlain.. 1612-1635; Montmagny..1636-1648; Frontenac..1672-1682, 1689-1698; La Barre..1682-1685; Denonville..1685-1689; Marquis de Vaudreuil 1755-1760.

Champlain was the First Governor of French Canada. He established Quebec as a fort and as a trading-post, and as a result of his work the first permanent settlement was established in Canada. In 1627 the Company of One Hundred Associates was established to look after the affairs of the Colony. It received a monopoly of the fur-trade; the control of the inland fisheries, and possession of all lands and forts in New France. In return it promised to bring out six thousand settlers, tradesmen, and mechanics before 1643; to assist each settler for three years; and to bring out two priests for each settlement. It did not live up to its promises, so its charter was cancelled in 1663, and Royal Government was introduced.

Royal Government 1663-1760, was a three-man government. The king of France was represented by three officials who were assisted by a Supreme Council. The Governor looked after military affairs; The Bishop looked after Church affairs; and the Intendant looked after legal and money affairs, and to the general interests of the colony. The duties of



the country, "New Galacia."

David Thompson 1770-1857, was a Welsh astronomer who worked for the Hudson's Bay Company and then for the North West Company. His work was done in British Columbia. He spent considerable of his time at Kootenay House making maps. The Thompson River in British Columbia was named in his honour.

THE FRENCH PERIOD: 1600-1857.

The important Governors during this period were... Champlain...  
1613-1635; Montmagny... 1635-1680; Frontenac... 1680-1698; La  
Barre... 1698-1700; Denonville... 1700-1705; Marquis de Vaudreuil 1705-1760.  
Champlain was the first Governor of French Canada. He established  
Quebec as a fort and as a trading-post, and as a result of his work the  
first permanent settlement was established in Canada. In 1674 the Company  
of One Hundred Associates was established to look after the affairs of  
the Colony. It received a monopoly of the fur-trade; the control of the  
inland fisheries, and possession of all lands and towns in New France.  
In return it promised to bring out six thousand settlers, tradesmen, and  
mechanics before 1685; to assist each settler for three years; and to bring  
out two priests for each settlement. It did not live up to its promises,  
so its charter was cancelled in 1685, and Royal Government was introduced.  
Royal Government 1685-1760, was a three-man government. The king  
of France was represented by three officials who were assisted by a  
Superior Council. The Governor looked after military affairs; The Bishop  
looked after Church affairs; and the Intendant looked after legal and  
money affairs, and to the general interests of the colony. The duties of



each of these officials were not clearly defined. That led to a number of disputes, but the colony was governed much better than under the Fur-trading Companies.

Seignorial Tenure was introduced into Canada. This system of land tenure was the same as that which was used in France.

Colonization was stressed, and an effort was made to bring out colonists to French Canada.

The Law of France which was known as the Customs of Paris was made the law of the new country, but the people did not have any voice in the government.

During the French Period considerable work was done by the missionaries who worked among the Indians. They were anxious to establish a purely Roman Catholic country and worked zealously toward that end. Some of the Indians embraced christianity quickly, but others resisted the efforts of the missionaries to convert them. A number of priests lost their lives while they were trying to spread the gospel. Father Jogues, Father Breboeuf, and Father Lalement are listed among those who perished.

Indian wars and border struggles continued throughout this entire period. They were prompted by Champlain's mistake of mixing in the Indian wars, and the desire to expel the British from the coast of America to the south of Canada. Cruelties were committed by the French and English colonists and the Indian allies of each. Each side paid for the scalps of its enemies. The Huron nation was destroyed, and the Algonquins disappeared.

A number of Colonial Wars occurred during the French Period.



each of these officials were not clearly defined. That led to a number of disputes, but the colony was governed much better than under the fur-trading companies.

Settlements were introduced into Canada. This system of

land tenure was the same as that which was used in France. Colonization was attempted, and an effort was made to bring out colonists to French Canada.

The law of France which was known as the Custom of Paris was made the law of the new country, but the people did not have any voice in the government.

During the French period considerable work was done by the missionaries who worked among the Indians. They were anxious to establish a purely Roman Catholic country and worked assiduously toward that end. Some of the Indians embraced Christianity quickly, but others resisted the efforts of the missionaries to convert them. A number of priests lost their lives while they were trying to spread the Gospel. Father Jogues, Father Brebeuf, and Father Lacombe are listed among those who perished.

Indian wars and border struggles continued throughout this entire period. They were prompted by Champlain's mistake of mixing in the Indian wars, and the desire to expel the British from the coast of America to the north of Canada. Cruelties were committed by the French and English colonists and the Indian allies of each. Each side paid for the scalp of its enemies. The Huron nation was destroyed, and the Algonquians disappeared. A number of colonial wars occurred during the French period.



Although the majority of these were started in Europe, they had repercussions in America, and considerable fighting occurred between the French and English Colonists. The important wars were King Charles' War-1629-1632; King William's War-1689-1697; Queen Anne's War or the War of the Spanish Succession-1702-1713; The War of the Austrian Succession-1741-1748; and the War of the Boundary Lines-1755-1763.

The War of the Boundary Lines was the final struggle. When it was over, the French were defeated, and Canada became a British possession. During the struggle the Battle of the Plains of Abraham was fought. Wolfe and Montcalm were killed, but Quebec, "The Key of Canada" fell into the hands of the British.

The French Period was between 1608 and 1763. It was a period of slow growth which was due to the constant Indian wars; fear of Indian attacks; colder weather than they had been used to; Seignorial Tenure; neglect of agriculture by the settlers because they made more from furs; the lack of education of the people because there weren't any schools; and the fact that the settlers did not have a voice in the government of the colony.

Canada of the French Period embraced the Maritime Provinces and the Lowlands of the St. Lawrence.

---

#### THE EARLY ENGLISH PERIOD...1763-1812

During the first few years of this period Military Rule was in evidence. The officers of the army administered the laws of the land, and held courts in the principal centres. The French-Canadians did not understand the English language, and they did not like the British laws



Although the majority of these were started in Europe, they had

repercussions in America, and considerable fighting occurred between

the French and English Colonists. The important wars were King Charles'

War-1629-1632; King William's War-1689-1697; Queen Anne's War or the

War of the Spanish Succession-1702-1713; The War of the Austrian

Succession-1741-1748; and the War of the Boundary Lines-1758-1763.

The War of the Boundary Lines was the final struggle. When it was

over, the French were defeated, and Canada became a British possession.

During the struggle the Battle of the Plains of Abraham was fought. Wolfe

and Montcalm were killed, but Quebec, "The Key of Canada," fell into the

hands of the British.

The French Period was between 1608 and 1763. It was a period of

slow growth which was due to the constant Indian wars; fear of Indian

attacks; colder weather than they had been used to; religious tolerance;

neglect of agriculture by the settlers because they made more from furs;

the lack of education of the people because there weren't any schools;

and the fact that the settlers did not have a voice in the government

of the colony.

Canada of the French Period embraced the Maritime Provinces

and the Lowlands of the St. Lawrence.

THE EARLY ENGLISH PERIOD...1565-1613

During the first few years of this period Military Rule was

in evidence. The officers of the army administered the laws of the land,

and held courts at the principal centres. The French-Canadians did not

understand the English language, and they did not like the British laws



which excluded the Roman Catholics from holding office.

The important Governors of British Canada during this period were James Murray-1760-1768; Sir Guy Carleton-1768-1778, 1786-1796, and Sir George Prevost-1812-1815.

In 1774 the Quebec Act was passed by the British Parliament to please the French-Canadians. This Act displeased the British settlers in the Ohio Valley, but it secured the affection of the French in Canada.

The British introduced Freehold Tenure into Canada. By this system each man bought his own farm, and held it in his own name. This had a tendency to encourage landowners to improve their holdings, and was an improvement over the French System..Seignorial Tenure.

The American Revolution 1775-1783 occurred. During this war the Americans tried to force Canada to become the fourteenth colony in the American union, but they did not succeed. A number of Americans remained loyal to Great Britain during the struggle. They became known as United Empire Loyalists, and moved to Canada after hostilities ceased. The British parliament made a large grant of money for their relief, and gave them farms in various parts of Canada. They also assisted them to start in their new homes.

These people did not like the Quebec Act, the French system of holding land, nor rule by a Council, so they sent a petition to the British Parliament to have these changed. The French-Canadians petitioned to have them retained. The French wanted to retain Seignorial Tenure, the French Customs of Paris, and Trial by Judge, but the English wanted Trial by Jury, The Habeas Corpus Act, Freehold Tenure, and other British laws and customs. In 1791 the British Parliament passed the Constitutional Act which established representative government in Canada



which excluded the Roman Catholics from holding office.

The important Governors of British Canada during this period

were James Murray-1760-1768; Sir Guy Carleton-1768-1776, 1782-1785, and

Sir George Prevost-1812-1815.

In 1774 the Quebec Act was passed by the British Parliament

to please the French-Canadians. This Act displaced the British settlers in the Ohio Valley, but it secured the affection of the French in Canada.

The British introduced Freehold Tenure into Canada. By this

system each man bought his own farm, and held it in his own name. This

had a tendency to encourage landowners to improve their holdings, and

was an improvement over the French System-*Seigniorial Tenure*.

The American Revolution 1775-1783 occurred. During this war

the Americans tried to force Canada to become the fourteenth colony in

the American union, but they did not succeed. A number of Americans

remained loyal to Great Britain during the struggle. They became known

as United Empire Loyalists, and moved to Canada after hostilities ceased.

The British Parliament made a large grant of money for their relief, and

gave them farms in various parts of Canada. They also assisted them to

start in their new homes.

These people did not like the Quebec Act, the French system

of holding land, nor rule by a Council, so they sent a petition to the

British Parliament to have these changed. The French-Canadians petitioned

to have them retained. The French wanted to retain *Seigniorial Tenure*.

the French Customs of Paris, and Trial by Judge, but the English wanted

Trial by Jury. The Habeas Corpus Act, Freehold Tenure, and other British

laws and customs. In 1791 the British Parliament passed the Constitutional

Act which established representative government in Canada.



The country was divided into two provinces...Upper and Lower Canada, and each one of them had a parliament of its own. In Upper Canada the first parliament met at Newark (Niagara) in 1792. The province was divided into four districts, and provision was made to erect a courthouse and a jail in each of them. In 1793 provision was made for doing away with slavery. In 1797 the capital of the province was moved to York (Toronto) because it was felt that Newark was too close to the American frontier. In Lower Canada it was decided that either English or French might be spoken by the members, but all written reports, bills, notices, motions, laws, and other papers were to be written in English and French. Soon there were jealousies between the two races and creeds. The French felt that the English were getting the advantage, and this caused considerable trouble.

During this period Canada progressed steadily. The French were pleased with the treatment which they received from the British, even though they had disliked their laws and did not understand their language at first. The passing of the Quebec Act won their affection, and meant that they were satisfied to live in Canada under the British. The influx of United Empire Loyalists increased the English population, and caused a division of opinion. Then the British parliament passed the Constitutional Act to please both parties, and established representative government in Canada.

Throughout Lower and Upper Canada the forest was slowly cleared, and the land was worked. Roads were built, and the country was opened up. Mills were built, steamboats were introduced, schools were requested, and government reforms were demanded. Missionaries went from settlement to settlement, and soon churches were established. A number of industries



The country was divided into two provinces...Upper and Lower Canada, and each one of them had a parliament of its own. In Upper Canada the first parliament met at Newark (Niagara) in 1792. The province was divided into four districts, and provision was made to erect a courthouse and a jail in each of them. In 1793 provision was made for doing away with slavery. In 1797 the capital of the province was moved to York (Toronto) because it was felt that Newark was too close to the American frontier. In Lower Canada it was decided that either English or French might be spoken by the members, but all written reports, bills, notices, laws, and other papers were to be written in English and French. Soon there were jealousies between the two races and creeds. The French felt that the English were getting the advantage, and this caused considerable trouble. During this period Canada progressed steadily. The French were pleased with the treatment which they received from the British, even though they had disliked their laws and did not understand their language at first. The passing of the Quebec Act won their affection, and meant that they were entitled to live in Canada under the British. The influx of United Empire Loyalists increased the English population, and caused a division of opinion. Then the British parliament passed the Constitution Act to please both parties, and established representative government in Canada.

Throughout Lower and Upper Canada the forest was slowly cleared, and the land was worked. Roads were built, and the country was opened up. Mills were built, steamboats were introduced, schools were requested, and government reforms were demanded. Missionaries went from settlement to settlement, and soon churches were established. A number of industries



were established in the settlements of both provinces, and Canada extended toward the westward.

#### THE ENGLISH PERIOD 1812 - 1867.

During this period there were a number of important occurrences. The War of 1812-1815 was fought. It united Canada for a time, and gave her confidence in her ability to help defend herself. A number of lives were lost, and considerable property was damaged. While the war was in progress, the land was not properly tilled because labour was scarce, and as a result there was a scarcity of crops. The people suffered because they were unable to secure the necessities of life, so the government gave them assistance. The feeling against the Americans became so intense that laws were passed excluding them from the country.

In both Upper and Lower Canada there were a number of political abuses which caused considerable unrest. In Upper Canada the Family Compact controlled the government, and ruled to benefit themselves and their friends. In Lower Canada the Chateau Clique was a similar organization to the Family Compact, so it ruled so that its members benefitted, and the people felt that they were hindering reforms in the government. Finally civil war broke out in the two provinces, and the British parliament then realized that the condition had to be investigated. The war was known as the Rebellion of 1837-8. The special investigator who was sent to Canada was Lord Durham. He made a very careful study of the situation, and then submitted his recommendations to the British Parliament. As a result the British Parliament passed the Act of Union which united the provinces of Upper and Lower Canada, and established responsible government in which the people had a voice in the direction of the affairs of



were established in the settlements of both provinces, and Canada extended toward the westward.

#### THE ENGLISH PERIOD 1812 - 1867.

During this period there were a number of important occurrences. The War of 1812-1815 was fought. It united Canada for a time, and gave her confidence in her ability to help defend herself. A number of lives were lost, and considerable property was damaged. While the war was in progress, the land was not properly tilled because labour was scarce, and as a result there was a scarcity of crops. The people suffered because they were unable to secure the necessities of life, so the government gave them assistance. The feeling against the Americans became so intense that laws were passed excluding them from the country.

In both Upper and Lower Canada there were a number of political changes which caused considerable unrest. In Upper Canada the Family Compact controlled the government, and tried to benefit themselves and their friends. In Lower Canada the Chateau Clique was a similar organization to the Family Compact, so it ruled so that its members benefited, and the people felt that they were hindering reforms in the government. Finally civil war broke out in the two provinces, and the British Parliament then realized that the condition had to be investigated. The war was known as the Rebellion of 1837-8. The special investigator who was sent to Canada was Lord Durham. He made a very careful study of the situation, and then submitted his recommendations to the British Parliament. As a result the British Parliament passed the Act of Union which united the provinces of Upper and Lower Canada, and established responsible government in which the people had a voice in the direction of the affairs of



the country.

The years between 1840 and 1867 were crowded with events that were outstanding in the growth of Canada. The first parliament of United Canada was held in Kingston in 1841. The government took over the Welland Canal, passed the Municipal Act, and established Colleges in Upper Canada. In 1842 the Ashburton Treaty was signed By Lord Ashburton of Great Britain for Canada. It provided for the extradition of persons charged with certain crimes, and settled the boundary line between Canada and the United States. The International<sup>Boundary</sup> Line was established on the 45th. parallel of Latitude from the east to the St. Lawrence River, through the Great Lakes, and Lake of the Woods, and then along the 49th parallel to the Rocky Mountains.

In 1846 Dr. Ryerson made a report regarding education. He was the founder of the Public School System of Ontario. In 1844 he had been appointed Chief Superintendent of Education for Upper Canada. He visited the schools of Europe, and selected what he considered best from each system. Since it was submitted to parliament, it has been improved, but the general plan that he suggested has been followed.

In 1854 a Reciprocity Treaty was signed by Canada and the United States. The commerce of Canada was greatly extended as a result of this, and it remained in force until 1866.

In 1858 Ottawa was selected as the site of the permanent Capital of Canada. It was centrally located, and would save having the capital first in one province and then in the other.

Between 1860 and 1868 the American Civil War regarding slavery occurred. It benefitted Canada because the North patronized Canadian industries for supplies. There were conferences regarding the formation



the country.

The years between 1840 and 1867 were crowded with events that were outstanding in the growth of Canada. The first parliament of United Canada was held in Kingston in 1841. The government took over the Welland Canal, passed the Municipal Act, and established Colleges in Upper Canada. In 1842 the Ashburton Treaty was signed by Lord Ashburton of Great Britain for Canada. It provided for the extradition of persons charged with certain crimes, and settled the boundary line between Canada and the United States. The International Boundary line was established on the 49th parallel of latitude from the east to the St. Lawrence River, through the Great Lakes, and Lake of the Woods, and then along the 49th parallel to the Rocky Mountain line.

In 1846 Dr. Ryerson made a report regarding education. He was the founder of the Public School System of Ontario. In 1844 he had been appointed Chief Superintendent of Education for Upper Canada. He visited the schools of Europe, and selected what he considered best from each system. Since it was admitted to parliament, it has been improved, but the general plan that he suggested has been followed.

In 1854 a Reciprocity Treaty was signed by Canada and the United States. The commerce of Canada was greatly extended as a result of this, and it remained in force until 1866.

In 1858 Ottawa was selected as the site of the permanent Capital of Canada. It was centrally located, and would save having the capital first in one province and then in the other. Between 1860 and 1868 the American Civil War regarding slavery occurred. It benefited Canada because the North patronized Canadian industries for supplies. There were conferences regarding the formation



of union of the Maritime Provinces and Upper and Lower Canada. This union was prompted by three factors....political, commercial, and military. Finally the parliaments of Upper and Lower Canada and New Brunswick and Nova Scotia decided to unite. The four provinces were united under one Federal Government, and were to be called "The Dominion of Canada." The thirty-three men who represented the above four provinces, Prince Edward Island, and Newfoundland were called "The Fathers of Confederation." These men met at Quebec in 1864 and agreed to favour a Federal Union of the Provinces of British North America...making a Canadian Federation.

Every one of them was important, but the outstanding "Fathers of Confederation" were Sir John A. MacDonald and George Brown of Upper Canada, George Etienne Cartier of Lower Canada, Leonard Tilley of New Brunswick, <sup>and</sup> Charles Tupper of Nova Scotia. A number of the others were convinced that Confederation was the right thing for all of the provinces, but their parliaments refused to agree with them at the time.

#### THE GROWTH OF CANADA FROM 1867 to the PRESENT:

In 1867 the four provinces united to form the Dominion of Canada. These were Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia. In 1870 the Province of Manitoba entered the union. In 1871 British Columbia was admitted. In 1873 Prince Edward Island was admitted. In 1882 the North West Territories were organized. In 1896 the Yukon District was Organized. In 1905 Alberta and Saskatchewan were formed, and the provinces of Ontario ~~and~~, Quebec, and Manitoba were enlarged in 1912. Since then the North West Territories north of the 60th. parallel have been organized. These include the Provisional District of MacKenzie, Keewatin, and Franklin.



of union of the Maritime Provinces and Upper and Lower Canada. This union was prompted by three factors... political, commercial, and military. Finally the parliaments of Upper and Lower Canada and New Brunswick and Nova Scotia decided to unite. The four provinces were united under one Federal Government, and were to be called "The Dominion of Canada." The thirty-three men who represented the above four provinces, Prince Edward Island, and Newfoundland were called "The Fathers of Confederation." These men met at Quebec in 1864 and agreed to favour a Federal Union of the Provinces of British North America... making a Canadian Federation. Every one of them was important, but the outstanding "Fathers of Confederation" were Sir John A. Macdonald and George Brown of Upper Canada, George Etienne Cartier of Lower Canada, Leonard Tilley of New Brunswick, and Charles Tupper of Nova Scotia. A number of the others were convinced that Confederation was the right thing for all of the provinces, but their parliaments refused to agree with them at the time.

THE GROWTH OF CANADA FROM 1867 TO THE PRESENT:

In 1867 the four provinces united to form the Dominion of Canada. These were Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia. In 1870 the Province of Manitoba entered the union. In 1871 British Columbia was admitted. In 1873 Prince Edward Island was admitted. In 1882 the North West Territories were organized. In 1898 the Yukon District was organized. In 1905 Alberta and Saskatchewan were formed, and the provinces of Ontario, Quebec, and Manitoba were enlarged in 1912. Since then the North West Territories north of the 60th. parallel have been organized. These include the Provisional District of Mackenzie, Northwest, and Franklin.



The British North America Act of 1867 established true responsible government in Canada so that there was representation in parliament according to population. Since its establishment, Canada has grown into a very important Dominion. The population has increased so that at present there are over eleven million people living in the Dominion, and the immigration policies of various governments have helped to open up sections which have proved to be suitable for agriculture and industrial development. During the Boer War 1899-1902 Canada sent men and supplies to South Africa. During World War One Canada contributed a great deal to help make this world safe for democracy, and during the Second World War Canada's contribution was even greater.

#### THE WARS AND REBELLIONS ASSOCIATED WITH CANADIAN HISTORY:

These occurred between 1629 and 1945, over a period of a little more than three hundred years.

King Charles' War 1629-1632 was primarily fought in Europe, but it extended to America, and the British captured Quebec from the French. The war was closed by the Treaty of St. Germain, and Quebec was restored to the French.

King William's War 1689-1697 was fought in Europe and America. The British captured Port Royal, and attacked Quebec. This war was closed by the Treaty of Ryswick, and Acadia became temporarily British.

Queen Anne's War or The War of the Spanish Succession 1702-1713 was fought in Europe and America. Port Royal was captured by the British. The Treaty of Utrecht closed the war, and Britain gained Acadia.

The War of the Austrian Succession 1741-1748 was fought in Europe and America. Louisbourg was captured by the British. The Treaty



The British North America Act of 1867 established the respon-

sible government in Canada so that there was representation in parliament

according to population. Since its establishment, Canada has grown into

a very important Dominion. The population has increased so that at present

there are over eleven million people living in the Dominion, and the

immigration policies of various governments have helped to open up sections

which have proved to be suitable for agriculture and industrial development.

During the Boer War 1899-1902 Canada sent men and supplies to South Africa.

During World War One Canada contributed a great deal to help make this

world safe for democracy, and during the Second World War Canada's

contribution was even greater.

#### THE WARS AND REVELATIONS ASSOCIATED WITH CANADIAN HISTORY.

These occurred between 1629 and 1945, over a period of a little

more than three hundred years.

King Charles' War 1629-1632 was primarily fought in Europe, but

it extended to America, and the British captured Quebec from the French.

The war was closed by the Treaty of St. Germain, and Quebec was restored

to the French.

King William's War 1689-1697 was fought in Europe and America.

The British captured Port Royal, and attacked Quebec. This war was closed

by the Treaty of Ryswick, and Acadia became temporarily British.

Queen Anne's War or The War of the Spanish Succession 1702-1713

was fought in Europe and America. Port Royal was captured by the British.

The Treaty of Utrecht closed the war, and Britain gained Acadia.

The War of the Austrian Succession 1741-1748 was fought in

Europe and America. Louisbourg was captured by the British. The Treaty



of Aix-la-Chapelle closed the war, and Louisbourg was returned to the French.

The War of the Boundary Lines 1755-1763 was caused by boundary disputes. In 1755 the Acadians were expelled from Nova Scotia because they refused to take the oath of allegiance to the British. In 1759 Quebec was captured by the British. This war was closed by the Peace of Paris, and Canada became a British possession.

The American Revolution 1775-1783 was caused by British taxation of the Colonies without them having representation in the British parliament. The Americans attacked Quebec in an attempt to force Canada to become the fourteenth colony in the American Union. The war was closed by the Treaty of Versailles, and the American Colonies gained their Independence. Canada's population was increased by the United Empire Loyalists who moved into the country.

The War of 1812-1815 was caused by the Berlin Decrees, the Orders-in-Council, and the Right of Search. Events occurred along the Detroit River, in the Niagara Peninsula, and near Montréal. This war was closed by the Treaty of Ghent, and all territory was returned.

The Rebellion of 1837-8 was caused by the demand for political reform in Canada, and the refusal of the Family Compact and the Chateau Clique to consider it. It was a civil war, and events occurred at Montgomery's Tavern, in Upper Canada; and at St. Denis, St. Eustache, and St. Charles in Lower Canada. As a result Political reform was gained by both Upper and Lower Canada.

The Red River Rebellion 1869-1870 was caused by the purchase of the territory from the Hudson's Bay Company by the Government of



of Aix-la-Chapelle closed the war, and Louisbourg was returned to the French.

The War of the Boundary Lines 1755-1763 was caused by boundary disputes. In 1755 the Acadians were expelled from Nova Scotia because they refused to take the oath of allegiance to the British. In 1759 Quebec was captured by the British. This war was closed by the Peace of Paris, and Canada became a British possession.

The American Revolution 1775-1783 was caused by British taxation of the Colonies without them having representation in the British Parliament. The Americans attacked Quebec in an attempt to force Canada to become the fourteenth colony in the American Union. The war was closed by the Treaty of Versailles, and the American Colonies gained their independence. Canada's population was increased by the United Empire Loyalists who moved into the country.

The War of 1812-1815 was caused by the Berlin Decrees, the Orders-in-Council, and the Right of Search. Events occurred along the Detroit River, in the Niagara Peninsula, and near Montreal. This war was closed by the Treaty of Ghent, and all territory was returned.

The Rebellion of 1837-8 was caused by the demand for political reform in Canada, and the refusal of the Family Compact and the Chateaus Clique to consider it. It was a civil war, and events occurred at Montgomery's Tavern, in Upper Canada; and at St. Denis, St. Eustache, and St. Charles in Lower Canada. As a result political reform was gained by both Upper and Lower Canada.

The Red River Rebellion 1869-1870 was caused by the purchase of the territory from the Hudson's Bay Company by the Government of



Canada. The principal engagement occurred at or near Fort Garry, and later the Province of Manitoba was formed, and admitted to the Federation of the Provinces.

The Saskatchewan Rebellion 1885 was a civil war that was caused by the refusal of the Canadian Government to consider the request of the Indians of Western Canada. Engagements occurred at Duck Lake, Frog Lake, Cutknife Creek, Fish Creek, and Batoche. As a result of this war, the possibilities of Western Canada were revealed and settlers gradually moved into that region.

The Boer War 1899-1902 was caused by the Dutch objection to the settlement of South Africa by the British. Engagements occurred at Kimberley, Mafeking, Paardeburg, and Pretoria. This war was closed by the Treaty of Pretoria, and British troops were withdrawn from Canada.

The First World War 1914-1918 was caused by international jealousy and the assassination of the Archduke of Austria by a Serbian. Engagements occurred in practically the heart of Europe and in Asia. Canadian soldiers took part in various theatres of the war, but they helped considerably at Ypres, Somme, Vimy Ridge, Passchendaele, and Mons. This war was closed by the Treaty of Versailles. It left Canada with a heavy war debt, heavy taxation, and led to a depression in the period between 1930 and 1935.

The Second World War 1939-1945 was caused by the desire of Germany, Italy, and Japan to dominate the world. This war was waged in practically every continent of the globe and on the various seas and oceans. Over 757,000 men and women served in various theatres of the war, and there were over 87,609 casualties. During the war Canada



Canada. The principal engagement occurred at or near Fort Gary, and later the Province of Manitoba was formed, and admitted to the Federation of the Provinces.

The Saskatchewan Rebellion 1885 was a civil war that was caused by the refusal of the Canadian Government to consider the request of the Indians of Western Canada. Engagements occurred at Duck Lake, Frog Lake, Cutknife Creek, Fish Creek, and Battleford. As a result of this war, the possibilities of Western Canada were revealed and settlers gradually moved into that region.

The Boer War 1899-1902 was caused by the Dutch objection to the settlement of South Africa by the British. Engagements occurred at Kimberley, Mafeking, Paardeburg, and Pretoria. This war was closed by the Treaty of Pretoria, and British troops were withdrawn from Canada.

The First World War 1914-1918 was caused by international jealousy and the assassination of the Archduke of Austria by a Serbian. Engagements occurred in practically the heart of Europe and in Asia. Canadian soldiers took part in various theatres of the war, but they helped considerably at Ypres, Somme, Vimy Ridge, Passchendaele, and Mons. This war was closed by the Treaty of Versailles. It left Canada with a heavy war debt, heavy taxation, and led to a depression in the period between 1930 and 1935.

The Second World War 1939-1945 was caused by the desire of Germany, Italy, and Japan to dominate the world. This war was waged in practically every continent of the globe and on the various seas and oceans. Over 757,000 men and women served in various theatres of the war, and there were over 87,609 casualties. During the war Canada



entered whole-heartedly into the conflict, and became the arsenal of democracy. While her men and women served in the Army, the Navy, and the Air Force, those at home served in the factories, and on the farms. They loaned their money to the government, and worked to speed the victory.

When the war started, Canada had only a few fliers who were qualified to help stem the tide of enemy fliers over Britain, so Canada, Great Britain, Australia, and New Zealand signed an agreement in December 1939, to establish a gigantic British Commonwealth Air Training Plan. The Dominion of Canada was chosen as the training ground, and numerous Air Schools were established in various parts of the country. The aim was to produce about 130,000 air crew of which 55% were to be Canadians; and a ground crew of about 96,000 of which 98% were to be Canadians. The others were to come from the various parts of the British Empire. The R.C.A.F. administered the scheme, and Canada assumed the major share in its financing. After eighteen or twenty months of training, men from all parts of the Commonwealth went overseas as gunners, bombers, wireless operators, navigators, and pilots.

During the war there were a number of men who won the Victoria Cross. They were Captain F. T. Peters of Prince Edward Island and British Columbia; Major C. F. Hoey of Duncan, British Columbia; Charles Cecil I. Merritt, Vancouver, B. C.; Paul Triquet of Cabano, Quebec; John Keefer Mahony, New Westminster, B.C.; David Ernest Hornell, Mimico, Ontario; David Vivian Currie, Moose Jaw, Saskatchewan; and Ernest Alvia Smith of New Westminster, B.C.



entered whole-heartedly into the conflict, and became the arsenal of democracy. While her men and women served in the Army, the Navy, and the Air Force, those at home served in the factories, and on the farms. They loaned their money to the Government, and worked to speed the victory.

When the war started, Canada had only a few fliers who were qualified to help stem the tide of enemy fliers over Britain, so Canada, Great Britain, Australia, and New Zealand signed an agreement in December 1939, to establish a gigantic British Commonwealth Air Training Plan. The Dominion of Canada was chosen as the training ground, and numerous Air Schools were established in various parts of the country. The aim was to produce about 130,000 air crew of which 85% were to be Canadians; and a ground crew of about 25,000 of which 95% were to be Canadians. The others were to come from the various parts of the British Empire. The R.C.A.F. administered the scheme, and Canada assumed the major share in its financing. After eighteen or twenty months of training, men from all parts of the Commonwealth went overseas as gunners, bombers, wireless operators, navigators, and pilots.

During the war there were a number of men who won the Victoria Cross. They were Captain F. F. Peters of Prince Edward Island and British Columbia; Major G. F. Hoey of Duncan, British Columbia; Captain Cecil I. Merritt, Vancouver, B. C.; Paul Bridget of Sarnia, Quebec; John Kester Mahony, New Westminster, B.C.; David Ernest Hornell, Mississauga, Ontario; David Vivian Currie, Moose Jaw, Saskatchewan; and Ernest Alvin Smith of New Westminster, B.C.



## THE FUR-TRADERS AND FUR-TRADING COMPANIES:

During the French Period in Canada..1608-1763, a number of Fur-trading Companies in succession, were given a monopoly of the fur-trade on condition that they would bring out colonists and assist them to start in their new homes. The Companies neglected this part of their agreement, so they lost their charters. The most important Company of this period was The Company of One Hundred Associates which was formed in 1627. It lost its Charter in 1663.

Under Royal Government 1663-1763, a number of young men from France preferred the adventures of the fur-trader to the humdrum life of the garrison or on the primitive farms. It was a free life, and the restraints of civilized society were thrown off. They became known as "Coureurs de bois" or "runners of the woods." The Governors tried to control them by requiring that they had to secure licenses before trading with the Indians, but a number of them became independent fur-traders and reaped huge profits from trading. Two of the outstanding traders were Radisson and Groseilliers.

After 1763 a number of independent British fur-traders entered the region which had previously been French Territory. These included such men as Alexander Henry from Albany; Benjamin, Joseph, and Thomas Frobisher who came from Yorkshire; Peter Pond from Connecticut; James McGill; and Simon McTavish. In addition to these there were French, American, English and Scots who were a hardy group of adventurers who set out to establish a commercial empire in Western Canada. They pushed into the country west of Lake Superior, and covered the western prairie provinces. They established a number of fur-trading posts in such positions that they intercepted the Indians as they were on their way to Hudson Bay



During the French period in Canada, 1608-1763, a number of fur-trading companies in succession, were given a monopoly of the fur-trade on condition that they would bring out colonists and assist them to start in their new homes. The companies neglected this part of their agreement so they lost their charters. The most important company of this period was The Company of One Hundred Associates which was formed in 1627. It lost its charter in 1663.

Under Royal Government 1663-1763, a number of young men from France preferred the adventures of the fur-trader to the humdrum life of the garrison or on the primitive farms. It was a free life, and the restrictions of civilized society were thrown off. They became known as "Gentlemen de bois" or "runners of the woods." The Government tried to control them by requiring that they had to secure licenses before trading with the Indians, but a number of them became independent fur-traders and reaped huge profits from trading. Two of the outstanding traders were Radisson and Groseilliers.

After 1763 a number of independent British fur-traders entered the region which had previously been French territory. These included such men as Alexander Henry from Albany; Benjamin, Joseph, and Thomas Prosser who came from Yorkshire; Peter Pond from Connecticut; James McGill; and Simon McTavish. In addition to these there were French, American, English and Scots who were a hardy group of adventurers who set out to establish a commercial empire in Western Canada. They pushed into the country west of Lake Superior, and covered the western prairie provinces. They established a number of fur-trading posts in such positions that they intercepted the Indians as they were on their way to Hudson Bay.



with their furs. The Hudson's Bay Company then discarded its policy of confining its activities to the shores of Hudson Bay, and began to establish posts in the interior because the supply of furs was being cut off. It sent Samuel Hearne inland to establish a rival post on Sturgeon Lake. It was erected only five-hundred yards beyond the fort that had been established by the Frobishers. The building of these two posts ushered in a half-century of conflict between the traders from Hudson Bay and the traders from Canada. The Hudson's Bay Company established a net-work of posts from the Athabasca country to Minnesota, and from Hudson Bay to Oregon. The Traders from Canada then joined forces and formed "The North West Company" in 1783.

The North West Company was a Company of Montreal Traders who joined forces in 1783 to make profit from the fur-trade, and to combat the influences of the Hudson's Bay Company. These Nor'-westers called themselves "The Lords of the Lakes and Rivers." This company took over the trading posts of the French at Detroit, Michilimackinac, Sault Ste Marie, Grand Portage (Fort William), and those on the rivers south of the Great Lakes. It also took over the posts which had been established by the Independent Fur-traders in Western Canada. It established its headquarters at Grand Portage on Lake Superior. It extended into western Canada by way of Rainy Lake, Lake of the Woods, and Lake Winnipeg, and it spread throughout the vast interior of the continent. It built trading posts on the Red, Assiniboine, and Saskatchewan Rivers, and on the Churchill, Athabasca, Peace, and MacKenzie, and west of the Rocky Mountains throughout British Columbia. It also sent out explorers...Alexander MacKenzie, Simon Fraser, and David Thompson.



with their fur. The Hudson's Bay Company then directed its policy of  
confining its activities to the shores of Hudson Bay, and began to establish  
posts in the interior because the supply of furs was being cut off. It  
sent Samuel Hearne inland to establish a rival post on Winnipeg Lake. It  
was erected only five hundred yards beyond the fort that had been estab-  
lished by the Prohibitors. The building of these two posts ushered in a  
half-century of conflict between the traders from Hudson Bay and the  
traders from Canada. The Hudson's Bay Company established a net-work of  
posts from the Athabasca country to Minnesota, and from Hudson Bay to  
Oregon. The traders from Canada then joined forces and formed "The North  
West Company" in 1783.

The North West Company was a company of Montreal traders who  
joined forces in 1783 to make profit from the fur-trade, and to combat  
the influence of the Hudson's Bay Company. These Nor'-westerners called  
themselves "The Lords of the Lakes and Rivers." This company took over  
the trading posts of the French at Detroit, Michilimackinac, Sault Ste  
Marie, Grand Portage (Fort William), and those on the river south of the  
Great Lakes. It also took over the posts which had been established by  
the independent fur-traders in Western Canada. It established its head-  
quarters at Grand Portage on Lake Superior. It extended into western  
Canada by way of Rainy Lake, Lake of the Woods, and Lake Winnipeg, and  
it spread throughout the vast interior of the continent. It built trading  
posts on the Red, Assiniboine, and Saskatchewan Rivers, and on the Churchill,  
Athabasca, Peace, and Mackenzie, and west of the Rocky Mountains through-  
out British Columbia. It also sent out explorers... Alexander MacKenzie,  
Simon Fraser, and David Thompson.



These traders kept pushing farther and farther west. They pierced the barrier of the Rocky Mountains, and visited the Pacific Ocean. They drew maps of the sections visited, and contributed considerable to the discovery and exploration of Western Canada.

In 1670 the Hudson's Bay Company was given a Charter by the king of England. It gave this Company sovereignty over all of the territory watered by the rivers flowing into Hudson Bay. It established trading posts on Hudson Bay and traded with the Indians of the interior who took their furs to the Hudson's Bay Posts. It allowed the early independent fur-traders to trade in the interior of the country without interference.

The establishment of a Trading Post on Sturgeon Lake by the Frobishers intercepted the Indians who usually took their furs to the Hudson's Bay Trading Posts on Hudson Bay. This deprived them of the furs and prompted the sending of Samuel Hearne to establish a rival post of Lake Sturgeon. It was only five-hundred yards from the Post established by the Frobishers, and was named Fort Cumberland. This resulted in open rivalry and the establishment of a net-work of Posts from the Athabasca Country to Minnesota and from Hudson Bay to Oregon. This Company sent out two explorers...Samuel Hearne and <sup>Henry Kelsey</sup> David Howse.

In 1821 the North West Company and the Hudson's Bay Company were amalgamated, and became known as "The Hudson's Bay Company." It governed western Canada until 1867. It protected the Indians who were its chief source of wealth, and it discouraged white settlers. The Nor'westers, the Lords of the Lakes and Forests passed away, but the memory of the path-finders such as Alexander Mackenzie, Simon Fraser, and David Thompson is written forever on the map of the Dominion of Canada.



These traders kept pushing farther and farther west. They

passed the barrier of the Rocky Mountains, and visited the Pacific

Ocean. They drew maps of the sections visited, and contributed considerable

to the discovery and exploration of Western Canada.

In 1870 the Hudson's Bay Company was given a Charter by the

King of England. It gave this Company sovereignty over all of the territory

watered by the rivers flowing into Hudson Bay. It established trading

posts on Hudson Bay and traded with the Indians of the interior who took

their furs to the Hudson's Bay Posts. It allowed the early independent

fur-traders to trade in the interior of the country without interference.

The establishment of a Trading Post on Sturgeon Lake by the

Prohibitors intercepted the Indians who usually took their furs to the

Hudson's Bay Trading Posts on Hudson Bay. This deprived them of the furs

and prompted the sending of Samuel Hearne to establish a rival post of

Lake Sturgeon. It was only five-hundred yards from the post established

by the Prohibitors, and was named Fort Cumberland. This resulted in open

rivalry and the establishment of a net-work of posts from the Atlantic

Country to Minnesota and from Hudson Bay to Oregon. This Company sent

out two explorers... Samuel Hearne and David Howe.  
Henry Kelsey

In 1821 the North West Company and the Hudson's Bay Company

were amalgamated, and became known as "The Hudson's Bay Company." It

governed western Canada until 1867. It protected the Indians who were

its chief source of wealth, and it discouraged white settlers. The

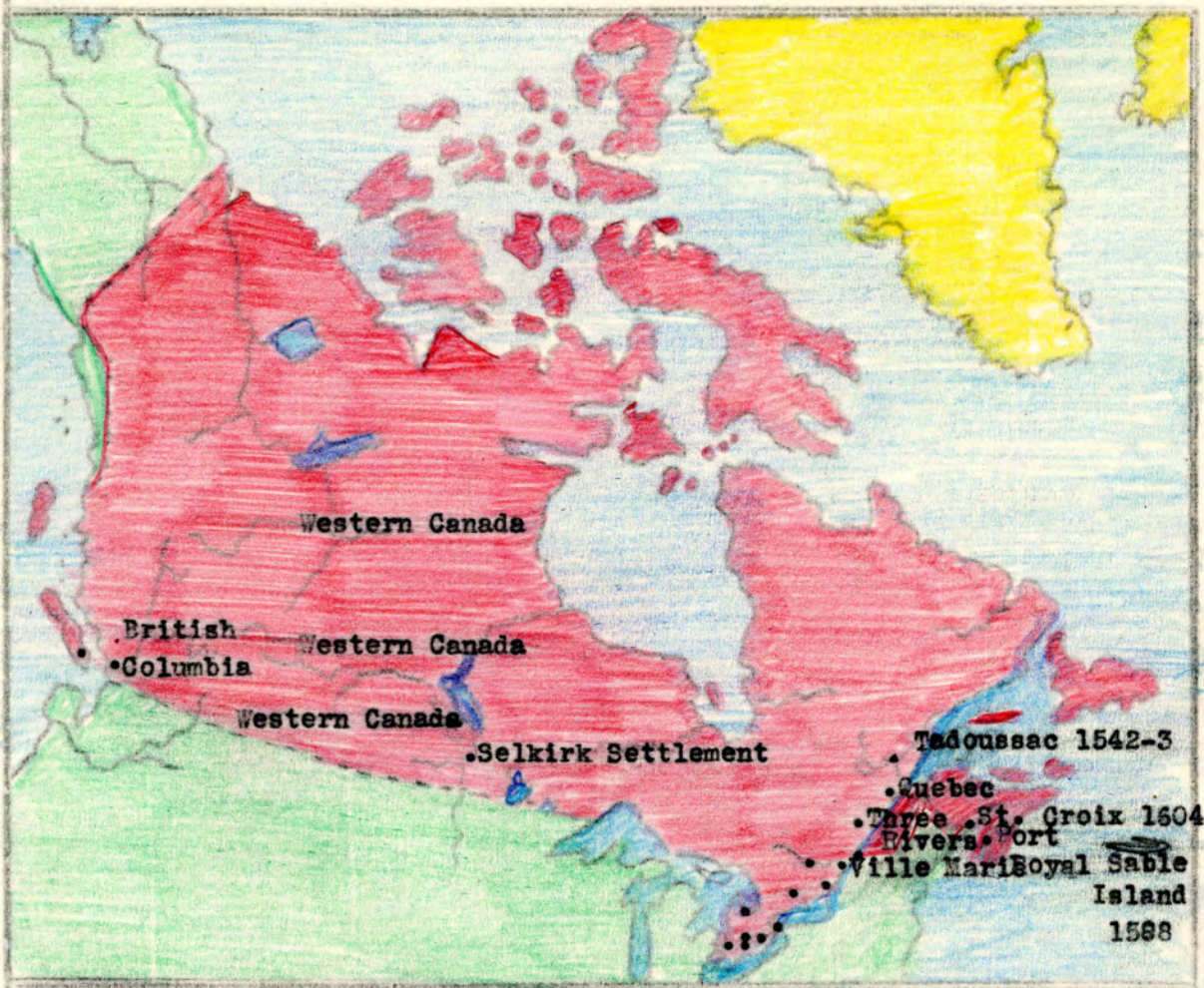
Northwesters, the Lords of the Lakes and Forests passed away, but the

memory of the path-finders such as Alexander Mackenzie, Simon Fraser,

and David Thompson is written forever on the map of the Dominion of



THE ESTABLISHMENT OF SETTLEMENTS: IMMIGRATION AND COLONIZATION:









## THE ESTABLISHMENT OF SETTLEMENTS: IMMIGRATION AND COLONIZATION:

Tadoussac 1542-3 was established as a settlement at the mouth of the Saguenay River by convicts who were brought over from France. It was a failure.

Sable Island 1598 was established as a settlement for convicts from France by La Roche. Eleven survivors were rescued from the Island in 1603.

St. Croix Island was established as a settlement in 1604 by De Monts and Champlain, but scurvy and lack of food caused them to abandon the Island as soon as possible in the spring of 1605. The survivors were moved across to Port Royal in Acadia.

Port Royal 1605 was established as a settlement by De Monts, Pontgrave, and Champlain. During the time that the colony was in existence the leaders established "The Order of Good Cheer" which required that the members were to contribute something in turn to keep up the spirits of the members. The charter of this colony was cancelled in 1607, so it was abandoned.

Quebec 1608 was established as the first permanent settlement of the French in Canada. The founder was Champlain. He had a habitation built at the narrows of the St. Lawrence River because it provided natural protection by the cliff behind the settlement. This became the Gibraltar of America, but its development was slow.

The Company of One Hundred Associates 1627-1663 was a fur-trading company which agreed to bring out colonists in return for a monopoly of the fur-trade, but it neglected the colonization stipulation so its charter was cancelled in 1663.

Three Rivers 1633 was established as a settlement at the mouth of the St. Maurice River. In 1666 the population was 461.



THE ESTABLISHMENT OF SETTLEMENTS: IMMIGRATION AND COLONIZATION

Tabouac 1843-5 was established as a settlement at the mouth of the Saguenay River by convicts who were brought over from France. It was a failure.

Sable Island 1598 was established as a settlement for convicts from France by La Roche. Eleven survivors were rescued from the island in 1603.

St. Croix Island was established as a settlement in 1604 by De Monts and Champlain, but scurvy and lack of food caused them to abandon the island as soon as possible in the spring of 1606. The survivors were moved across to Port Royal in Acadia.

Port Royal 1605 was established as a settlement by De Monts, Pontreuve, and Champlain. During the time that the colony was in existence the leaders established "The Order of Good Cheer" which required that the members were to contribute something in turn to keep up the spirits of the members. The charter of this colony was cancelled in 1607, so it was abandoned.

Quebec 1608 was established as the first permanent settlement of the French in Canada. The founder was Champlain. He had a habitation built at the narrows of the St. Lawrence River because it provided natural protection by the cliff behind the settlement. This became the Gibraltar of America, but its development was slow.

The Company of One Hundred Associates 1627-1663 was a fur-trading company which agreed to bring out colonists in return for a monopoly of the fur-trade, but it neglected the colonization stipulation so its charter was cancelled in 1663.

Three Rivers 1633 was established as a settlement at the

mouth of the St. Lawrence River. In 1666 the population was 461.



The founder of this settlement was Laviolette.

Ville Marie 1642 was established as a trading post by Maisonneuve. It became a mission station, and suffered considerably from Indian raids. A watch-dog, Pilotte, which was brought from France helped to indicate the presence of Indians, and <sup>saved</sup> saved the colonists from attack. The settlement was saved by Adam Dollard and his men in 1660 by their heroic example at the Long Sault Rapids on the Ottawa River.

French Canada 1665-1670 under Talon had a population and industrial policy. During this time the population increased from 3000 to 6000.

Early British Canada 1783-4-8 had its population increased as a result of the work of Sir Guy Carleton. He encouraged the United Empire Loyalists to come to Canada and establish homes for themselves. They moved into the Maritime Provinces, the Lowlands of the St. Lawrence River, the north shore of the St. Lawrence in Upper Canada, around the Bay of Quinte, in the Niagara Peninsula, in Brant County, and along the Detroit River. About 50,000 settlers moved into Canada.

Upper Canada 1791-1796 under Sir John Graves Simcoe had its population increased by late Loyalists. A proclamation was issued inviting them to come to Upper Canada, and as a result the country was opened up and the population was increased.

Lord Selkirk's Settlements in Canada 1803, 1811, 1816 were established in Prince Edward Island, at Baldoon in Upper Canada, and along the Red River in Manitoba. Manitoba was partly opened up, but the settlers were beset by members of the fur-trading Companies who did not favour opening the country to white settlers.



The founder of this settlement was Lavolette.

Ville Marie 1682 was established as a trading post by Kaskawansum.

It became a mission station, and suffered considerably from Indian raids.

A watch-dog, Pilette, which was brought from France helped to indicate

the presence of Indians, and saved the colonists from attack. The settle-

ment was saved by Adam Dollard and his men in 1680 by their heroic

example at the long Sault Rapids on the Ottawa River.

French Canada 1682-1690 under Talon had a population and

industrial policy. During this time the population increased from 2000

to 6000.

Early British Canada 1783-4-6 had its population increased

as a result of the work of Sir Guy Carleton. He encouraged the United

Empire Loyalists to come to Canada and establish homes for themselves.

They moved into the Maritime Provinces, the Townships of the St. Lawrence

River, the north shore of the St. Lawrence in Upper Canada, around the

Bay of Quinte, in the Niagara Peninsula, in Huron County, and along the

Detroit River. About 20,000 settlers moved into Canada.

Upper Canada 1791-1796 under Sir John Graves Simcoe had its

population increased by late Loyalists. A proclamation was issued invit-

ing them to come to Upper Canada, and as a result the country was opened

up and the population was increased.

Lord Selkirk's Settlements in Canada 1802, 1811, 1816 were

established in Prince Edward Island, at Belton in Upper Canada, and

along the Red River in Manitoba. Manitoba was partly opened up, but

the settlers were beset by members of the fur-trading companies who

did not favour opening the country to white settlers.



Pioneer settlements were established in Upper Canada between 1804 and 1826.

The Glengarry Settlement 1804-5 was established in Glengarry County by Highland Scotch.

The Kitchener Settlement 1806 was established in Waterloo County by Germans from Pennsylvania.

The Talbot Settlement 1809 was established in Elgin County by Thomas Talbot.

The Huron Tract Settlement 1824 was established in the counties of Huron, Bruce, Waterloo, and Perth by John Galt.

The McNab Settlement 1825 was established near Ottawa by Archibald McNab.

The Peterborough Settlement 1825 was established in Peterborough County by Peter Robinson who invited Irish settlers to come to Canada.

The Bytown Settlement 1826 was established on the present site of the city of Ottawa by Colonel John By.

The Zorro Settlement was established near Woodstock in the County of Oxford by Scotch settlers.

The Oro Settlement was established on Lake Simcoe by Scotch settlers.

The Lanark Settlement 1815-1820 was established on the Ottawa River in the County of Lanark by Lowland Scots.

British Columbia 1856-1866 under Sir James Douglas had its population increased until it reached 10,000. British Columbia became a province in 1871.

Western Canada 1896-1911 under Sir Wilfred Laurier and Hon. Clifford Sifton had 2,000,000 settlers move into the region. In 1905 the two provinces..Alberta and Saskatchewan were formed and admitted to the Dominion.



Pioneer settlements were established in Upper Canada between

1804 and 1826.

The Glenora Settlement 1804-5 was established in Glenora

County by Highland Scotch.

The Hinchman Settlement 1808 was established in Waterloo County

by Germans from Pennsylvania.

The Talbot Settlement 1809 was established in Elgin County by

Thomas Talbot.

The Huron Tract Settlement 1824 was established in the counties

of Huron, Bruce, Waterloo, and Perth by John Galt.

The McKeap Settlement 1825 was established near Ottawa by Archibald

McKeap.

The Peterborough Settlement 1825 was established in Peterborough

County by Peter Robinson who invited Irish settlers to come to Canada.

The Bytown Settlement 1826 was established on the present site of

the city of Ottawa by Colonel John By.

The Noyes Settlement was established near Woodstock in the County

of Oxford by Scotch settlers.

The Oro Settlement was established on Lake Simcoe by Scotch settlers.

The Lanark Settlement 1818-1820 was established on the Ottawa River

in the County of Lanark by Lowland Scotch.

British Columbia 1856-1866 under Sir James Douglas had its pop-

ulation increased until it reached 10,000. British Columbia became a

province in 1871.

Western Canada 1896-1911 under Sir Wilfrid Laurier and Hon. Clifford

Sifton had 2,000,000 settlers move into the region. In 1905 the two

provinces, Alberta and Saskatchewan were formed and admitted to the

Dominion.



## THE STRUGGLE FOR RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT:

The Quebec Act of 1774 favoured the French majority because there were very few British subjects living in Canada. It granted a Governor and a Council composed of from seventeen to twenty-three members, but the majority of them were to be of British birth. This form of government was unsatisfactory because the United Empire Loyalists came to Canada after 1783 and brought with them ideas of self-government. They objected to the Quebec Act, so the British Government tried to please both the English and the French by passing the Constitutional Act in 1791.

This Act divided the country into two sections..Upper and Lower Canada, and gave each section a government to look after its affairs. It also provided for the election of members to the Legislative Assembly which was supposed to represent the people. This gave representative Government, but the representatives of the people did not control the revenue. The Constitutional Act also had other defects, and led to individual leaders working for political reform in Canada.

These individual leaders were aware of the growth of democracy; the introduction of the democratic spirit into Canada; the use of repressive measures by the Government, and the failure of the government to meet and satisfy the demands of the people; and the attitude of the Colonial Office in Britain regarding the demands for self-government. The leaders were Robert Gourlay, William Lyon MacKenzie, Samuel Lount, and Peter Matthews in Upper Canada, and Louis Joseph Papineau, Louis Lafontaine, Sir George Cartier, and Dr. Wolfred Nelson in Lower Canada.

The Family Compact was the name given to the ruling class



## THE STRUGGLE FOR RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT

The Quebec Act of 1774 favoured the French majority because there were very few British subjects living in Canada. It granted a Governor and a Council composed of from seventeen to twenty-three members, but the majority of them were to be of British birth. This form of government was unsatisfactory because the United Empire Loyalists came to Canada after 1783 and brought with them ideas of self-government. They objected to the Quebec Act, so the British Government tried to please both the English and the French by passing the Constitutional Act in 1791. This Act divided the country into two sections: Upper and Lower Canada, and gave each section a government to look after its affairs. It also provided for the election of members to the Legislative Assembly which was supposed to represent the people. This gave representative government, but the representatives of the people did not control the revenue. The Constitutional Act also had other defects, and led to individual leaders working for political reform in Canada. These individual leaders were aware of the growth of democracy; the introduction of the democratic spirit into Canada; the use of representative measures by the Government, and the failure of the Government to meet and satisfy the demands of the people; and the attitude of the Colonial Office in Britain regarding the demands for self-government. The leaders were Robert Gouvieux, William Lyon Mackenzie, Samuel Bount, and Peter Matthews in Upper Canada, and Louis Joseph Papineau, Louis LaFontaine, Sir George Cartier, and Dr. Wilfred Laurier in Lower Canada. The Family Compact was the name given to the ruling class



in Upper Canada under the Constitutional Act. It came into being during the governorship of John Graves Simcoe. It consisted of the Governor, the Executive Council and the Legislative Council. The members were appointed, and could not be removed for wrong-doing even though they administered the affairs of the Province as they pleased and in their own interest. The members of the Family Compact were bound closely together by race, religion, and kinship, and extended to their friends outside the government circle.

Some of the definite abuses that were charged against the Family Compact included the following:- Large tracts of land were granted to the friends of the men in power; corruption was allowed to go unpunished; exorbitant salaries were paid to officials; the Anglican Church was favoured in the matter of the Clergy Reserves; and the Family Compact was highly abusive on its treatment of its opponents. Robert Gourlay, the first leader of the Reformer Party, was persecuted until his mind gave way; and William Lyon MacKenzie, his successor, was expelled five times from the Assembly although he had been legally elected.

The Scotch Party or the Chateau Clique was the governing body in Lower Canada. It was somewhat similar to the Family Compact of Upper Canada. It was introduced into Lower Canada shortly after the Conquest in 1759, and was composed of Public Officials, Merchants, Lawyers, and Judges who assumed control of the government. It included the leaders of the commercial life of Quebec and Montreal where the Scotch settlers were established, and for that reason it was sometimes called "The Scotch Party." From its ranks most of the members of the Executive Council were drawn, and on the whole the government took no pains to conceal the belief that the French Canadians were an inferior



in Upper Canada under the Constitutional Act. It came into being during the governorship of John Graves Simcoe. It consisted of the Governor, the Executive Council and the Legislative Council. The members were appointed, and could not be removed for wrong-doing even though they administered the affairs of the Province as they pleased and in their own interest. The members of the Family Compact were bound closely together by race, religion, and kinship, and extended to their friends outside the government circle.

Some of the definite abuses that were charged against the Family Compact included the following: - large tracts of land were granted to the friends of the men in power; corruption was allowed to go unpunished; exorbitant salaries were paid to officials; the Anglican Church was favoured in the matter of the clergy reserves; and the Family Compact was highly sensitive in its treatment of its opponents. Robert Gourlay, the first leader of the Reformer Party, was persecuted until his mind gave way; and William Lyon Mackenzie, his successor, was expelled five times from the Assembly although he had been legally elected.

The Scotch Party or the Orange Club was the governing body in Lower Canada. It was somewhat similar to the Family Compact of Upper Canada. It was introduced into Lower Canada shortly after the Compact in 1789, and was composed of British officials, merchants, lawyers, and judges who assumed control of the government. It included the leaders of the commercial life of Quebec and Montreal where the Scotch settlers were established, and for that reason it was sometimes called "The Scotch Party." From its ranks most of the members of the Executive Council were drawn, and on the whole the government took no pains to conceal the belief that the French Canadians were an inferior



race, and were fit only to be governed, but not to govern. There were those among the official class who frankly avowed that the language, religion, and ancient laws of the French in Canada should be suppressed or abolished.

In 1837 Civil War occurred in Upper and Lower Canada. In Upper Canada the leader of the rebels was William Lyon Mackenzie. An engagement occurred at Montgomery's Tavern. In Lower Canada the leader was Louis Joseph Papineau. Engagements occurred at St. Denis, St Charles, and St. Eustache. The rebellion failed because the leaders..MacKenzie and Papineau, had misjudged the feeling of the people regarding reform. In Upper Canada the majority of the people were loyal and law-abiding, but they had been misled by MacKenzie. In Lower Canada the rebels were opposed by the French Clergy. They were limited to a few districts, and few men of prominence took an active part in the uprising.

The attention of the British parliament was drawn to the defects of the government in Canada. They learned that lives had been lost and property had been damaged, so they sent Lord Durham to Canada as Governor-General. He was to inquire into the causes of the Rebellion, and was to make suggestions for improving the government of the country. As a result the people were allowed a greater voice in the control of their own affairs, and this paved the way for the establishment of Responsible Government.

In Nova Scotia, Joseph Howe, an Editor, became a member of the Legislature, and led the people of that province with wonderful ability along the path of Constitutional Reform without violence. In New Brunswick a similar agitation was successfully led by Lemuel Allan Wilmot.



race, and were fit only to be governed, but not to govern. There were those among the official class who frankly avowed that the language, religion, and ancient laws of the French in Canada should be suppressed or abolished.

In 1837 Civil War occurred in Upper and Lower Canada. In Upper Canada the leader of the rebels was William Lyon Mackenzie. An engagement occurred at Montgomery's Tavern. In Lower Canada the leader was Louis Joseph Papineau. Engagements occurred at St. Denis, St. Charles, and St. Eustache. The rebellion failed because the leaders, Mackenzie and Papineau, had misjudged the feeling of the people regarding reform. In Upper Canada the majority of the people were loyal and law-abiding, but they had been misled by Mackenzie. In Lower Canada the rebels were opposed by the French Clergy. They were limited to a few districts, and few men of prominence took an active part in the uprising.

The attention of the British Parliament was drawn to the defects of the Government in Canada. They learned that lives had been lost and property had been damaged, so they sent Lord Durham to Canada as Governor-General. He was to inquire into the causes of the Rebellion, and was to make suggestions for improving the Government of the country. As a result the people were allowed a greater voice in the control of their own affairs, and this paved the way for the establishment of Responsible Government.

In Nova Scotia, Joseph Howe, an editor, became a member of the Legislature, and led the people of that province with wonderful ability along the path of Constitutional Reform without violence. In New Brunswick a similar agitation was successfully led by James Allan Wilson.



In 1840-41, the British Parliament passed the Act of Union, and it came into force in 1841. The Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada were united; the defects of the Constitutional Act were remedied in-so-far as the following were concerned....the government, land grants, the division of the Clergy Reserves, and the revenue. The Assembly gained control of the revenue, and the first step toward Responsible Government was taken.

In 1849 the principle of Responsible Government was upheld by Lord Elgin who was the Governor-General. He signed the Rebellion Losses Bill, and thereby completed the struggle for this type of government. Since then the government of Canada has been by a Cabinet which commanded the confidence of the Canadian Legislature; and the Governor-General has occupied the impartial position similar to that which he occupies to-day. Since that time the political interests of the Governor-Generals has become less and less, and at the present time his position in Canada somewhat resembles that of the position of the King of England.

#### CONFEDERATION AND THE GROWTH OF CANADA:

In 1783-4 the United Empire Loyalists brought ideas of Responsible Government with them when they came to Canada. In 1791 the Legislative Assembly was established by the Constitutional Act. It was to represent the people, but between 1791 and 1840 there was a demand for Responsible Government. In 1840 this type of government was established in name, but not in fact. In 1849 Responsible Government was established by Lord Elgin signing the Rebellion Losses Bill. After 1849 there was a demand for representation in parliament according to population. This caused a political deadlock, and resulted in the formation of coalition governments. In 1864 the French members opposed an equal number of English



In 1840-41, the British Parliament passed the Act of Union, and it came into force in 1841. The Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada were united; the defects of the Constitutional Act were remedied in so far as the following were concerned:....the government, land grants, the division of the Clergy Reserves, and the revenue. The Assembly gained control of the revenue, and the first step toward Responsible Government was taken. In 1848 the principle of Responsible Government was upheld by Lord Elgin who was the Governor-General. He signed the Rebellion Losses Bill, and thereby completed the struggle for this type of government. Since then the government of Canada has been by a Cabinet which commanded the confidence of the Canadian Legislature; and the Governor-General has occupied the impartial position similar to that which he occupies today. Since that time the political interests of the Governor-General have become less and less, and at the present time his position in Canada somewhat resembles that of the position of the King of England.

#### CONFEDERATION AND THE GROWTH OF CANADA

In 1867 the United Empire Loyalists brought ideas of Responsible Government with them when they came to Canada. In 1791 the Legislative Assembly was established by the Constitutional Act. It was to represent the people, but between 1791 and 1840 there was a demand for Responsible Government. In 1840 this type of government was established in name, but not in fact. In 1849 Responsible Government was established by Lord Elgin signing the Rebellion Losses Bill. After 1849 there was a demand for representation in parliament according to population. This caused a political deadlock, and resulted in the formation of coalition governments. In 1864 the French members opposed an equal number of English



members in the legislature on important questions, and progress was impossible. The political leaders then dropped their political feuds and united in a common cause.

In 1865-6 the Reciprocity Treaty with the United States was cancelled because the Americans felt that Canada had reaped the greatest benefit during the American Civil War. It then became necessary for Canada to look for other markets, and it is said that this resulted in the removal of the inter-provincial barriers and in the establishment of a commercial union of the provinces.

From 1775-6 when the Americans unsuccessfully tried to force Canada to become the fourteenth colony in the American Union; through the war of 1812; the American Civil War of 1861-65, and the Fenian Raids of 1866, the necessity for organized military protection was shown.

There were thoughts of a union of the Maritime Provinces, and a conference had been called to discuss the issue there. In 1864 representatives of the other provinces asked permission to attend the Charlottetown Conference where the question of a Political union were discussed. Later in 1864 a Conference was held at Quebec, and plans were made for the union of all of the Canadian Provinces. The representatives returned to their provinces to ascertain the feelings of their people and the parliaments in connection with the issue. In Upper and Lower Canada the people and the Parliament were in favour; in Nova Scotia the parliament was in favour, but the people were opposed at first; in New Brunswick the people were opposed at first, but later they were in favour; in Prince Edward Island and Newfoundland the people were opposed.

In 1866 the delegates were sent to England to draft suitable terms if the ~~British~~ <sup>British</sup> parliament was agreeable. The British parliament



members in the legislature on important questions, and progress was impossible. The political leaders then dropped their political trade and united in a common cause.

In 1855-6 the Reciprocity Treaty with the United States was cancelled because the Americans felt that Canada had wronged the greatest benefit during the American Civil War. It then became necessary for Canada to look for other markets, and it is said that this resulted in the removal of the inter-provincial barriers and in the establishment of a commercial union of the provinces.

From 1775-6 when the Americans unsuccessfully tried to force Canada to become the fourteenth colony in the American Union; through the war of 1812; the American Civil War of 1861-65, and the Fenian Raids of 1866, the necessity for organized military protection was shown.

There were thoughts of a union of the Maritime Provinces, and a conference had been called to discuss the issue there. In 1866 representatives of the other provinces asked permission to attend the Confederation Conference where the question of a Political Union was discussed. Later

in 1864 a Conference was held at Quebec, and plans were made for the union of all of the Canadian Provinces. The representatives returned to their provinces to ascertain the feelings of their people and the politicians in connection with the issue. In Upper and Lower Canada the people and

the Parliament were in favour; in Nova Scotia the Parliament was in favour, but the people were opposed at first; in New Brunswick the people were opposed at first, but later they were in favour; in Prince Edward Island and Newfoundland the people were opposed.

In 1866 the delegates were sent to England to draft a Bill for terms if the British Parliament was agreeable. The British Parliament



approved the terms which were submitted, and the British North America Act was established.

Confederation was a union of the individual Canadian Provinces under one Federal or Dominion Government for mutual support in connection with issues which concerned all of the provinces, and each province was to have a government to look after local or provincial affairs.

The Fathers of Confederation were the thirty-six representatives from Upper and Lower Canada, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Prince Edward Island and Newfoundland who met in Quebec in 1864, and agreed unanimously to the resolutions on which the Constitution of Canada is based. They are entitled to fame and honour because they united the provinces of British North America into one permanent Dominion which is a distinguished and prosperous self-governing state of the British Empire. They formed a constitution that was unlike any that had been previously organized, and solved the problem of having a central government for the entire Dominion while each province had a parliament of its own to look after its local affairs. They forsook strong party differences and personal ambitions while they worked in the interests of the Dominion and the welfare of the British Empire. They showed a wisdom and a patriotism which was far in advance of the spirit of the day, and created a new state which was one of the most notable achievements of the nineteenth century. They believed in the future of Canada and refused to listen to the pessimistic predictions of all who lacked faith and courage. A few of the leaders of the movement which led to Confederation were:- Sir John A. MacDonald, George Brown, George E. Cartier, Leonard Tilley, Dr. Charles Tupper, Thomas D'Arcy McGee, and Alexander Tilloch Galt.



approved the terms which were submitted, and the British North American Act was established.

Confederation was a union of the individual Canadian Provinces under one Federal or Dominion Government for mutual support in connection with issues which concerned all of the provinces, and each province was to have a government to look after local or provincial affairs.

The Fathers of Confederation were the thirty-six representatives from Upper and Lower Canada, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Prince Edward Island and Newfoundland who met in Quebec in 1864, and agreed unanimously to the resolutions on which the Constitution of Canada is based. They are entitled to fame and honor because they united the provinces of British North America into one permanent Dominion which is a distinguished and prosperous self-governing state of the British Empire. They formed a constitution that was unlike any that had been previously organized, and solved the problem of having a central government for the entire Dominion while each province had a parliament of its own to look after its local affairs. They forewent strong party differences and personal ambitions while they worked in the interests of the Dominion and the welfare of the British Empire. They showed a wisdom and a patriotism which was far in advance of the spirit of the day, and created a new state which was one of the most notable achievements of the nineteenth century. They believed in the future of Canada and refused to listen to the pessimistic predictions of all who lacked faith and courage.

A few of the leaders of the movement which led to Confederation were:- Sir John A. Macdonald, George Brown, George E. Cartier, Leonard Tilley, Dr. Charles Tupper, Thomas D'Arcy McGee, and Alexander Tilloch Galt.



The British North America Act was passed by the British parliament in 1867, and it became effective on July 1 which has been celebrated ever since as the birthday of the Dominion. It was prompted by the four factors:..Political, Commercial, Military, and Imperial. According to its provisions, Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia were to be united under a Federal or Dominion Government, and were to be known as The Dominion of Canada. Provisions were made for the admission of other provinces if they wanted to join. There was to be a Governor-General over the Dominion. He was to be appointed by the Crown and was to represent the King in Canada. There was to be a Cabinet of thirty members to advise the Governor-General. They were to be responsible to the representatives of the people in parliament. It was to be composed of Senators and members of the House of Commons. There was to be a Senate composed of seventy-two members. One-third of them were to be appointed from Ontario; one-third from Quebec, and one-third from the Maritime Provinces. They were appointed for life by the Governor-General. In addition there was to be a House of Commons elected every five years on the basis of representation according to population. Quebec was to have sixty-five members, and the other provinces in proportion to their populations. The Dominion Government was to have control over Postal matters, militia, criminal law, tariffs, penitentiaries, the appointment of Provincial Lieutenant Governors, and all National matters. Each provincial government was to have control over education, municipal government, jails and asylums, the enforcement of law, the sale of liquor, licenses, and local affairs. Ottawa was selected as the capital of the Dominion, and true responsible government was established.

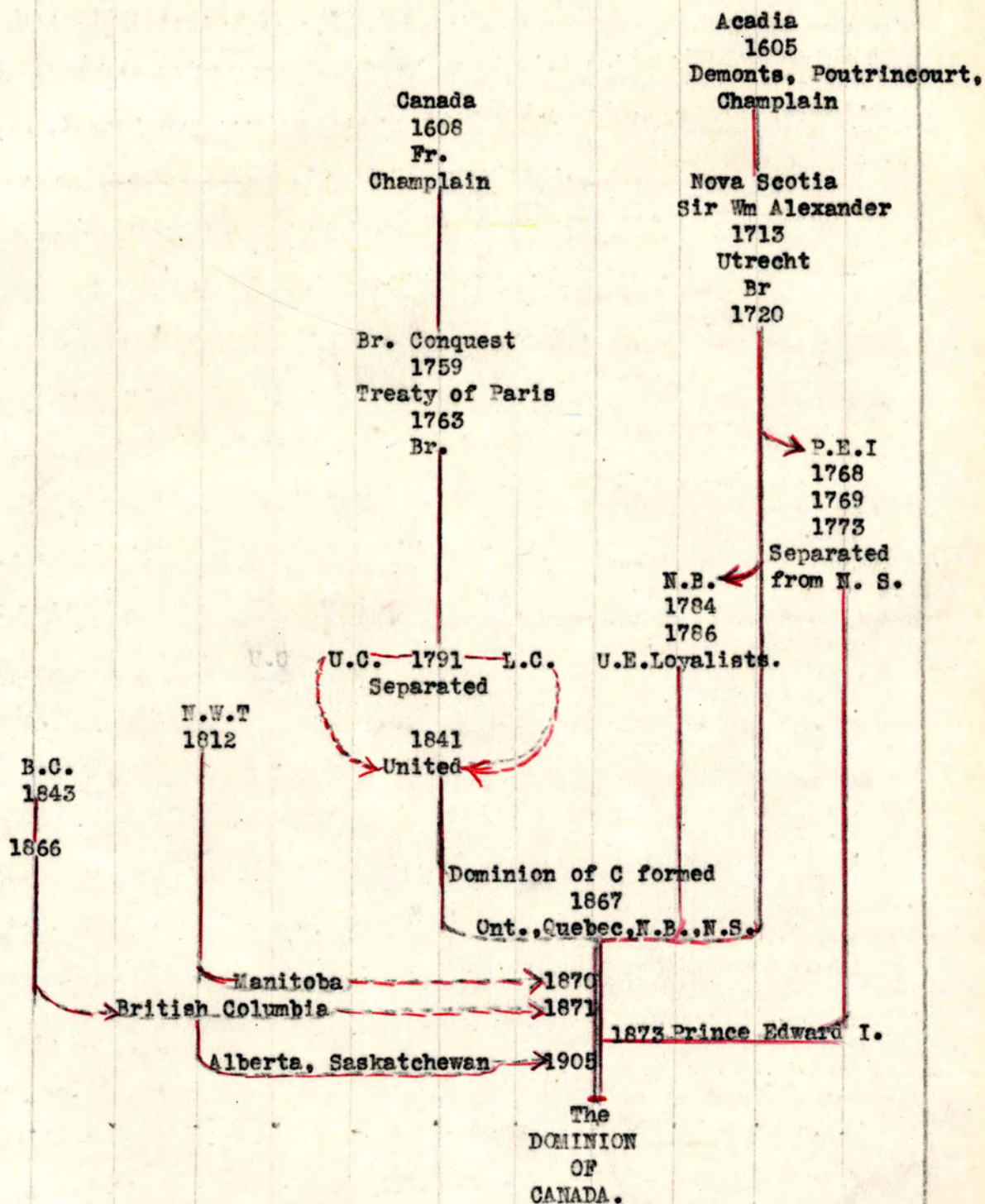


established.

as the capital of the Dominion, and the responsible government was  
law, the sale of liquor, licenses, and local affairs. Ottawa was selected  
education, municipal government, jails and asylums, the enforcement of  
National matters. Each provincial government was to have control over  
taxes, the appointment of Provincial Lieutenant Governors, and all  
control over postal matters, militia, criminal law, tariffs, passport-  
portion to their populations. The Dominion Government was to have  
Quebec was to have sixty-five members, and the other provinces in pro-  
five years on the basis of representation according to population.  
General. In addition there was to be a House of Commons elected every  
the Maritime Provinces. They were appointed for life by the Governor-  
to be appointed from Ontario; one-third from Quebec, and one-third from  
was to be a Senate composed of seventy-two members. One-third of them were  
to be composed of Senators and members of the House of Commons. There  
responsible to the representatives of the people in parliament. It was  
of thirty members to advise the Governor-General. They were to be  
Crown and was to represent the King in Canada. There was to be a Cabinet  
be a Governor-General over the Dominion. He was to be appointed by the  
the admission of other provinces if they wanted to join. There was to  
were to be known as The Dominion of Canada. Provisions were made for  
Sections were to be united under a Federal or Dominion Government, and  
According to its provisions, Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick, and Nova  
by the four factors: Political, Commercial, Military, and Imperial.  
celebrated ever since as the birthday of the Dominion. It was prompted  
parliament in 1867, and it became effective on July 1 which has been  
The British North America Act was passed by the British

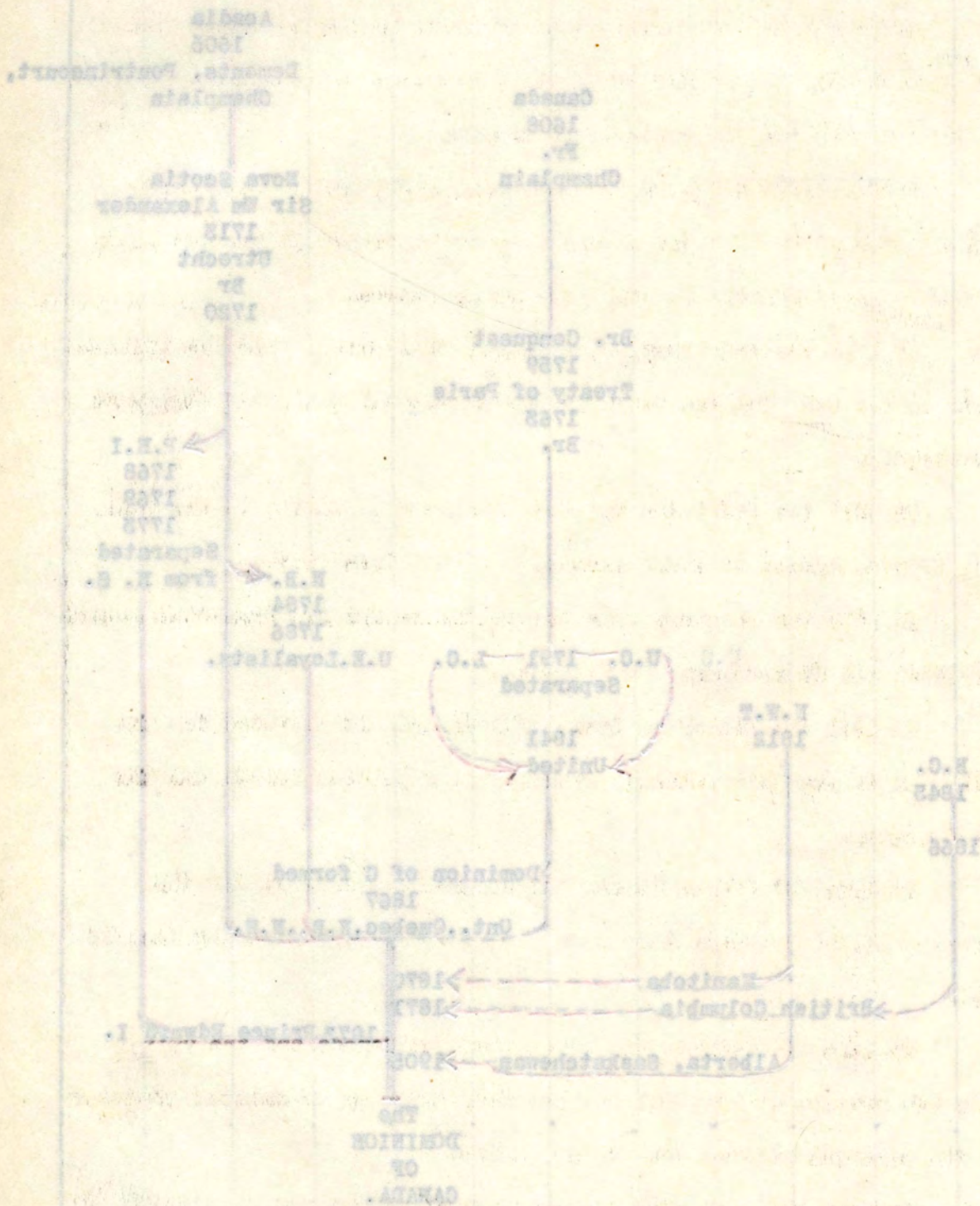


A SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM SHOWING THE GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT OF CANADA:





A SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM SHOWING THE GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT OF CANADA:





THE INTERNATIONAL RELATIONSHIPS WHICH HAVE EXISTED BETWEEN CANADA AND THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA....1759 to the PRESENT TIME:

In 1775-6 the Americans tried to force Canada to become the fourteenth Colony in the American Union, but they were defeated by Sir Guy Carleton who was the Governor of Canada.

Between 1783 and 1788 the Americans drove the United Empire Loyalists out of their country, and they found refuge in various parts of Canada...particularly in Upper and Lower Canada.

In 1812 the Americans tried to separate Canada from the British Empire in the War that was fought between 1812 and 1814, but they were unsuccessful.

In 1817 the Americans and the Canadians according to the Rush Bagot Treaty, agreed to limit armaments on the Great Lakes.

In 1839 the boundary line between Maine and New Brunswick caused a dispute, but an agreement was reached.

In 1842 the Ashburton Treaty was signed. It provided for the settlement of the international boundary line between Canada and the United States.

In 1846 the Oregon Treaty was signed. It provided for the extension of the boundary line from the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific coast.

In 1854 the Reciprocity Treaty between Canada and the United States was passed. It provided for the free exchange of natural products and raw material between the two countries.

Between 1861 and 1865 the American Civil war was in progress in the United States, and the Canadians feared trouble because of the Trent Affair.



THE INTERNATIONAL RELATIONSHIPS WHICH HAVE EXISTED BETWEEN CANADA AND  
THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA... 1789 to the PRESENT TIME.

In 1775-6 the Americans tried to force Canada to become the  
fourteenth Colony in the American Union, but they were defeated by Sir  
Guy Carleton who was the Governor of Canada.

Between 1783 and 1785 the Americans drove the United Empire  
Loyalists out of their country, and they found refuge in various parts  
of Canada... particularly in Upper and Lower Canada.

In 1812 the Americans tried to separate Canada from the British  
Empire in the War that was fought between 1812 and 1814, but they were  
unsuccessful.

In 1817 the Americans and the Canadians according to the Rush  
Bagot Treaty, agreed to limit armaments on the Great Lakes.

In 1839 the boundary line between Maine and New Brunswick caused  
a dispute, but an agreement was reached.

In 1842 the Ashburton Treaty was signed. It provided for the  
settlement of the international boundary line between Canada and the  
United States.

In 1846 the Oregon Treaty was signed. It provided for the  
extension of the boundary line from the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific  
coast.

In 1854 the Reciprocity Treaty between Canada and the United  
States was passed. It provided for the free exchange of natural products  
and raw material between the two countries.

Between 1861 and 1865 the American Civil War was in progress in  
the United States, and the Canadians feared trouble because of the  
Frontier Affair.



In 1865-6 the Reciprocity Treaty with the United States was cancelled because the Americans felt that the Canadians had reaped the greatest benefit during the Civil War.

In 1866 the Fenian Raids started. They continued through 1870 and 1871, but they did not amount to much.

In 1867 Confederation was established in Canada, and markets were provided for Canadian produce by the removal of the inter-provincial barriers. This meant that the Canadians did not need the American markets.

In 1871 the Washington Treaty between Great Britain and the United States was signed. It settled a number of points that had been in dispute for some time...the use of Canadian fishing waters, and the Alaska boundary.

In 1911 the Canadians refused to consider a Reciprocity Treaty with the United States. They also refused to consider a union with that country due to loyalty to Great Britain.

In 1917 the Canadians and the Americans fought with the Allies during the last year of the First World War 1914-1918.

In 1926 a Canadian Legation was established in Washington.

In 1934 The American Congress defeated the deep water-way scheme which was to allow ocean vessels to journey to the head of the Great Lakes.

In 1935 President Roosevelt assured Canada that the United States would not arm against her.

During World War II, 1939-1945, the Americans and the Canadians helped the Allies in the Struggle.

In 1948 the deep water-way scheme came up for discussion in the American Congress.



In 1866 the Reciprocity Treaty with the United States was

cancelled because the Americans felt that the Canadians had reaped the

greatest benefit during the Civil War.

In 1866 the Fenian Raids started. They continued through 1870

and 1871, but they did not amount to much.

In 1867 Confederation was established in Canada, and matters

were provided for Canadian produced by the removal of the inter-provincial

barriers. This meant that the Canadians did not need the American markets.

In 1871 the Washington Treaty between Great Britain and the

United States was signed. It settled a number of points that had been in

dispute for some time...the use of Canadian fishing waters, and the

Alaska boundary.

In 1911 the Canadians refused to consider a Reciprocity Treaty

with the United States. They also refused to consider a union with that

country due to loyalty to Great Britain.

In 1917 the Canadians and the Americans fought with the Allies

during the last year of the First World War 1914-1918.

In 1926 a Canadian Legation was established in Washington.

In 1934 The American Congress defeated the deep water-way

scheme which was to allow ocean vessels to journey to the head of the

Great Lakes.

In 1935 President Roosevelt assured Canada that the United States

would not arm against her.

During World War II, 1939-1945, the Americans and the Canadians

helped the Allies in the struggle.

In 1948 the deep water-way scheme came up for discussion in

the American Congress.



## CANADA AND THE MOTHER COUNTRY:

### a. THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN 1759 and 1897:

During this period of Canadian History, the Mother Country protected and cared for this country. The British tax-payers paid vast sums for the defence and the development of Canada when she was not able to defend or develop herself.

### b. THE LATER RELATIONSHIPS BETWEEN 1897 and 1948:

In 1897 Queen Victoria celebrated the Diamond Jubilee or the sixtieth anniversary of her accession to the throne of Britain. At that time there was a feeling in favour of a closer union between the Mother Country and her over-seas Dominions. A federation of the Empire was advocated. Each unit was to have a representative in the parliament in Great Britain. At first Sir Wilfred Laurier, the Prime Minister of Canada, was in favour of this move, but later he favoured a continuation of Dominion Self-government. Under this system there was a common allegiance to the Crown even while each unit enjoyed the fullest right to regulate its own affairs.

In 1899 the Canadian Government sent troops to help the British forces in the Boer War in South Africa. During this war...1899-1902, British soldiers were withdrawn from Canadian soil, and the fortifications at Halifax and Esquimaux were handed over to the Canadian militia.

Canada assumed the responsibility of looking after her own internal, external, and military affairs, and her own naval defence. Striking developments took place in connection with foreign relations, and in 1908 Canada received from the British Government, an acknowledgment of her right to make her agreements with other countries, and her promise that no Imperial Treaty could be binding upon Canada without her



## A. THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN 1897 AND 1907

During this period of Canadian history, the Northern Country protected and cared for this country. The British tax-payers paid taxes for the defence and the development of Canada when she was not able to defend or develop herself.

## B. THE LATER RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN 1907 AND 1929

In 1907 Queen Victoria celebrated the Diamond Jubilee or the sixtieth anniversary of her accession to the throne of Britain. At that time there was a feeling in favour of a closer union between the Northern Country and her over-seas Dominions. A federation of the Empire was advocated. Each unit was to have a representative in the parliament in Great Britain. At first Sir Wilfrid Laurier, the Prime Minister of Canada, was in favour of this move, but later he favoured a continuation of Dominion Self-government. Under this system there was a common allegiance to the Crown even while each unit enjoyed the fullest right to regulate its own affairs.

In 1909 the Canadian Government sent troops to help the British forces in the Boer War in South Africa. During this war... 1909-1910, British soldiers were withdrawn from Canadian soil, and the fortifications at Halifax and Esplanade were handed over to the Canadian militia. Canada assumed the responsibility of looking after her own internal, external, and military affairs, and her own naval defence. Striking developments took place in connection with foreign relations, and in 1908 Canada received from the British Government, an acknowledgment of her right to make her agreements with other countries, and her promise that no Imperial Treaty could be binding upon Canada without her



expressed consent.

In 1910 the Canadian Navy was established. It was to be under the control of the Canadian Government, but it was to act in co-operation with the British Navy.

In 1910 by the Immigration Act, Canada secured the right to control even British immigration. In addition the immigration from other countries was under the control of the Canadian Government.

During the First Great War..1914-1918, Canada rallied to the support of the Mother Country and sent men, military supplies, and food to help the allies. Canadians served in various theatres of the war, and fought valiantly in France and other sections. In this war sixty Canadians won the Victoria Cross.

After the Great War, Sir Robert Borden proposed sending a diplomatic representative of Canada to the United States, but it did not materialize for some years. In 1926 Mackenzie King established a Canadian legation in Washington. It was distinct and separate from the British Embassy.

In 1926 the Imperial Conference supported the relation between the Mother Country and the Dominions. In the report of the Conference dealing with Inter-Imperial relations, it was laid down that "Great Britain and the Dominions are autonomous communities within the British Empire, equal in status, and in no way subordinate one to another in any aspect of their domestic and external affairs, though united by a common allegiance to the crown, and freely associated as members of the British Commonwealth of Nations."

In 1931 the Statute of Westminster was passed by the British Parliament. It set forth that no future Act of the British Parliament was



expressed comment.

In 1910 the Canadian Navy was established. It was to be under the control of the Canadian Government, but it was to act in co-operation with the British Navy.

In 1910 by the Immigration Act, Canada secured the right to control even British immigration. In addition the Immigration from other countries was under the control of the Canadian Government.

During the First Great War, 1914-1918, Canada rallied to the support of the Mother Country and sent men, military supplies, and food to help the allies. Canadians served in various theatres of the war, and fought valiantly in France and other sections. In this war sixty Canadians won the Victoria Cross.

After the Great War, Sir Robert Borden proposed sending a diplomatic representative of Canada to the United States, but it did not materialize for some years. In 1925 Mackenzie King established a Canadian legation in Washington. It was distinct and separate from the British Embassy.

In 1926 the Imperial Conference supported the relation between the Mother Country and the Dominions. In the report of the Conference dealing with inter-imperial relations, it was laid down that "Great Britain and the Dominions are autonomous communities within the British Empire, equal in status, and in no way subordinate one to another in any respect of their domestic and external affairs, though united by a common allegiance to the crown, and freely associated as members of the British Commonwealth of Nations."

In 1931 the Statute of Westminster was passed by the British Parliament. It set forth that no future Act of the British Parliament was



to apply to a Dominion except by the request and assent of the Dominion concerned, and that the Dominion might pass laws which would invalidate British Acts which hitherto had been valid in the Dominions. In addition a further provision stated that "any alteration in the law touching the succession to the Throne or the Royal Style and Titles shall hereafter require the assent as well of the Parliaments of all the Dominions, as of the United Kingdom.

Reduced to the simplest terms, the Statute of Westminster means that the British Parliament has abandoned any claim to legislate for the Dominions, and that in accordance with the "Balfour Definition" the Dominions are "freely associated as members of the British Commonwealth of Nations." (A History of the British Empire by S. Reed Brett.)

#### CANADA AND THE SECOND WORLD WAR 1939-1945:

On September 10, 1939, Canada declared war on Germany even though she was not compelled to do so by any treaty, agreement, commitment or promise.

##### *The army:-*

Before the war Canada had a pre-war permanent force of 4500 men in her peace-time army. After war was declared an expansion programme was launched, and her army strength reached almost 500,000 men. In addition there were more than 15,000 women in the Canadian Women's Army Corps.

The first contingent of the First Canadian Division landed in the United Kingdom on December 17, 1939. Since then the troops overseas were reinforced and intensively trained for the big invasion offensive and for additional garrison for Britain's threatened shores. Before



to apply to a Dominion except by the request and assent of the Dominion concerned, and that the Dominion might pass laws which would invalidate British Acts which hitherto had been valid in the Dominion. In addition a further provision stated that "any alteration in the law touching the succession to the Throne or the Royal Style and Titles shall hereafter require the assent as well of the Parliament of all the Dominions, as of the United Kingdom."

Reduced to the simplest terms, the Statute of Westminster means that the British Parliament has abandoned any claim to legislate for the Dominions, and that in accordance with the "Salvoir Definition" the Dominions are "freely associated as members of the British Commonwealth of Nations." (A History of the British Empire by S. Reid Brock.)

#### CANADA AND THE SECOND WORLD WAR 1939-1945

On September 10, 1939, Canada declared war on Germany even though she was not compelled to do so by any treaty, agreement, commitment or promise. The Canadian war Canada had a pre-war permanent force of 4500 men in her peace-time army. After war was declared an expansion programme was launched, and her army strength reached almost 800,000 men. In addition there were more than 15,000 women in the Canadian Women's Army Corps. The first contingent of the First Canadian Division landed in the United Kingdom on December 17, 1939. Since then the troops overseas were reinforced and intensively trained for the big invasion offensive and for additional garrison for Britain's threatened shores. Before



French resistance collapsed in 1940, Canadian troops had landed in France. They were ready for battle, but they were recalled without going into action. After the evacuation of the British forces from Dunkirk in early June, 1940, the Canadians were among the few adequately equipped troops left in the United Kingdom to meet a possible enemy invasion.

Various Canadian detachments took part in raids on the European coast, and later in 1941 nearly 2000 Canadians were engaged in the fighting at Hong Kong where all were killed or taken prisoner when that fortress fell on December 25th.

On August 19, 1942 Canadian forces predominated in the raid on Dieppe where more than 3,350 Canadians were killed, wounded, or taken prisoner.

On July 10, 1943, the Canadians invaded the Island of Sicily, and helped to force the enemy to retreat to the Italian mainland. On September 3, 1943, Italy was invaded, and soon the Canadians were operating under Canadian command. The soldiers of the First Division took part in the Adriatic fighting which ended in the capture of Ortona in December. After that the Canadians drove the crucial wedge through the enemy line, and opened the way to Rome. They helped to force the enemy mile after mile up the Italian boot, and broke through the Gothic line near the Adriatic coast.

When D-day arrived, <sup>June 6</sup>~~June 1~~, 1944, the Canadians were in the vanguard of the forces in Normandy. They covered the beaches and pushed inland, and cut off the highway leading to Caen. They captured Caen, and later pushed on to Paris with the British. From Paris they continued toward German territory, and other sections of the Canadian Army freed the Channel







ports of Le Havre, Dieppe, Boulogne, Calais, and Ostend; and in the grimmest struggle of all they captured the Scheldt estuary to clear shipping into Antwerp which was a vital harbour on the shortest allied line to the heart of Germany. With a foothold in Germany itself, the last drive was on. Early in March of 1945, the Canadians were approaching the Rhine River. By the end of March they had crossed the Rhine, and early in April they had penetrated as far as the border of Holland. By the middle of April they had reached the North Sea. On May 5, the Canadians in Holland accepted the German surrender in that section.

#### THE AIR FORCE:

When the war started, Canada had only a few trained fliers, and it was realized that additional men were badly needed. In December of 1939 the British Commonwealth Air Training Plan was organized by Canada, the United Kingdom, Australia, and New Zealand. The sole object was to speed up the training of the necessary fliers so that the Allies could obtain and maintain air supremacy over the enemy.

Under the administration of the Royal Canadian Air Force, training centres and flying fields were established across Canada from the Atlantic to the Pacific. There were 154 air and ground training schools established. That was twice as many as was originally planned. The last one was opened in December 1941.

When the Air training plan was first organized, it was scheduled to continue until March of 1943, but its early success prompted the extension of the scheme until March of 1945.

During the war at least forty-two Canadian Squadrons went overseas. Nearly all of their air crew were Canadians, their ground crew were Canadians, and the entire cost was borne by Canadians. They included



ports of Le Havre, Brest, Nantes, Calais, and Ostend; and in the  
extremest attempts of all they captured the Scheldt estuary to clear  
shipping into Antwerp which was a vital harbor on the shortest allied  
line to the heart of Germany. With a foothold in Germany itself, the last  
drive was on. Early in March of 1945, the Canadians were approaching the  
Rhine River. By the end of March they had crossed the Rhine, and early  
in April they had penetrated as far as the border of Holland. By the  
middle of April they had reached the North Sea. On May 5, the Canadians  
in Holland accepted the German surrender in that section.

#### THE AIR FORCE

When the war started, Canada had only a few trained fliers, and it  
was realized that additional men were badly needed. In December of 1939  
the British Commonwealth Air Training Plan was organized by Canada. The  
United Kingdom, Australia, and New Zealand. The sole object was to speed  
up the training of the necessary fliers so that the Allies could obtain  
and maintain air supremacy over the enemy.

Under the administration of the Royal Canadian Air Force, training  
centres and flying fields were established across Canada from the Atlantic  
to the Pacific. There were 154 air and ground training schools establish-  
ed. That was twice as many as was originally planned. The first one was  
opened in December 1941.

When the Air Training Plan was first organized, it was scheduled  
to continue until March of 1943, but its early success prompted the  
extension of the scheme until March of 1945.

During the war at least forty-two Canadian squadrons went over-  
seas. Nearly all of their air crew were Canadians, their ground crew  
were Canadians, and the entire cost was borne by Canadians. They included



bomber, fighter, reconnaissance, coastal command, night fighter, and intruder squadrons.

As the course of the war changed from defensive to offensive, the R. C. A. F. became a tremendous hitting power. The Canadians dropped thousands of tons of bombs, and helped to make the invasion possible. Devastating attacks were made on the German transportation system, airfields, shipping, cities, and robot bomb bases. In addition they served in North Africa, Malta, Sicily, Italy, Burma, Ceylon, India, and the Aleutians.

From a pre-war nucleus of 4,000, the R.C.A.F. grew until it had a strength of over 204,000. Of these 190,000 were men, and 14,000 were women.

The training period was from eighteen to twenty months, and the graduates became bombers, wireless operators, navigators, and pilots. The men bombed key points and gave protection to land and sea forces. They operated from the British Isles, from Normandy, Belgium, and the Netherlands, and in other theatres of war.

#### THE NAVY:

In 1939 the Canadian Navy was composed of fifteen ships. These were manned by 1,700 men who were experienced seamen, The ships were to work in co-operation with the British Fleet.

As time passed the ship-building industry was expanded and extended. In 1939 there were fourteen fairly large yards with limited facilities, and fifteen smaller boat-works. After that additional ship-building yards were established and there were twenty-one major shipyards, four major outfitting yards, and sixty-five smaller boat-building organizations.



fighter, bomber, night fighter, and  
fighter squadron.

As the course of the war changed from defensive to offensive, the  
R. C. A. F. became a tremendous hitting power. The Canadians dropped  
thousands of tons of bombs, and helped to make the invasion possible.  
Diversifying attacks were made on the German transportation system, air-  
fields, shipping, cities, and other bomb bases. In addition they served  
in North Africa, Italy, Sicily, France, Germany, Japan, and the  
Aleutians.

From a pre-war nucleus of 4,000, the R. C. A. F. grew until it had  
a strength of over 104,000. Of these 190,000 were men, and 14,000 were  
women.

The training period was from eighteen to twenty months, and the  
graduates became bombers, wireless operators, navigators, and pilots. The  
men bombed key points and gave protection to land and sea forces. They  
operated from the British Isles, from Norway, Belgium, and the Netherlands,  
and in other theatres of war.

### THE NAVY

In 1939 the Canadian Navy was composed of fifteen ships. These  
were manned by 1,700 men who were experienced seamen. The ships were to  
work in co-operation with the British Fleet.

As time passed the ship-building industry was expanded and extended.  
In 1939 there were fourteen fairly large yards with limited facilities,  
and fifteen smaller boat-yards. After that additional ship-building yards  
were established and there were twenty-one major shipyards, four major  
outfitting yards, and sixty-five smaller boat-building organizations.



Ships were launched along the sea-boards, along the St. Lawrence River, and at Port Arthur at the head of the Great Lakes, and materials for the ships were produced in more than three-hundred plants across Canada.

Before the end of 1944 the grand total of ships produced numbered one-thousand. There were 500 combat vessels and naval craft, 352 cargo vessels and tankers, and 148 special vessels.

The personnel of Canada's Navy increased from 1700 at the beginning of the war to more than 90,000. This number included 5,000 women who were members of the Women's Royal Canadian Naval Service.

The original function of the Canadian Navy was to safe-guard the life-line of the United Nations between Canada and the United Kingdom. Canadian vessels served in convoys to escort vital cargoes and men across the Atlantic Ocean. Ships of the Canadian Navy joined in warding off submarine interference, transporting troops, shelling coastal fortifications, and guarding Canada's coast-lines.

More than 100 ships and 10,000 men of the Royal Canadian Navy took part in the Atlantic Ocean, and others served in the Mediterranean Sea. They carried men and supplies to North Africa, to Sicily, and to Albania. They served in the Caribbean, and in the North Pacific, and in the various theatres of war they were responsible for the destruction of enemy merchant ships, destroyers, mine-sweepers, trawlers, escort craft, flak ships, U-boats, E-boats, and other lighter craft.

Manned by 10,000 men, Canada's Merchant Navy carried the sinews of war to all parts of the globe. Men, munitions, and food were borne to Europe's invasion ports and to the United Kingdom, the Soviet Union, Africa, India, Australia, and New Zealand.



Ships were launched along the sea-coast, along the St. Lawrence River, and at Port Arthur at the head of the Great Lakes, and materials for the ships were produced in more than three-hundred plants across Canada. Before the end of 1944 the grand total of ships produced numbered one-thousand. There were 500 combat vessels and naval auxiliaries, 552 cargo vessels and tankers, and 148 special vessels. The personnel of Canada's Navy increased from 1700 at the beginning of the war to more than 70,000. This number included 2,000 women who were members of the Women's Royal Canadian Naval Service. The original function of the Canadian Navy was to help guard the life-line of the United Nations between Canada and the United Kingdom. Canadian vessels served in convoys to escort vital cargoes and men across the Atlantic Ocean. Ships of the Canadian Navy joined in working off submarine interference, transporting troops, shelling coastal fortifications, and guarding Canada's coast-lines. More than 100 ships and 10,000 men of the Royal Canadian Navy took part in the Atlantic Ocean, and others served in the Mediterranean. They carried men and supplies to North Africa, to Sicily, and to Albania. They served in the Caribbean, and in the North Pacific, and in the various theatres of war they were responsible for the destruction of enemy merchant ships, destroyers, mine-sweepers, transport, auxiliary craft, tank ships, U-boats, E-boats, and other lighter craft. More than 10,000 men of Canada's Merchant Navy carried the stores of war to all parts of the globe. Men, machines, and food were sent to Europe's invasion ports and to the United Kingdom, the Soviet Union, Africa, India, Australia, and New Zealand.



## THE HOME FRONT:

During the war man-power and materials in Canada were mobilized for all-out war production. Industrial plants were transformed from their peace-time state to highly specialized plants, and produced the materials that were required in war. The industrial evolution of Canada was <sup>she</sup> rapid, and speedily attained fourth place in production among the United Nations.

The most important industry in Canada was Agriculture. During the war there were 23% fewer men available for farm work, but production increased more than 40% to meet the greater demands. Canada as one of the world's greatest granaries exported more wheat than other nations. In addition the export of other food-stuffs increased and reached an all-time high.

The forest resources produced a great many vital necessities. These ranged from materials for Mosquito bombers to fuel wood, and countless civilian and war materials.

The other industries of Canada received an impetus which caused them to reach new levels during the war years. These included trapping, fishing, mining, shipping, and other associated activities.

The women of Canada worked in the various industries to help speed the victory, to help with the family income, and to extend Canada's social services. They worked in war-time factories and in civilian industry. They helped to carry on the vital task of agricultural production, and rendered their services to relieve the shortage of labourers.



During the war man-power and materials in Canada were mobilized for all-out war production. Industrial plants were transformed from their peacetime state to highly specialized plants, and produced the materials that were required in war. The industrial revolution of Canada was rapid and speedily attained fourth place in production among the United Nations.

The most important industry in Canada was agriculture. During the war there were 20% fewer men available for farm work, but production increased more than 40% to meet the greater demands. Canada as one of the world's greatest grain exporters exported more wheat than other nations. In addition the export of other food-stuffs increased and reached an all-time high.

The forest resources produced a great many vital necessities. These ranged from materials for Mosquito bombers to fuel wood, and countless civilian and war materials.

The other industries of Canada received an impetus which caused them to reach new levels during the war years. These included trapping, fishing, mining, shipping, and other associated activities.

The women of Canada worked in the various industries to help speed the victory, to help with the family income, and to extend Canada's social services. They worked in war-time factories and in civilian industry. They helped to carry on the vital task of agricultural production, and rendered their services to relieve the shortage of laborers.



## THE PEOPLE OF CANADA:

The population of Canada when the last census was taken was 11,814,000. These represent a number of races which have come to this country to make homes for themselves, and a few natives who are Indians and Eskimos. The different races lend variety and vigour to our national life, and bring to our country ideas from their homelands which enrich ours.

The basic races are English and French. Both languages are used officially, and the people live in practically every part of the Dominion where human habitations have been established.

The names of the various races that live in Canada are indicated below showing the percentage of each.

<u>From the British Isles</u> .....	49.68%
a. English.....	25.80%
b. Scottish.....	12.20%
c. Irish.....	11.02%
d. Others.....	.66%

<u>The French</u> .....	30.27%
-------------------------	--------

<u>Other Europeans</u> .....	17.76%
a. German.....	4.04%
b. Ukrainian.....	2.66%
c. Scandinavian.....	2.13%
d. Netherland.....	1.85%
e. Jewish.....	1.48%
f. Polish.....	1.45%
g. Italian.....	.98%
h. Russian.....	.73%
i. Hungarian.....	.47%
j. Czecho-Slovak.....	.37%
k. Others.....	1.60%

<u>Asiatic</u> .....	.64%
----------------------	------

<u>Indian and Eskimo</u> .....	1.09%
--------------------------------	-------

<u>Others</u> .....	.56%
	<u>100.00%</u>



THE PEOPLE OF CANADA

The population of Canada when the last census was taken was

11,816,000. These represent a number of races which have come to this

country to make homes for themselves, and a few natives who are Indians

and Eskimos. The different races have varied in their habits and ways of

life, and bring to our country ideas from their homelands which enrich

ours.

The main races are English and French. Both languages are used

officially, and the people live in practically every part of the Dominion

where human habitation has been established.

The names of the various races that live in Canada are indicated

below showing the percentage of each.

Races of the English

English	45.4%
Scottish	12.3%
Irish	11.0%
Welsh	1.0%

The French

French	30.7%
Acadian	17.5%
Basque	4.0%
Breton	2.4%
Norman	2.1%
Provençal	1.0%
Spanish	1.0%
Portuguese	1.0%
Italian	1.0%
German	1.0%
Dutch	1.0%
Swedish	1.0%
Norwegian	1.0%
Polish	1.0%
Austrian	1.0%
Hungarian	1.0%
Czech	1.0%
Slovak	1.0%
Ukrainian	1.0%
Russian	1.0%
Belgian	1.0%
Swiss	1.0%
American	1.0%
Other	1.0%

Other Races

Chinese	1.0%
Japanese	1.0%
Korean	1.0%
Philippine	1.0%
Indo-Chinese	1.0%
Other	1.0%



## THE ORIGIN OF PLACE NAMES IN CANADA:

According to Mr. G.H.Armstrong, M.A., in his book..."The Origin and Meaning of Place Names in Canada," the names that are used in our country come from at least five languages and periods. The periods that contributed the names that are used (in our country) are.....The Indian Period.....The Period of Exploration.....The French Period.....The British Loyalist Period....and....The Modern or National Period.

When the early white settlers came to Canada, they found that the Indians used general names for places and regions, but they did not have any record of those names. When the settlers became familiar with the names, they applied some of them to particular places because of their suitability....Winnipeg, Niagara, Restigouche, and Wanapitei.

The early explorers named some of the regions that they visited. They entered these in their records, and they have been handed down to us. They include such names as ...Chaleur, St. Lawrence, Juan de Fuca, and Fundy.

The French settlers used names which were associated with religion and their leaders. These include such names as ...St. Anne,... St. Boniface.....St. Hyacinth....St. Laurent, and Frontenac.

The United Empire Loyalists who settled in Canada used the names of the Royal Family, prominent statesmen, and the names of the places in the British Isles from which they came. These include such names as York, London, and St. Thomas.

Modern place-names were given in honour of some outstanding man of the period, a statesman, a law-giver, or a captain of industry. These include such names as Kitchener, Capreol, Timmins, and Peterborough.



THE ORIGIN OF PLACE NAMES IN CANADA

According to Dr. E. E. Schuchert, U.S.A., in his book "The Origin and Meaning of Place Names in Canada," the names that occurred in our country come from at least five languages and periods. The periods that constituted the names that are used in our country are.... The Indian Period.... The Period of Exploration.... The French Period.... The British Period.... and.... The Modern or National Period.

When the early white settlers came to Canada, they found that the Indians used general names for places and regions, but they did not have any record of these names. When the settlers became familiar with the names, they applied some of them to particular places, such as their own locality.... Winnipeg, Niagara, Kootenay, and Vancouver.

The early explorers named some of the regions that they visited. They entered these in their records, and they have been handed down to us. They include such names as... Chaleur, St. Lawrence, Jean de Vaca, and many.

The French settlers used names which were associated with religion and their leaders. These include such names as... St. Anne, St. Boniface, St. Hyacinthe, St. Joseph, St. Louis, and St. Vincent.

The United Empire Loyalists who settled in Canada used the names of the Royal Family, prominent statesmen, and the names of the places in the British Isles from which they came. These include such names as York, London, and St. Thomas.

Modern place-names were given in honour of some outstanding men of the period, a statesman, a law-giver, or a captain of industry. These include such names as Richmond, Capreol, Fleming, and Peterborough.



## EDUCATION:

During the French Period some of the leaders were interested in education. This prompted the establishment of a school in 1663 for the education of young men for the priesthood. In 1668 a Junior Seminary was established for training the youth in farming and the trades.

After the conquest of Canada by the British, the Maritime Provinces led the way. Many of the early European and Loyalist immigrants were well-educated and cultured, and they were determined that their children should enjoy the privilege of the best possible instruction. The first schools were usually private institutions that were established in connection with the church or by wealthier people for the education of their own children. Gradually two grades of schools developed in the Maritime Provinces and in Upper Canada...the common school and the grammar school.

In the common schools instruction was usually limited to the elementary subjects, such as the three "R's"...Reading, "Riting" and "Rithmetic." The teachers were often recruited from wounded soldiers who were unable to perform hard labour because of some physical disability. Some of these knew little more than their pupils.

In each of the provinces except Lower Canada, a common school system developed. School districts were created, and provision was made for the election of trustees who were to select the teacher and manage the affairs of the school.

In 1844 Egerton Ryerson was appointed Superintendent of Education in Upper Canada. This marked the beginning of a new era. He visited various schools in Great Britain and in Europe, and in 1846 he reported to the parliament. The recommendations made were adopted, and changes



During the French period some of the Indians were interested in education. This prompted the establishment of a school in 1663 for the education of young men for the priesthood. In 1680 a Junior Seminary was established for training the youth in farming and the trades.

After the conquest of Canada by the British, the Maritime Provinces led the way. Many of the early European and Acadian immigrants were well-educated and cultured, and they were determined that their children should enjoy the privilege of the best possible instruction. The first

schools were usually private institutions that were established in connection with the church or by wealthy people for the education of their own children. Gradually two grades of schools developed in the Maritime Provinces and in Upper Canada... the common school and the grammar school.

In the common schools instruction was usually limited to the elements of English, such as the three R's... Reading, Writing, and Arithmetic. The teachers were often recruited from wounded soldiers who were unable to perform hard labour because of some physical disability. Some of these knew little more than their pupils.

In each of the provinces except Lower Canada, a common school system developed. School districts were created, and provision was made for the election of trustees who were to select the teacher and manage the affairs of the school.

In 1844 Egerton Ryerson was appointed Superintendent of Education in Upper Canada. This marked the beginning of a new era. He visited various schools in Great Britain and in Europe, and in 1846 he reported to the parliament. His recommendations were adopted, and changes



were made. Since then improvements have been made, but the general plan that he suggested has been followed.

In 1938 the Department of Education in the Province of Ontario reorganized the Course of Study and the training of teachers. Emphasis was placed on teaching pupils rather than teaching subjects, and pupil activity became one of the outstanding features of the system.

In 1948 Public education is under provincial jurisdiction, and at least 2,400,000 students are enrolled in the schools and colleges of Canada. At least 96% of the population of the Dominion is literate. Schooling is compulsory in all provinces up to the ages of 14, 15, and 16 years, and in the Elementary Schools and High Schools, attendance is free. About two-thirds of the students finish elementary training which requires eight years, and at least twenty-five per cent finish High School which usually takes four years.

In the Secondary Schools the curriculum is flexible, and offers a liberal education in academic or technical studies. Social studies, discussion groups, and student participation are emphasized.

Each province has one or more universities, and over 6,000 students graduate each year. Canadian medical and engineering faculties are world famous. The largest University is "The Toronto University." It has an average enrolment of 7,500.

A number of Agricultural Colleges stress scientific agriculture and farm husbandry. These institutions try to help the farmers in their work, and have done a great deal to improve conditions and production in various parts of the country.

Even after they leave school, Canadians enjoy a number of



your needs. Since these improvements have been made, but the general plan that he suggested has been followed.

In 1938 the Department of Education in the Province of Ontario reorganized the course of study and the training of teachers. Emphasis was placed on teaching pupils rather than teaching subjects, and pupils actively became one of the outstanding features of the system.

In 1945 further education is under provincial jurisdiction, and at least 2,000,000 students are enrolled in the schools and colleges of Canada. At least 95% of the population of the Province is literate. Schooling is compulsory in all provinces up to the age of 16, 18, and 19 years, and in the Elementary Schools and High Schools, attendance is free. About two-thirds of the students finish elementary training which requires eight years, and at least twenty-five per cent finish High

School which usually takes four years. In the Secondary Schools the curriculum is flexible, and offers a liberal education in academic or technical studies. Social studies, discussion groups, and student participation are emphasized.

Each province has one or more universities, and over 4,000 students graduate each year. Canadian medical and engineering faculties are world famous. The largest University is "The Toronto University." It has an average enrolment of 7,500.

A number of Agricultural Colleges across scientific agriculture and farm husbandry. These institutions try to help the farmers in their work, and have done a great deal to improve conditions and production in various parts of the country.

Even after they leave school, Canadians enjoy a number of



educational advantages. Under a government sponsored plan, more than 200,000 Canadians have taken courses in Home Economics, Farm Husbandry, Rural Co-operatives, and other courses. In some sections of the country Adult education and cultural development are regular features of community life.

The radio has done a great deal to help educate the people of Canada, and it deserves an outstanding place in the educational programme of the country. Special broadcasts are sponsored by the Departments of Education of the various Provinces. These have become regular features, in various subjects, and are used regularly in schools where provision has been made for receiving them .















THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA.



THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA



CONTENTS.

THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA.

Africa (General)

The Union of South Africa (General)

Early Discoverers.  
The Native People.  
Early Settlements.  
Later Settlements.  
The Boer War.  
The Rivers.  
The Physical and Climatic Conditions.  
The Work of the People.  
The Important Cities.  
Transportation.

The Union of South Africa (History)

The Early Discoverers.  
The Native People.  
The Establishment of Early Settlements.  
South Africa after 1789.  
The Boer War 1899-1902.  
Political Problems associated with the Union.  
Social Problems.  
Penetration of the Interior.



THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA

Africa (General)

The Union of South Africa (General)

Early Discoverers.  
The Native People.  
Early Settlements.  
Later Settlements.  
The Boer War.  
The Rivers.  
The Physical and Climatic Conditions.  
The Work of the People.  
The Important Cities.  
Transportation.

The Union of South Africa (History)

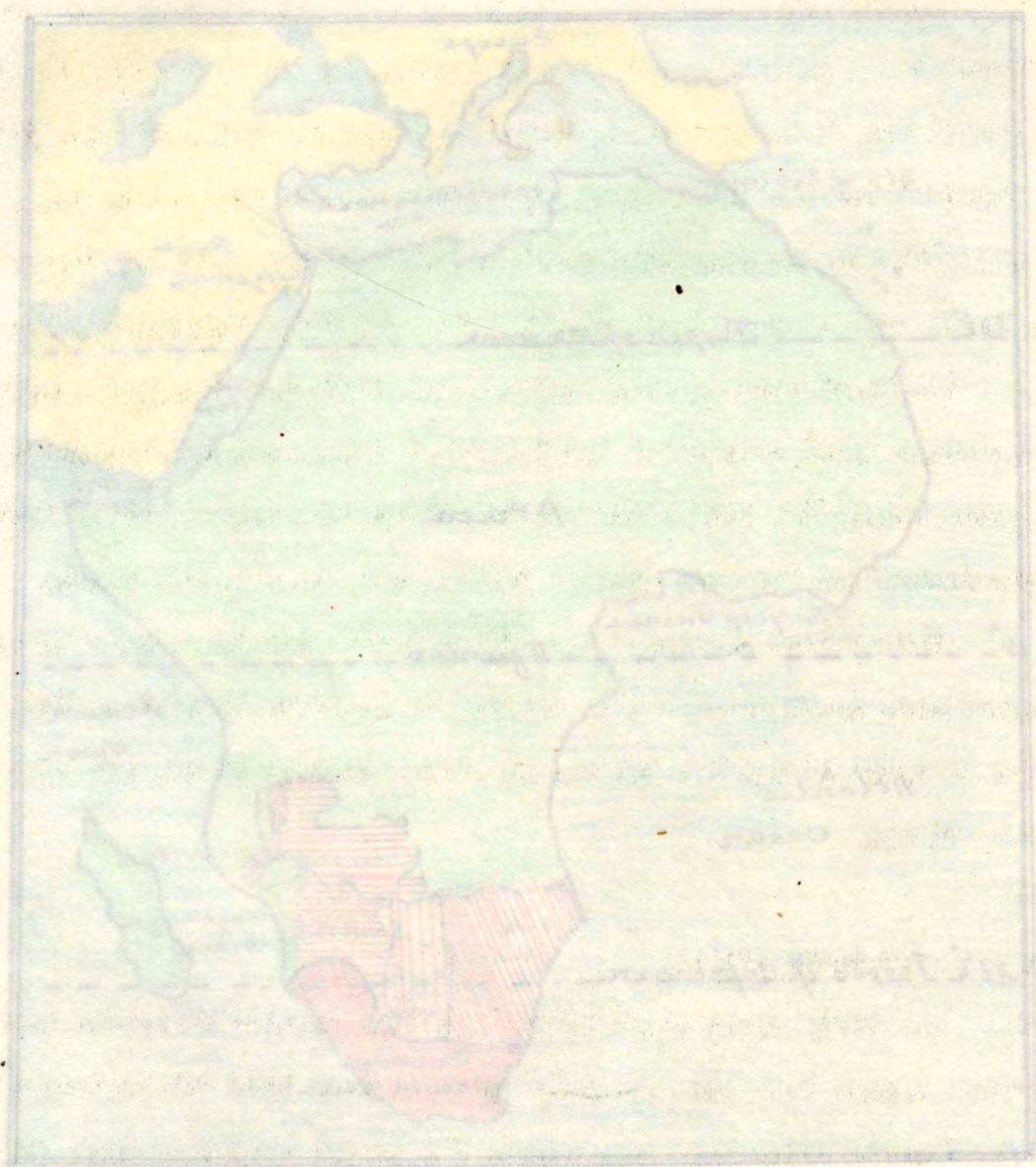
The Early Discoverers.  
The Native People.  
The Establishment of Early Settlements.  
South Africa after 1795.  
The Boer War 1899-1902.  
Political Problems associated with the Union.  
Social Problems.  
Penetration of the Interior.







Map of Africa





## THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA:

### (AFRICA, GENERAL)

The continent of Africa extends from 35 degrees South Latitude to 37 degrees North Latitude, and from 52 degrees East Longitude to 28 degrees West Longitude. It is crossed by three important parallels of Latitude... The Tropic of Cancer, the Equator, and the Tropic of Capricorn. The continent lies in the Temperate and the Torrid Zones....North Temperate Zone, North Torrid Zone, South Torrid Zone, and South Temperate Zone.

The coast-line is very regular, and there are few good harbours. The important coast waters are the Strait of Gibraltar, Mediterranean Sea, Suez Canal, Red Sea, Strait of Bab-el-Mandeb, Gulf of Aden, Indian Ocean, Mozambique Channel, Gulf of Guinea, and the Atlantic Ocean.

The British possessions in South Africa are Nyasaland, Rhodesia, Bechuanaland, South-west Africa, and The Union of South Africa. The rivers of South Africa are the Orange River, Limpopo River, and the Zambezi River.

---

### THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA.

The early discoverers of the southern section of Africa were Bartholomew Diaz 1487 for Portugal; Vasco da Gama 1498 for Portugal; and Sir Francis Drake 1580 of England. The native people of that section were Bushmen, Hottentots, and Bantus of Kaffirs who were made up of the Bachuans, Zulus, and Damaras.

Early settlements were established there by the Dutch in 1652 at Cape Town, and in the interior of Cape Province in 1657, and at Drakenstein and the Holland Range near the Berg River by French Huguenots in 1688.



THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA

(AFRICA. GENERAL)

The continent of Africa extends from 35 degrees North latitude to 37 degrees North latitude, and from 32 degrees East longitude to 32 degrees West longitude. It is crossed by three important parallels of latitude: The Tropic of Cancer, the Equator, and the Tropic of Capricorn. The continent lies in the Temperate and the Torrid Zones... North Temperate Zone, North Torrid Zone, South Torrid Zone, and South Temperate Zone. The coast-line is very regular, and there are few good harbours.

The important coast waters are the Strait of Gibraltar, Mediterranean Sea, Suez Canal, Red Sea, Strait of Bab-el-Mandeb, Gulf of Aden, Indian Ocean, Mozambique Channel, Gulf of Guinea, and the Atlantic Ocean.

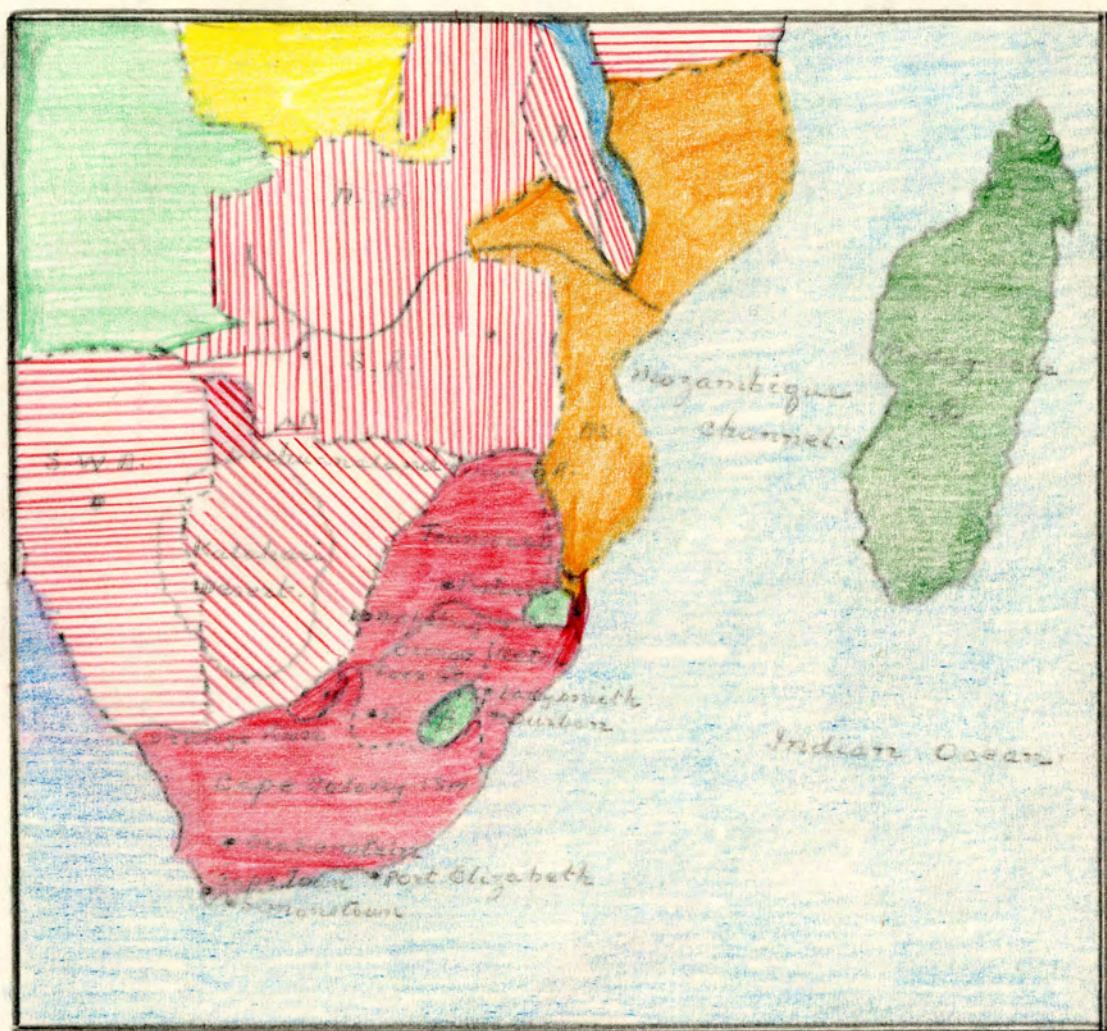
The British possessions in South Africa are Natal, Transvaal, Bechuanaland, South-west Africa, and The Union of South Africa. The rivers of South Africa are the Orange River, Limpopo River, and the Zambezi River.

THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA

The early discoverers of the southern section of Africa were Bartholomew Diaz 1487 for Portugal; Vasco da Gama 1488 for Portugal; and Sir Francis Drake 1580 of England. The native people of that section were Bushmen, Hottentots, and Bantus of various who were made up of the Bushmen, Hottentots, and Bantus. Early settlements were established there by the Dutch in 1652 at Cape Town, and in the interior of Cape Province in 1657, and at Drakenstein and the Holland Range near the Berg River by French Huguenots in 1688.



The Union of South Africa









After 1789 settlements were established in South Africa in various parts. Simonstown was established on False Bay in 1795 by the British; Cape Colony became a British possession in 1814; Port Elizabeth was established on Algoa Bay in 1820 by the British; Natal became a British possession in 1824; Durban was established in 1835 by a group of English Adventurers who also established settlements in Natal; Orange Free State was settled by the Boers who moved there from Cape Colony in 1835. In 1836 some of the Boers from Natal moved across the Vaal River and established settlements in the Transvaal. In 1885 Bechuanaland was annexed by the British.

The Boer War occurred between 1899 and 1902. The leaders of the Boers were General Botha, General Smuts, General Kruger, and General Hertzog. The British leaders were Lord Roberts and General Kitchener. Engagements occurred at Ladysmith in Natal; at Kimberley in Cape Province; at Mafeking in Bechuanaland; at Pretoria in Transvaal, and at Bloemfontain in Orange Free State. The states in the Union of South Africa are..... Cape of Good Hope Province which became a British Possession in 1814; Natal which was claimed by the British in 1824; Orange Free State which became a British state in 1900, and Transvaal which became a British state in 1902.

The rivers of the Union of South Africa are the Orange River which flows westward into the Atlantic Ocean along the northern border of Cape of Good Hope Province; the Vaal River which is between Orange Free State and the Transvaal, and the Limpopo River which forms the northern border of the Transvaal. This river flows eastward and empties into Delagoa Bay.



After 1789 settlements were established in South Africa in various parts. Simonstown was established on Table Bay in 1795 by the British; Cape Colony became a British possession in 1804; Port Elizabeth was established on Algoa Bay in 1820 by the British; Natal became a British possession in 1824; Durban was established in 1835 by a group of English Adventurers who also established settlements in Natal; Orange Free State was settled by the Boers who moved there from Cape Colony in 1838. In 1855 some of the Boers from Natal moved across the Vaal River and established settlements in the Transvaal. In 1868 Bechuanaland was annexed by the British.

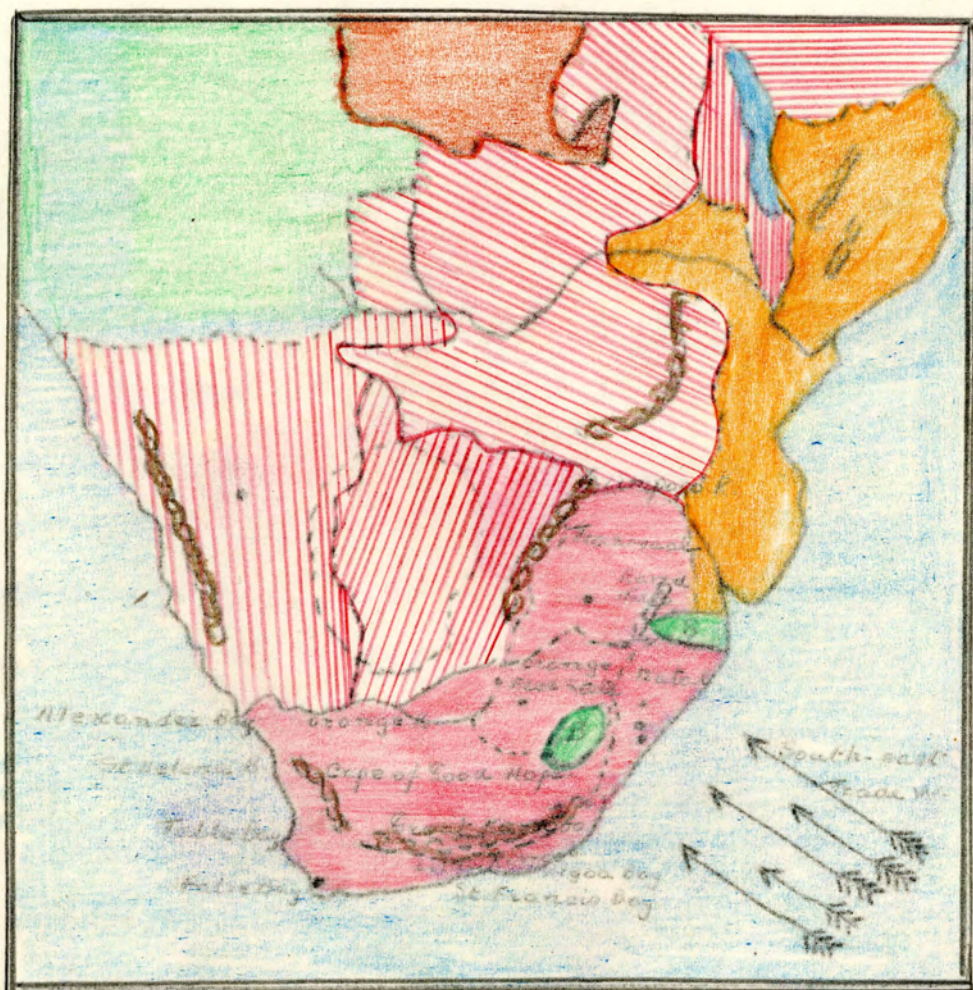
The Boer War occurred between 1899 and 1902. The leaders of the Boers were General Botha, General Smuts, General Kruger, and General Hertzog. The British leaders were Lord Roberts and General Buller. Engagements occurred at Ladysmith in Natal; at Kimberley in Cape Province; at Mafeking in Bechuanaland; at Pretoria in Transvaal, and at Bloemfontein in Orange Free State. The states in the Union of South Africa are....

Cape of Good Hope Province which became a British possession in 1804; Natal which was claimed by the British in 1824; Orange Free State which became a British state in 1900, and Transvaal which became a British state in 1902.

The rivers of the Union of South Africa are the Orange River which flows westward into the Atlantic Ocean along the northern border of Cape of Good Hope Province; the Vaal River which is between Orange Free State and the Transvaal, and the Limpopo River which forms the northern border of the Transvaal. This river flows eastward and empties into Delagoa Bay.



The Physical and Climatic Conditions of the Union of S. A.









## THE PHYSICAL AND CLIMATIC CONDITIONS OF THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA:

The British political divisions of South Africa that touch the Union of South Africa are South-west Africa, Bechuanaland, and Rhodesia. Along the north-east of the Union it touches Mozambique which is a possession of Portugal.

The States of the Union of South Africa are Cape Colony, Natal, Orange Free State, and Transvaal. There are two independent states in the region. They are Basutoland, and Swasiland.

The surface of the Union is characterized by a Plateau, an Escarpment, Terraces, the Rand Hills, and rivers. The whole area is a high plateau. The western face of the plateau is an escarpment that drops suddenly to the Atlantic Ocean. The southern face of the plateau is marked by two gigantic terraces, the Great and Little Karroos. The important hills in the Transvaal are the Rand Hills, but there are some elevations in other parts of the Union which are considered mountains. The chief river flowing to the west is the Orange River, and the chief river flowing to the east is the Limpopo River.

The coast-line of the Union is somewhat irregular so that there are a number of bays. These are Alexander Bay, St. Helena Bay, Table Bay, False Bay, St. Francis Bay, Algoa Bay, and the estuaries of some of the rivers.

The factors that influence the climate of the region are Latitude, Altitude, Winds, and Distance from the sea. The Union of South Africa lies in the South Torrid and South Temperate Zones. Therefore the climate is tropical, sub-tropical, and temperate. The altitude of the plateau moderates the temperature. The South-east Trade Winds blow over



# THE PHYSICAL AND CLIMATIC CONDITIONS OF THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA

The British political divisions of South Africa that touch the

Union of South Africa are South-west Africa, Bechuanaland, and Rhodesia.

Along the north-east of the Union it touches Mozambique which is a

possession of Portugal.

The States of the Union of South Africa are Cape Colony, Natal,

Orange Free State, and Transvaal. There are two independent states in

the region. They are Basutoland, and Swaziland.

The surface of the Union is characterized by a plateau, an

escarpment, terraces, the Rand Hills, and rivers. The whole area is a

high plateau. The western face of the plateau is an escarpment that drops

suddenly to the Atlantic Ocean. The southern face of the plateau is

marked by two gigantic terraces, the Great and Little Karroos. The

important hills in the Transvaal are the Rand Hills, but there are some

elevations in other parts of the Union which are considered mountains.

The chief river flowing to the west is the Orange River, and the chief

river flowing to the east is the Limpopo River.

The coast-line of the Union is somewhat irregular so that

there are a number of bays. These are Alexander Bay, St. Helena Bay,

Table Bay, False Bay, St. Francis Bay, Algoa Bay, and the estuaries of

some of the rivers.

The factors that influence the climate of the region are

latitude, altitude, winds, and distance from the sea. The Union of South

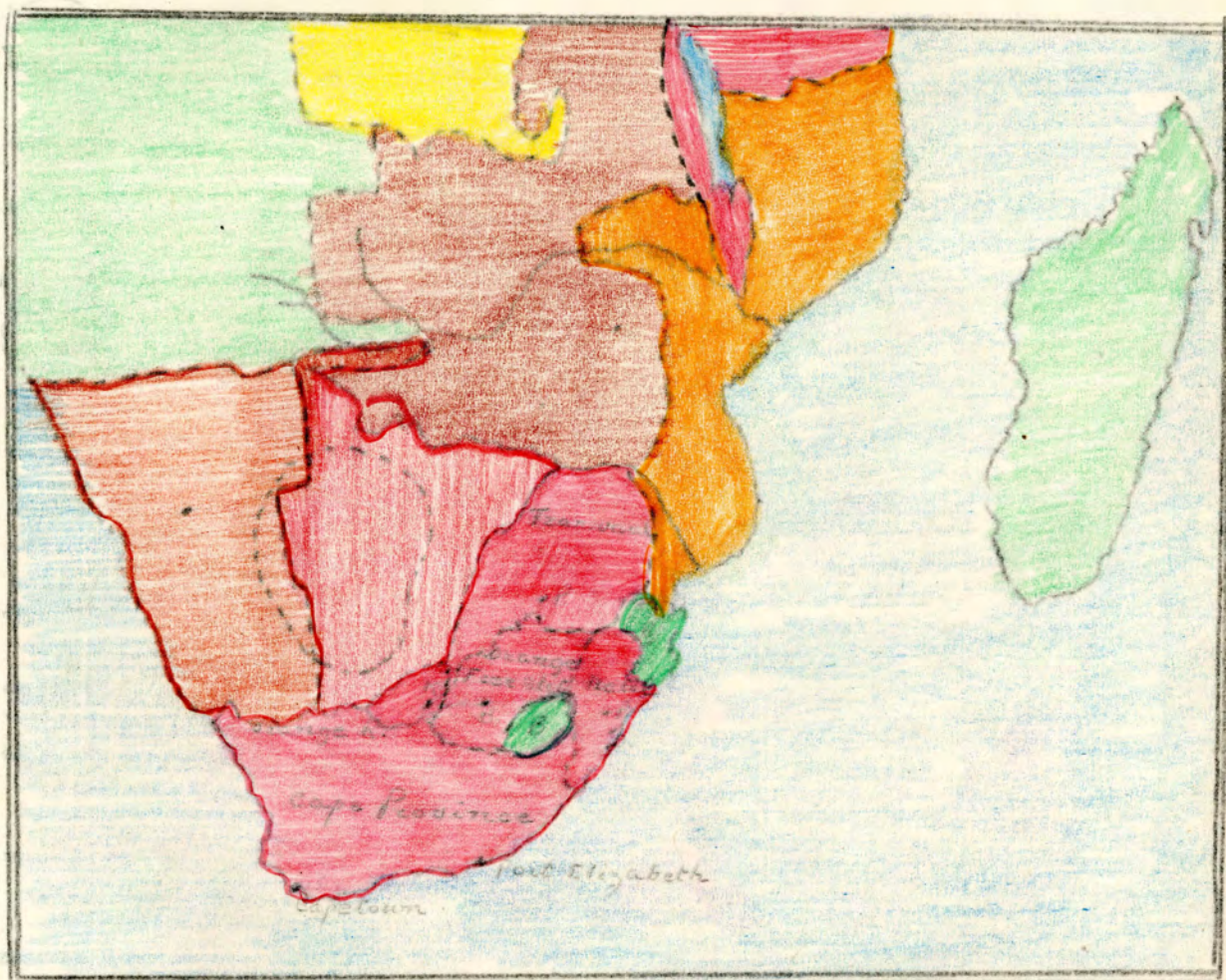
Africa lies in the South Torrid and South Temperate Zones. Therefore the

climate is tropical, sub-tropical, and temperate. The altitude of the

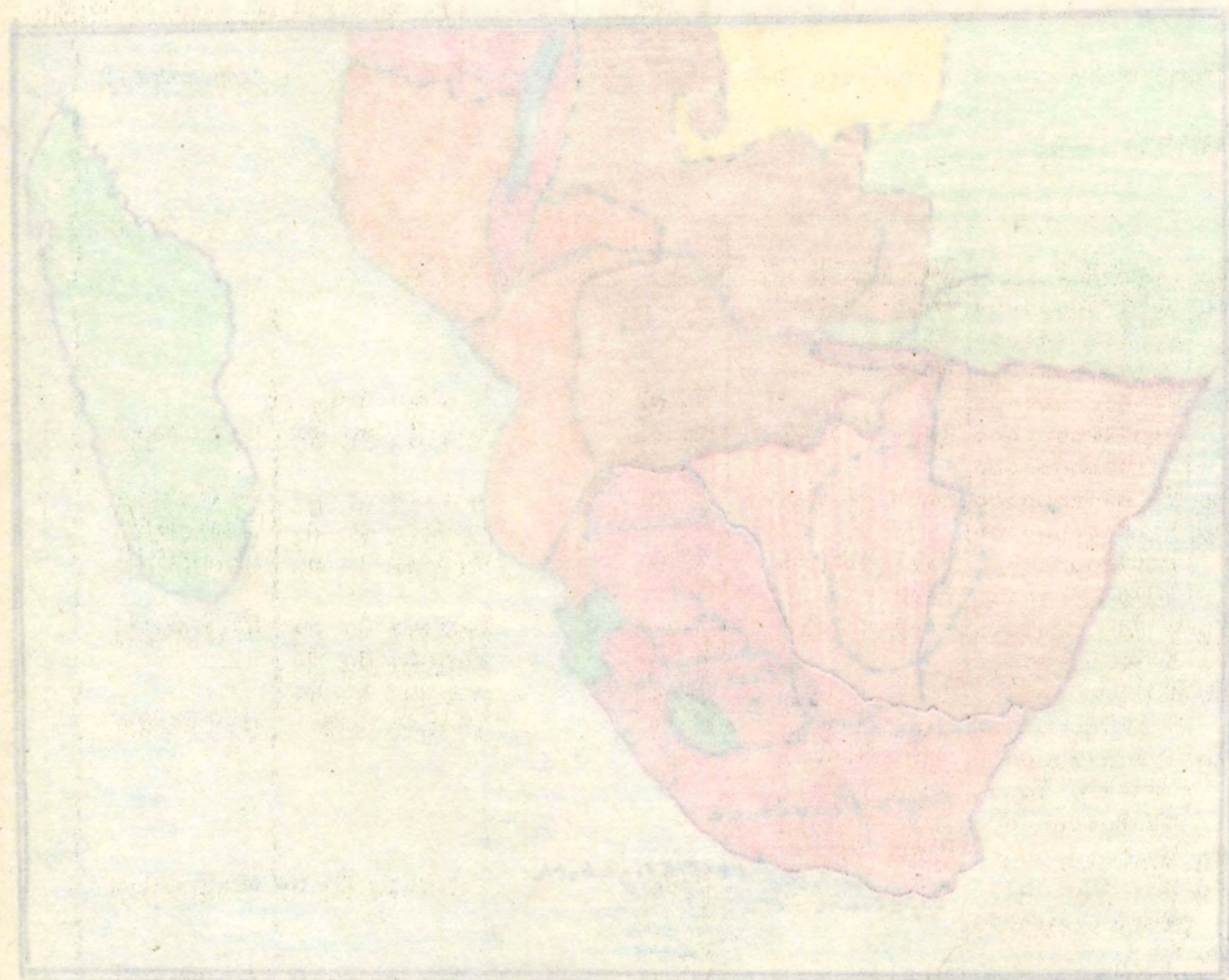
plateau moderates the temperature. The South-east Trade Winds blow over



South Africa To-day









the Indian Ocean and carry moisture to the south-eastern section. The south-western tip, near Cape Town, lies in the path of the Prevailing Westerlies in the winter. Then it receives moisture as the winds blow over that section. As distance from the sea is increased, the amount of rainfall is decreased.

#### SOUTH AFRICA TO-DAY.

##### THE WORK OF THE PEOPLE:

The people of the Union of South Africa are engaged in Agriculture, Stock-raising, and Mining. The chief products of the region are listed below.....

L.	PRODUCT	THE STATE IN WHICH IT IS PRODUCED.			
A.	Apples.....	Cape Colony			
	Apricots.....	Cape Colony			
B.	Barley.....	Cape Colony			
C.	Coal.....		Natal	Orange Free S.	
	Cattle.....	Cape Colony	Natal	Orange F. S.	Transvaal
	Cotton.....		Natal		
D.	Diamonds.....	Cape Colony	Natal	Orange F. S.	Transvaal
G.	Gold.....			Orange F. S.	Transvaal
	Goats.....	Cape Colony	Natal	Orange F. S.	Transvaal
	Grapes.....	Cape Colony			
H.	Hides.....	Cape Colony	Natal	Orange F. S.	Transvaal
I.	Iron.....		Natal	Orange F. S.	
M.	Maize.....	Cape Colony	Natal	Orange F. S.	
	Mohair.....	Cape Colony	Natal	Orange F.S:	Transvaal
O.	Oranges.....	Cape Colony			
	Ostrich F....	Cape Colony			
	Oats.....	Cape Colony			
R.	Rye.....	Cape Colony			
S.	Sheep.....	Cape Colony	Natal	Orange F. S.	Transvaal
	Sugar-cane...		Natal		
T.	Tea.....		Natal		
	Tobacco.....	Cape Colony	Natal	Orange F. S.	Transvaal
W.	Wool.....	Cape Colony	Natal	Orange F. S.	Transvaal
	Wheat.....	Cape Colony.			



The Indian Ocean and carry moisture to the south-eastern section. The south-western tip, near Cape Town, lies in the path of the prevailing westerlies in the winter. Then it receives moisture as the winds blow over that section. As distance from the sea is increased, the amount of rainfall is decreased.

SOUTH AFRICA TO-DAY.

THE WORK OF THE PEOPLE:

The people of the Union of South Africa are engaged in Agriculture, Stock-raising, and Mining. The chief products of the region are listed below.....

I. PRODUCT		THE STATE IN WHICH IT IS PRODUCED.	
A.	Apples.....	Cape Colony	
	Apricots.....	Cape Colony	
B.	Barley.....	Cape Colony	
C.	Coal.....		
	Cattle.....	Cape Colony	
	Cotton.....		
D.	Diamonds.....	Cape Colony	
E.	Gold.....		
	Gems.....	Cape Colony	
	Grapes.....	Cape Colony	
H.	Rubber.....	Cape Colony	
I.	Iron.....		
M.	Meat.....	Cape Colony	
	Molasses.....	Cape Colony	
O.	Oranges.....	Cape Colony	
	Orchids.....	Cape Colony	
	Oats.....	Cape Colony	
R.	Rye.....	Cape Colony	
S.	Sheep.....	Cape Colony	
	Sugar-cane.....		
T.	Tea.....		
	Tobacco.....	Cape Colony	
W.	Wool.....	Cape Colony	
	Wheat.....	Cape Colony	



The leading exports of the Union are Gold, diamonds, wool, sheep, oranges, and grapes. These are sent to various markets of the world, and some of the other products are shipped in lesser amounts.

The important cities of the Union of South Africa are.....

Pretoria in Transvaal. When the Union of South Africa was formed in 1909, Pretoria and Cape Town were rivals for the honour of becoming the Capital. The contest was settled by making Pretoria the seat of administration, and Cape Town was established as the seat of legislation. There is a possibility that the inland strategic position may have played some part in making Pretoria the capital. In case of war, Cape Town is situated on the sea-coast, and as a result there is a possibility that it might be in danger from a sea attack. Cape Town in Cape of Good Hope; Kimberley, in Cape Colony, Port Elizabeth in Cape Colony, Durban in Natal, Pietermaritzburg in Natal, Bloemfonteine in Orange Free State, and Johannesburg in Transvaal.

#### TRANSPORTATION:-

There are very few lakes and rivers in the Union to provide water transportation. The Boers travel by ox-wagon or on horse-back. The Cape-cart is a two-wheeled vehicle with two or three seats. It is usually drawn by horses or mules. Railways connect the chief centres. They were built as a result of the discovery of gold and diamonds, and because Cecil Rhodes wanted a railway built from Cape Town north to the Mediterranean Sea.



The leading exports of the Union are gold, diamonds, wool, sheep, oranges, and grapes. These are sent to various markets of the world, and some of the other products are shipped in lesser amounts.

The important cities of the Union of South Africa are.....

Pretoria in Transvaal. When the Union of South Africa was formed in 1902, Pretoria and Cape Town were rivals for the honors of becoming the capital. The contest was settled by making Pretoria the seat of administration, and Cape Town was established as the seat of legislation. There is a possibility that the inland strategic position may have played some part in making Pretoria the capital. In case of war, Cape Town is situated on the sea-coast, and as a result there is a possibility that it might be in danger from a sea attack. Cape Town in Cape of Good Hope; Kimberley in Cape Colony; Port Elizabeth in Cape Colony; Durban in Natal; Pietermaritzburg in Natal; Bloemfontein in Orange Free State, and Johannesburg in Transvaal.

#### TRANSPORTATION.

There are very few lakes and rivers in the Union to provide water transportation. The Boers travel by ox-wagon or on horse-back. The Cape-car is a two-wheeled vehicle with two or three seats. It is usually drawn by horses or mules. Railways connect the chief centres. They were built as a result of the discovery of gold and diamonds, and because Cecil Rhodes wanted a railway built from Cape Town north to the

Mediterranean Sea.



## THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA (HISTORY).....1487--1947

### THE EARLY DISCOVERERS:-

In 1487 Bartholomew Diaz, a Portuguese navigator, landed on the shore of South Africa while he was searching for a sea-route to India. He sighted the Cape as he was sailing around the tip of the continent. In 1498 Vasco da Gama, a Portuguese navigator, landed on the site of the present city of Durban on Christmas Day, and as a result he named the country "Terra Natalis". In 1580 Sir Francis Drake, an English navigator, sighted the Cape of Good Hope as he was sailing homeward to complete his journey around the world.

### THE NATIVE PEOPLE:

All of the native people of South Africa journeyed there from the north. The various people were Bushmen, Hottentots, and Bantus or Kaffirs.

#### The Bushmen:

They were pygmies who were less than five feet tall, and were wanderers or nomads who moved about a great deal. They were low in the social scale, and lived on roots, wild fruits, melons, ant's eggs, grubs, caterpillars, and snakes. They lived in caves or holes in the ground, and did not have any tribal organization or government. They were expert and daring hunters, and used wooden clubs as well as bows and poisoned arrows. They swallowed the poison of snakes to make them immune to their bites. They dressed in small skins, and used a few ornaments. They used primitive drums and flutes to accompany their songs and dances. They possessed a wonderful knowledge of Nature Lore, but now they are almost extinct.



THE EARLY DISCOVERERS:-

In 1482 Bartholomew Diaz, a Portuguese navigator, landed on the shore of South Africa while he was searching for a sea-route to India. He sighted the Cape as he was sailing around the tip of the continent. In 1482 Vasco da Gama, a Portuguese navigator, landed on the site of the present city of Durban on Christmas Day, and as a result he named the country "Terra Natalis". In 1482 Sir Francisco Drake, an English navigator, sighted the Cape of Good Hope as he was sailing homeward to complete his journey around the world.

THE NATIVE PEOPLE:

All of the native people of South Africa journeyed there from the north. The various people were Bushmen, Hottentots, and Bantus or Kaffirs. The Bushmen They were nomads who were less than five feet tall, and were wanderers or nomads who moved about a great deal. They were low in the social scale, and lived on roots, wild fruits, melons, and a few crops, caterpillars, and snakes. They lived in caves or holes in the ground, and did not have any tribal organization or government. They were expert and daring hunters, and used wooden clubs as well as bows and poisoned arrows. They swallowed the poison of snakes to make them immune to their bites. They dressed in animal skins, and used a few ornaments. They used primitive drums and flutes to accompany their songs and dances. They possessed a wonderful knowledge of Nature lore, but now they are almost extinct.



### The Hottentots:

They were small, but more intelligent than the Bushmen, and moved about a great deal because they were Nomads. They farmed and had herds of cattle and sheep. They were quite mild and amiable. Their weapons consisted of bows, poisoned arrows, assegais, and knob Kerries. They lived in matted huts, and wore mantles of skin which still had the hair on them. They had a form of government which was composed of a chief and a council. They were very superstitious, and wealth with them meant influence.

### The Bantus or Kaffirs:

They were real farmers. They lived in the coastal lowlands, among the mountains, and on the plateau. They differed in physique and mental ability according to the district in which they lived. The coastal group became big, muscular, and war-like while the others were less strong. They lived in huts of various shapes. These were built in groups so that they made small villages. There were three main groups of Bantus....the Bechuans, Zulus, and the Damara. Their food consisted of meat and game, varieties of millet, fruit, dried locusts, and field rodents. They drank an intoxicating drink which was brewed from millet. Their cattle provided hides for clothes and shields, and they were used as purchase money which was paid by husbands for their wives. They constructed "Kraals" to protect their cattle. The word "Kraal" is Portuguese and means a circular fold for animals. In the centre it has a circular pen fenced with thorn bushes. They have no corners so as to prevent calves being crushed to death. The Bantus built their huts of plaited reeds and thatched conical roofs around the kraals. The floors were made of material from huge ant's nests.



The Hotentots:

They were small, but more intelligent than the Bushmen, and moved about a great deal because they were nomads. They farmed and had herds of cattle and sheep. They were quite mild and amiable. Their weapons consisted of bows, poisoned arrows, assegais, and knob-knives. They lived in wattle huts, and wore mantles of skin which still had the hair on them. They had a form of government which was composed of a chief and a council. They were very superstitious, and wealthy with their means influence.

The Basuto or Baitso:

They were tall farmers. They lived in the coastal lowlands, among the mountains, and on the plateau. They differed in physique and mental ability according to the district in which they lived. The coastal group became big, muscular, and war-like while the others were less strong. They lived in huts of various shapes. These were built in groups so that they made small villages. There were three main groups of Basuto... the Bechuanas, Tswana, and the Damara. Their food consisted of meat and game, varieties of millet, fruit, dried locusts, and field rodents. They drank an intoxicating drink which was pressed from millet. Their cattle provided hides for clothes and shields, and they were used as purchase money which was paid by husbands for their wives. They constructed "Kraals" to protect their cattle. The word "Kraal" is Portuguese and means a circular fold for animals. In the centre it has a circular pen fenced with thorn bushes. They have no corners so as to prevent calves being crushed to death. The Basuto built their huts of plastered mud and thatched conical roofs around the kraals. The floors were made of material from hags and a waste



It was pounded and levelled while it was still moist, and made a hard durable surface. The Bantus made baskets and mats by weaving long grass; some pottery; weapons such as wooden clubs, spears, and bows; and iron to make their assegais, battle axes, and knives. They were organized like an old feudal system with a chief who was absolute. He presided over the tribal councils and the court of justice. The Bantu people are the predominant people in the whole of South Africa. Their language in various forms and dialects is spoken everywhere.

#### THE ESTABLISHMENT OF EARLY SETTLEMENTS:

In 1650 a Dutch ship under Jan Van Riebeck was wrecked on the shores of Table Bay. The crew landed, and lived on the shore for five months. The men were rescued, and reported on conditions there. In 1652 the Dutch East India Company became interested, and established the first European stronghold in South Africa near Cape Town. Dutch Boers (Farmers) were sent out to form the settlement which was only to serve as a half-way station to India. Dutch ships expected to gain shelter therefrom storms, and hoped to be able to obtain fresh supplies. The settlement wasn't very prosperous, but this pioneer village was the origin of Cape Town and the first permanent European settlement there. In 1657 the Dutch East India Company wanted to make the half-way settlement selfsupporting, so they established a number of soldiers and sailors on the land nearby. These settlers were given tools and seeds. They ploughed the land and fenced it. The Hottentots resented losing their grazing lands and access to water, so they set fire to the homesteads. Fighting occurred, but trouble was averted by paying money to the chief and giving the others tobacco, brandy, beads, and bread. By 1679 there were three-hundred settlers in



It was pounded and levelled while it was still moist, and made a hard  
durable surface. The Bantus made baskets and mats by weaving long grass;  
some pottery; weapons such as wooden clubs, spears, and bows; and iron  
to make their assegais, battle axes, and knives. They were organized like  
an old feudal system with a chief who was absolute. He presided over the  
tribal councils and the court of justice. The Bantu people are the pre-  
dominant people in the whole of South Africa. Their language in various  
forms and dialects is spoken everywhere.

#### THE ESTABLISHMENT OF EARLY SETTLEMENTS:

In 1652 a Dutch ship under Jan Van Riebeck was wrecked on the  
shores of Table Bay. The crew landed, and lived on the shore for five  
months. The men were rescued, and reported on conditions there. In 1652  
the Dutch East India Company became interested, and established the first  
European stronghold in South Africa near Cape Town. Dutch Boers (farmers)  
were sent out to form the settlement which was only to serve as a half-way  
station to India. Dutch ships expected to gain shelter there from storms,  
and hoped to be able to obtain fresh supplies. The settlement wasn't very  
prosperous, but this pioneer village was the origin of Cape Town and the  
first permanent European settlement there. In 1657 the Dutch East India  
Company wanted to make the half-way settlement self-sufficient, so they  
established a number of soldiers and sailors on the land nearby. These  
settlers were given tools and seeds. They ploughed the land and fenced  
it. The Hottentots resented losing their grazing lands and access to  
water, so they set fire to the homesteads. Fighting occurred, but trouble  
was averted by paying money to the chief and giving him tobacco.  
By 1679 there were three hundred settlers in  
strongly, beads, and bread.



colony. Some of them moved to fertile valleys which were about thirty miles inland from Cape Town. Wheat and fruits were grown successfully, and in 1684 some of it was exported.

In 1688 French Huguenots who had fled to Holland to escape persecution, were sent to South Africa by the Dutch East India Company. These settlers were better educated and socially superior to the Boers, but they were forced to mingle with the Dutch farmers and had to submerge their racial differences. These people settled at Drakenstein and in the Holland Range near the Berg River. The soil and the climate were suitable for growing grapes, so the French are credited with the establishment of the wine industry at the Cape.

Some of the Boers became dissatisfied with the arbitrary methods used by the Dutch East India Company to control all production and commerce in the colony, so some of the independent Dutch farmers trekked inland to the north and east. There they established the first out-posts of civilization in South Africa.

The Boers lived simply. They used cattle and game for food, and became nomads like the natives. They pushed on from place to place in search of better pasture and a supply of water. They found that the rainfall in South Africa was limited to a period of a few weeks or a few days each year. As a result these wanderers selected sites that were on river banks or near springs, and a number of place-names in that section of South Africa end in "fontein".

Environment influenced the lives of the early settlers. The great solitary spaces, open air, and free life of the plains changed the Boers from a gregarious type to a nomad type which craved loneliness.



colony. Some of them moved to fertile valleys which were about thirty miles inland from Cape Town. Wheat and fruit were grown successfully, and in 1684 some of it was exported.

In 1688 French Huguenots who had fled to Holland to escape persecution, were sent to South Africa by the Dutch East India Company. These settlers were better educated and socially superior to the Boers, but they were forced to mingle with the Dutch farmers and had to assimilate their racial differences. These people settled at Brakenstein and in the Holland Range near the Berg River. The soil and the climate were suitable for growing grapes, as the French are credited with the establishment of the wine industry at the Cape.

Some of the Boers became dissatisfied with the arbitrary methods used by the Dutch East India Company to control all production and commerce in the colony, so some of the independent Dutch farmers trekked inland to the north and east. There they established the first out-posts of civilization in South Africa.

The Boers lived simply. They used cattle and game for food, and became nomads like the natives. They pushed on from place to place in search of better pasture and a supply of water. They found that the rainfall in South Africa was limited to a period of a few weeks or a few days each year. As a result these wanderers selected sites that were on river banks or near springs, and a number of place-names in that section of South Africa end in "fontein".

Environment influenced the lives of the early settlers. The great solitary spaces, open air, and free life of the plains changed the Boers from a gregarious type to a nomad type which craved loneliness.



They cared for their cattle and sheep like shepherds, and since water was scarce, the Dutch tradition of cleanliness became obsolete.

The relation of the Boers to the Natives was such <sup>that</sup> ~~^~~ considerable trouble occurred. The Dutch regarded the natives as vermin, and were forced to forego the love of seclusion to form expeditions against them. They soon exterminated the Bushmen and the Hottentots from the regions where they had settled, but the Bantus proved more formidable. They needed grazing lands for their cattle, so they resisted the attacks of the Boers, and six Kaffir wars were fought in an effort to settle the native problem.

#### SOUTH AFRICA AFTER 1789:

In 1795 the French Revolution was in progress. The Dutch joined the French, and the British captured the Dutch Colony in South Africa because they didn't want France to have the territory. In 1796 the British established a settlement at Simonstown on False Bay. In 1803 Cape Colony was returned to Holland. In 1807 a number of Dutch possessions were captured by the British. In 1814 the rule of the Dutch East India Company was ended in Africa. Cape Colony was transferred to the British who paid them six million pounds sterling for it. British troops then occupied Cape Town, and British emigrants soon arrived there. They found the climate and the soil suitable, so they established settlements there.

In 1820 Port Elizabeth was established on Algoa Bay by four thousand British settlers. They suffered from drought, floods, locusts, and thieving kaffirs, as well as wild beasts. By 1900 their descendants numbered one-hundred and fifty thousand.

In 1824, Chaka, the Zulu king ceded Natal to Francis Farewell



They cared for their cattle and sheep like shepherds, and since water was scarce, the Dutch tradition of cleanliness became obsolete.

The relation of the Boers to the Natives was such as to be

trouble occurred. The Dutch regarded the natives as vermin, and were

forced to forego the love of seclusion to form expeditions against them.

They soon exterminated the Bushmen and the Hottentots from the regions

where they had settled, but the Boers proved more formidable. They

needed grazing lands for their cattle, so they resisted the attacks of

the Boers, and six battles were fought in an effort to settle the

native problem.

South Africa after 1795:

In 1795 the French Revolution was in progress. The Dutch joined

the French, and the British captured the Dutch Colony in South Africa because

they didn't want France to have the territory. In 1795 the British estab-

lished a settlement at Simonstown on Table Bay. In 1803 Cape Colony was

returned to Holland. In 1807 a number of Dutch possessions were captured

by the British. In 1814 the rule of the Dutch East India Company was

ended in Africa. Cape Colony was transferred to the British who paid them

six million pounds sterling for it. British troops then occupied Cape

Town, and British emigrants soon arrived there. They found the climate

and the soil suitable, so they established settlements there.

In 1820 Port Elizabeth was established on Algoa Bay by four

thousand British settlers. They suffered from drought, floods, locusts,

and thieving natives, as well as wild beasts. By 1860 their descendants

numbered one hundred and fifty thousand.

In 1824, Chaka, the Zulu king, ordered the British to leave Natal.



who declared it to be a British possession. In 1835 the land of Natal was settled by a group of British Adventurers. They made arrangements with the Zulu chief to open up trade in ivory. The Port of Natal was named Durban. It had a population of three-hundred. The Boers who moved into Natal about that time were massacred by the Zulus. The British were defeated, and only the arrival of additional Boers saved the colony. The natives were driven back, and the Boers were left to settle the interior of the country. The Dutch in Natal were permitted to retain their own laws and customs, but they were refused the right to keep slaves.

When the British passed the Act abolishing slavery in 1833, the Boers had about thirty-thousand slaves. They were compensated for freeing them, but they felt that they hadn't received enough. This resulted in the establishment of a lasting resentment against the British.

In 1835 the Boers of Cape Colony became dissatisfied with British rule, and made the Great Trek from Cape Province. In 1836 the Boers of Natal trekked farther north into the wild unsettled country so that they would be free of foreign rules. These groups founded Orange Free State and Transvaal.

In 1838 the Zulus caused considerable trouble, but they were routed by the Boers in the Battle of Blood River. In 1852 the first British steamer, the Sir Robert Peel, arrived in the harbour of Durban which was the port of Natal. In 1879 a Zulu war occurred. In 1881 Britain recognized the independence of the Transvaal after the Majubah Hill disaster. In 1885 Great Britain annexed Bechuanaland.

In 1886 gold was discovered in the Witwatersrand District near Johannesburg in the Transvaal. This resulted in a rush of British people



the declared it to be a British possession. In 1835 the land of Natal was settled by a group of British Adventurers. They made arrangements with the Zulu chief to open up trade in ivory. The Port of Natal was named Durban. It had a population of three-hundred. The Boers who moved into Natal about that time were massacred by the Zulus. The British were defeated, and only the arrival of additional Boers saved the colony. The natives were driven back, and the Boers were left to settle the interior of the country. The Dutch in Natal were permitted to retain their own laws and customs, but they were refused the right to keep slaves. When the British passed the Act abolishing slavery in 1835, the Boers had about thirty-thousand slaves. They were compensated for freeing them, but they felt that they hadn't received enough. This resulted in the establishment of a lasting resentment against the British. In 1835 the Boers of Cape Colony became dissatisfied with British rule, and made the Great Trek from Cape Province. In 1835 the Boers of Natal trekked further north into the wild unsettled country so that they would be free of foreign rules. These groups founded Orange Free State and Transvaal. In 1838 the Zulus caused considerable trouble, but they were routed by the Boers in the Battle of Blood River. In 1838 the first British steamer, the Sir Robert Peel, arrived in the harbour of Durban which was the port of Natal. In 1879 a Zulu war occurred. In 1881 Britain recognized the independence of the Transvaal after the Marjoub Hill disaster. In 1885 Great Britain annexed Bechuanaland. In 1885 gold was discovered in the Witwatersrand District near Johannesburg in the Transvaal. This resulted in a rush of British people



into that region. The Boers disliked these strangers who were called Outlanders, and they tried to check them. They taxed them heavily, and refused to allow them to become citizens. They granted monopolies to their own friends, and in this way they kept all of the power in their own hands. In 1887 the naturalization laws were changed so that fifteen years residence was required before they could become citizens of the Transvaal. The monopolies were used to prevent the Outlanders from securing things that were necessary for mining and for living. The British protested and asked the British Government to negotiate with the Boers. The Boers refused to consider the proposals put forth by the British Government, and under the leadership of Paul Kruger practically demanded that the British move out of the region. In 1896 Dr. L.S. Jameson led an armed force from Mafeking into the Transvaal in an attempt to force the Boer Government to grant concessions to the British, but it was unsuccessful.

#### THE BOER WAR: 1899-1902.

This war was caused by the unfriendly relationship that existed between the Boers and the British, particularly in the Transvaal. For additional information regarding the cause, see the information above.

The leaders of the Boers were General Botha, General Smuts, General P. Kruger, and General Hertzog. The leaders of the British were Lord Roberts, and General Kitchener.

Engagements occurred at Ladysmith in Natal; Kimberley in Cape Colony; Mafeking in Bechuanaland; Pretoria in Transvaal, and at Bloemfontein in Orange Free State.



into that region. The Boers disliked these strangers who were called  
Outlanders, and they tried to check them. They taxed them heavily, and  
refused to allow them to become citizens. They granted monopolies to  
their own friends, and in this way they kept all of the power in their  
own hands. In 1867 the naturalization laws were changed so that fifteen  
years residence was required before they could become citizens of the  
Transvaal. The monopolies were used to prevent the Outlanders from  
acquiring things that were necessary for mining and for living. The British  
protested and asked the British Government to negotiate with the Boers.  
The Boers refused to consider the proposals put forth by the British  
Government, and under the leadership of Paul Kruger practically demanded  
that the British move out of the region. In 1894 Dr. J. S. Jameson led  
an armed force from Mafeking into the Transvaal in an attempt to force  
the Boer Government to grant concessions to the British, but it was  
unsuccessful.

#### THE BOER WAR: 1899-1902.

This war was caused by the unfriendly relationship that existed  
between the Boers and the British, particularly in the Transvaal. For  
additional information regarding the cause, see the information above.  
The leaders of the Boers were General Botha, General Smuts,  
General P. Kruger, and General Hertzog. The leaders of the British were  
Lord Roberts, and General Kitchener. Engagements occurred at Ladysmith in Natal; Kimberley in Cape  
Colony; Mafeking in Bechuanaland; Pretoria in Transvaal, and at Bloem-  
fontein in Orange Free State.



In 1899 the Boers invaded Natal and captured Ladysmith from the British. Kimberley in Cape Colony was besieged. In 1900 Ladysmith was relieved by the British under General Buller, and Orange Free State was annexed by the British. In the same year Lord Roberts entered Pretoria. This practically ended the South African war, but a systematic guerilla war-fare continued under General De Wet and General Botha until 1902.

In 1902 the Boers realized the hopelessness of the war and discontinued fighting. In the same year the Treaty of Pretoria was signed. It ended the war, and the Transvaal was annexed by the British. Lord Milner was appointed governor of the newly acquired territory.

In 1906 General Botha became the Premier of the Transvaal. In 1909 the four colonies....Cape Colony, Natal, Orange Free State, and Transvaal united to form the Union of South Africa which was made self-governing. In 1910 Louis Botha became the Premier of the Union of South Africa, and the present Premier is Jan Christian Smuts.

#### POLITICAL PROBLEMS ASSOCIATED WITH THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA.

The political problems associated with the Union of South Africa deal with the formation of an independent republic and isolation during the second World War. In considering these problems it is necessary to consider certain factors that are associated with political problems.

In the Union of South Africa the two white races, the English and the Dutch, differ in their outlook more than the English and the French in Canada. They think differently about imperial matters. One of the political leaders, General James Hertzog, devoted his life to opposing Great Britain. He is an Afrikaner...a white person born in South Africa. He commanded a Boer force in the south-west during the Boer War, but he



In 1893 the Boers invaded Natal and captured Ladysmith from the British. Kimberley in Cape Colony was besieged. In 1900 Ladysmith was relieved by the British under General Buller, and Orange Free State was annexed by the British. In the same year Lord Roberts entered Pretoria. This practically ended the South African war, but a systematic guerrilla war-fare continued under General De Wet and General Botha until 1902. In 1902 the Boers realized the hopelessness of the war and discontinued fighting. In the same year the Treaty of Pretoria was signed. It ended the war, and the Transvaal was annexed by the British. Lord Milner was appointed Governor of the newly acquired territory. In 1906 General Botha became the Premier of the Transvaal. In 1909 the four colonies... Cape Colony, Natal, Orange Free State, and Transvaal united to form the Union of South Africa which was made self-governing. In 1910 Louis Botha became the Premier of the Union of South Africa, and the present Premier is Jan Christiaan Smuts.

#### POLITICAL PROBLEMS ASSOCIATED WITH THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA.

The political problems associated with the Union of South Africa deal with the formation of an independent republic and isolation during the second world war. In considering these problems it is necessary to consider certain factors that are associated with political problems. In the Union of South Africa the two white races, the English and the Dutch, differ in their outlook more than the English and the French in Canada. They think differently about imperial matters. One of the political leaders, General James Hertzog, devoted his life to opposing Great Britain. He is an Afrikaner, a white person born in South Africa. He commanded a Boer force in the south-west during the Boer war, but he



was defeated by the British. Shortly after the Union of South Africa was formed in 1909, he made an attack on the British and caused considerable friction between the Boers and the English-speaking inhabitants. In 1913 he became the leader of the anti-imperialistic National Party which was composed of dissatisfied and embittered Boers. In 1914 when the First World War broke out, his national party campaigned to increase racial difference and to make the Union an independent republic. Some of the more extreme members of the party took part in an armed rebellion against the government. After the war Hertzog demanded independence for all of the Union, or for Orange Free State if the former was refused. Between 1924 and 1930 he was the Premier of the Union of South Africa. Then he called off his republican campaign. In September 1939 his party was defeated on the question of isolation during the second World War. After his defeat he denounced South Africa's participation in the war, and he tried to widen the breach between the Afrikanders and the British.

Jan Christian Smuts is the present premier of the Union. He is supported by both Dutch and English, and his Union government supported the Allies in the Second World War with whole-hearted co-operation. He advocated having the Union of South Africa continue as an important part of the British Empire. The vote that returned Smuts and his party to power indicated that the people favoured association with Great Britain. During World War II South Africa rendered valuable assistance to the Allies.

#### SOCIAL PROBLEMS:

The Social Problems are associated with the relation between the White people and the Blacks, and with the Poor Whites. These problems



was defeated by the British. Shortly after the Union of South Africa was formed in 1908, he made an attack on the British and caused considerable friction between the Boers and the English-speaking inhabitants. In 1913 he became the leader of the anti-imperialistic National Party which was composed of dissatisfied and embittered Boers. In 1914 when the First World War broke out, his national party campaigned to increase racial difference and to make the Union an independent republic. Some of the more extreme members of the party took part in an armed rebellion against the government. After the war Hereng demanded independence for all of the Union, or for Orange Free State if the former was refused. Between 1924 and 1930 he was the Premier of the Union of South Africa. Then he called off his republican campaign. In September 1939 his party was defeated on the question of isolation during the second world war. After his defeat he denounced South Africa's participation in the war, and he tried to widen the breach between the Afrikaners and the British. Jan Christian Smuts is the present premier of the Union. He is supported by both Dutch and English, and his Union government supported the Allies in the Second World War with whole-hearted co-operation. He advocated having the Union of South Africa continue as an important part of the British Empire. The vote that returned Smuts and his party to power indicated that the people favored association with Great Britain. During World War II South Africa rendered valuable assistance to the Allies.

# SOCIAL PROBLEMS:

The Social Problems are associated with the relation between the White people and the Blacks, and with the poor Whites. These problems



present a number of factors which are considered here.

A social problem is associated with the Blacks because there are five times as many Blacks as Whites living there. In order to remain the dominant race, the whites have insisted on a strict enforcement of the colour-line. Legislation has been passed which denies equality of opportunity to all races. It also limits certain classes of employment to the Black labourers only. The Blacks in the Union do most of the work. They are not slaves, but they receive very low wages and have very low standards of living. There is a desire to give them some rights in connection with governing themselves, but it is impossible to give them the franchise that is equal to that enjoyed by the Whites. However, some of the educated natives are demanding a voice in the government of the country.

Some of the natives insist on leaving the reservations and joining the ranks of the other workers where they are free of the moral restraint of the tribes. It is hard to find enough land to satisfy the tribal natives as well as the free natives who wish to become independent farmers. This is causing the government considerable trouble as there is hard-feeling between the tribal natives and the free natives, and the tribal natives who become free, are hard to control, because they are free of the moral restraint of the tribe.

A number of Indians have entered Natal. They work on the sugar plantations, and make up about fourteen per cent of the population there. They are classed as negroes

Some advocate that more stringent restrictions be placed on the coloured people. At present the treatment accorded the natives is not as lenient as it was under the British Government before the Union was formed.



not as lenient as it was under the British Government before the Union the coloured people. At present the treatment accorded the natives is Some advocate that more stringent restrictions be placed on

They are classed as negroes plantations and make up about fourteen per cent of the population there. A number of Indians have entered Natal. They work on the sugar free of the moral restraint of the tribe. tribal natives who become free, are hard to control, because they are hard-feeing between the tribal natives and the free natives, and the farmers. This is causing the government considerable trouble as there is tribal natives as well as the free natives who wish to become independent

restaining of the tribes. It is hard to find enough land to satisfy the ing the ranks of the other workers where they are free of the moral Some of the natives insist on leaving the reservations and join natives are demanding a voice in the government of the country. that is equal to that enjoyed by the Whites. However, some of the educated governing themselves, but it is impossible to give them the franchise of living. There is a desire to give them some rights in connection with are not slaves, but they receive very low wages and have very low standards Black labourers only. The Blacks in the Union do most of the work. They unity to all races. It also limits certain classes of employment to the colour-line. Legislation has been passed which denies equality of opportunity dominant race, the Whites have insisted on a strict enforcement of the five times as many Blacks as Whites living there. In order to remain the A social problem is associated with the Blacks because there are present a number of factors which are considered here.



The Poor Whites have created a Social Problem that is difficult to solve. South Africa in spite of her gold-fields and diamond-mines is not a rich country, and as a result, there are not enough executive jobs to absorb all of the white people. The employers do not care about the colour of the worker's skin as long as the work is done well and at a low cost. The Whites cannot accept the low wage that is paid to the Blacks and retain their respectability. This has created a class of Europeans who are forbidden by social standards to do certain kinds of work, and they are unable to find other types of employment. They are known as "Poor Whites," and their presence in the country has created a problem. It is to decrease the number of Poor Whites or to give them employment at living wages.

---

#### THE PENETRATION OF THE INTERIOR:

One of the best known explorers of South Africa was David Livingstone. From 1840 to 1871, he travelled backwards and forwards from the Cape to places near the Equator, and from the Indian Ocean to the Atlantic Ocean. He established small missions and schools in various places that he visited. He made his way through wild unknown forests and over rivers which were broken by rapids. He traced the Zambezi River from its source to its mouth. He discovered and named the famous Victoria Falls. He discovered Lake Nyasa, Lake Tanganyika, and Bangweolo, and the upper course of the Congo River. He died in the heart of Africa in 1871.



The Poor Whites have created a Social Problem that is difficult to solve. South Africa in spite of her gold-fields and diamond-mines is not a rich country, and as a result, there are not enough executive jobs to absorb all of the white people. The employers do not care about the colour of the worker's skin as long as the work is done well and at a low cost. The Whites cannot accept the low wage that is paid to the Blacks and retain their respectability. This has created a class of Europeans who are forbidden by social standards to do certain kinds of work, and they are unable to find other types of employment. They are known as "Poor Whites," and their presence in the country has created a problem. It is to decrease the number of Poor Whites to give them employment at living wages.

#### THE PENETRATION OF THE INTERIOR:

One of the best known explorers of South Africa was David Livingstone. From 1840 to 1871, he travelled backwards and forwards from the Cape to places near the Bazaruto, and from the Indian Ocean to the Atlantic Ocean. He established small missions and schools in various places that he visited. He made his way through wild unknown forests and over rivers which were broken by rapids. He traced the Zambezi River from its source to its mouth. He discovered and named the famous Victoria Falls. He discovered Lake Nyasa, Lake Tanganyika, and Bangweulu, and the upper course of the Congo River. He died in the heart of Africa in 1871.











INDIA







## CONTENTS.

### INDIA.

#### Asia (General)

India....Location, Zones, Boundaries, Surface.....

Early Visitors.

The Native People.

Early European Visitors.

The Growth of British Influence. (Brief)

From 1600 to 1747.

" 1748 to 1763.

" 1764 to 1856.

" 1857 to 1858.

" 1859 to 1918.

" 1919 to The Present.

The Work of the People.

Cities, Towns, and Transportation.

#### India (History)

The Early History.

The Native People.

Religions.

Early European Visitors.

The Growth of British Influence.

The Conquest of India....1756-1763.

From 1764 to 1856.

" 1857 to 1858 (The Indian Mutiny)

" 1859 to 1918.

" 1919 to The Present.

Summary.

Costumes and Customs.

Indian Cities and Mosques.

India to-day.

The Administration and Government of India.

Political Problems associated with India.

Religious Differences.

Limited Political Horizons.

The Growth of Nationalism.

The Demand for Responsible Government.

The Division of the Country on Political Issues.

Social Problems.

Literacy.

Religious Differences.

The Caste System.

The Lack of Racial Unity.

Notes.



CONTENTS

INDIA

Asia (General)

India.....Location, Names, Boundaries, Surface.....

Early Visitors.

The Native People.

Early European Visitors.

The Growth of British Influence. (Brief)

From 1800 to 1747.

" 1747 to 1783.

" 1783 to 1858.

" 1858 to 1919.

" 1919 to the Present.

" 1919 to the Present.

The Work of the People.

Religion, Customs, and Transportation.

India (History)

The Early History.

The Native People.

Religion.

Early European Visitors.

The Growth of British Influence.

The Conquest of India.....1756-1757.

From 1757 to 1858.

" 1858 to 1919 (The Indian History)

" 1919 to the Present.

" 1919 to the Present.

Summary.

Customs and Customs.

Indian Cities and Mosques.

India to-day.

The Administration and Government of India.

Political Problems associated with India.

Religious Differences.

Limited Political Horizons.

The Growth of Nationalism.

The Demand for Responsible Government.

The Division of the Country on Political Issues.

Social Problems.

Literary.

Religious Differences.

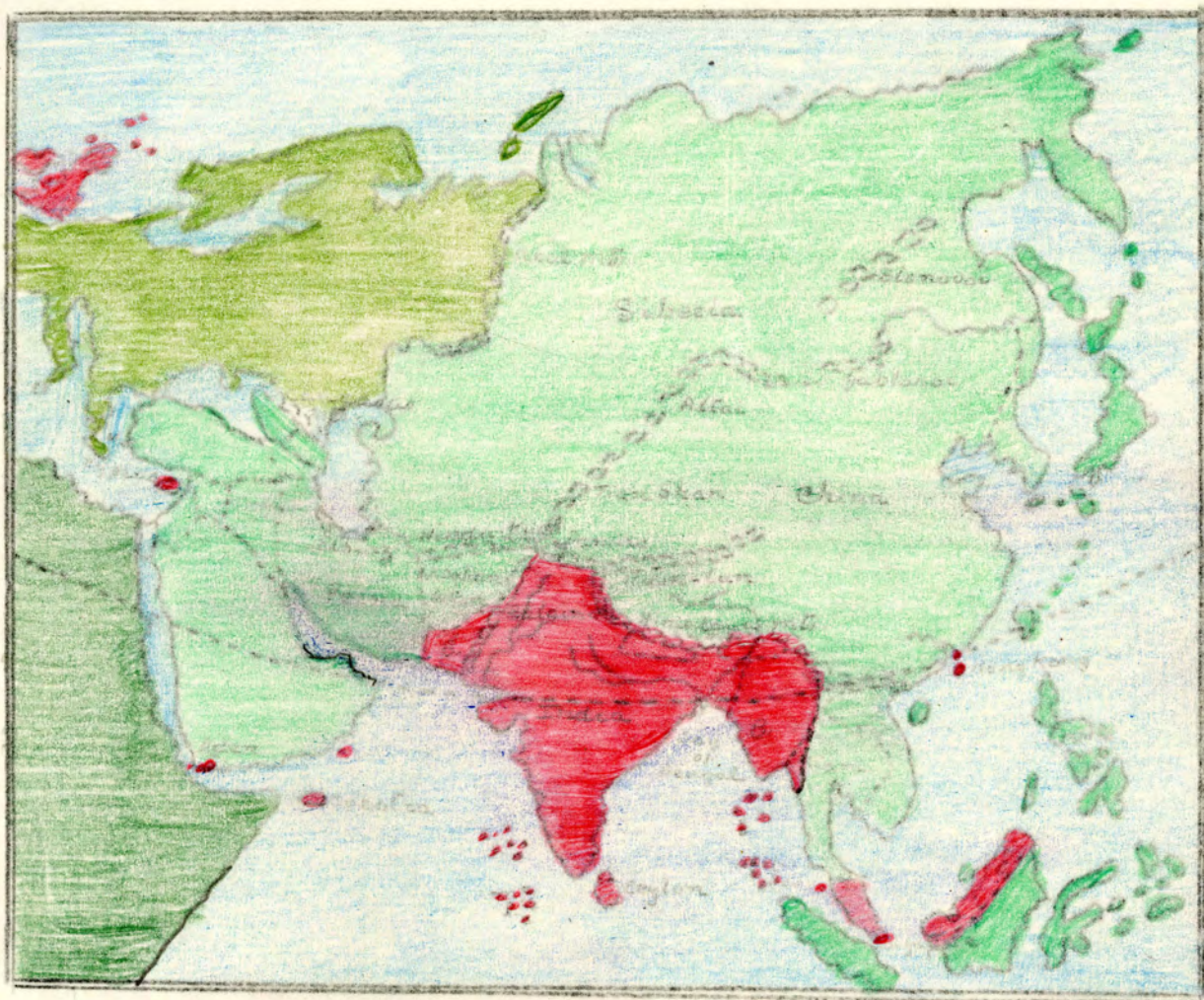
The Caste System.

The Lack of Racial Unity.

Notes.



Asia showing the location of India etc.









## ASIA (GENERAL):

The continent of Asia is almost twice the size of North America, and it contains about one-third of the land area of the world. It forms the eastern section of the Old World which extends from the Equatorial Latitudes in the south to a northern Latitude that is above seventy degrees. The Longitude extends from thirty degrees east to one-hundred and eighty degrees east.

This continent is divided into four natural divisions. They are Northern Asia which embraces the Soviet Republics; Eastern Asia which embraces China; South-western Asia which embraces the countries of Turkey, Transcaucasia, Syria, Palestine, Arabia, Trans-Jordan, Persia or Iran, and Afghanistan; and Southern Asia which embraces Baluchistan, India, Burma, Siam, Indo-China, and The Malay States.

The divisions of Asia are made by the mountain ranges which radiate from the central hub...The Pamirs. The mountains are the Elburz, Hindu-Kush, Sulaiman, Himalayas, Kuen-lun, Tien-Shan, Altai, Yablonoi, and Stanovoi.

The British possessions in Asia and Asiatic waters are Aden, Baluchistan, India, Burma, The Malay States, Cyprus, Perim Island, Laccadive Islands, Maldive Islands, Ceylon, Andaman Islands, Nicobar Islands, Singapore, and Hong-Kong.

The British Possession that is to be considered in this section is India...which lies in Southern Asia. The northern latitude of this section is thirty-seven degrees North; the southern latitude is eight degrees north; the western longitude is sixty-eight degrees east, and the eastern longitude is ninety-five degrees east.



The continent of Asia is almost twice the size of North America, and it contains about one-third of the land area of the world. It forms

the eastern section of the Old World which extends from the Equatorial latitudes in the south to a northern latitude that is above seventy degrees.

The longitude extends from thirty degrees east to one hundred and eighty degrees east.

This continent is divided into four natural divisions. They are

Northern Asia which embraces the Soviet Republics; Eastern Asia which embraces China; South-western Asia which embraces the countries of Turkey, Transcaucasia, Syria, Palestine, Arabia, Trans-Jordan, Persia or Iran, and Afghanistan; and Southern Asia which embraces Baluchistan, India, Burma, Siam, Indo-China, and The Malay States.

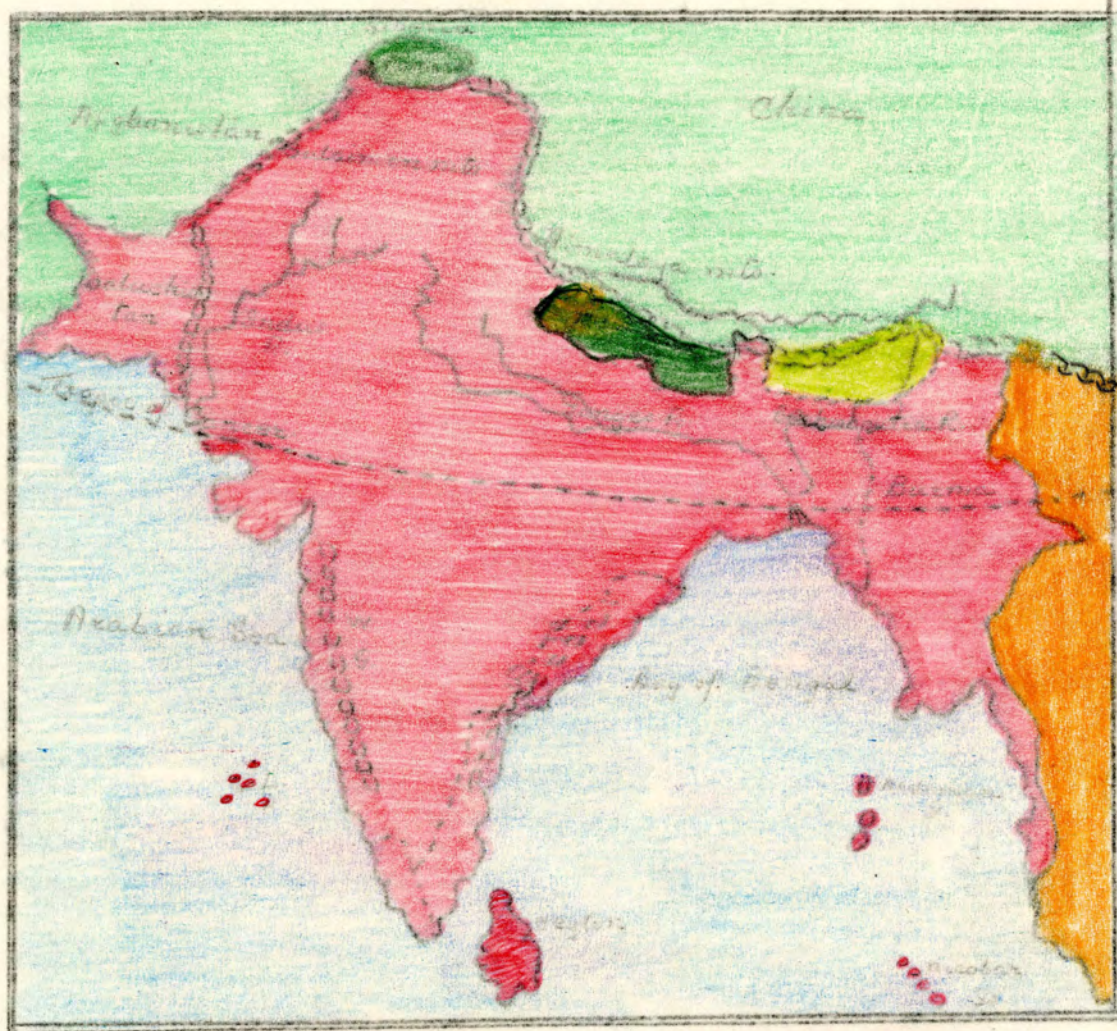
The divisions of Asia are made by the mountain ranges which radiate from the central hub... The Pamirs. The mountains are the Hindu-Kush, Sulaiman, Himalayas, Kuen-lun, Tien-Shan, Altai, Yedlunoi, and Stanovoi.

The British possessions in Asia and Asiatic waters are Aden, Baluchistan, India, Burma, The Malay States, Ceylon, Burma Island, Laccadive Islands, Maldiva Islands, Ceylon, Andaman Islands, Nicobar Islands, Singapore, and Hong-Kong.

The British Possession that is to be considered in this section is India... which lies in Southern Asia. The northern latitude of this section is thirty-seven degrees North; the southern latitude is eight degrees North; the western longitude is sixty-eight degrees East, and the eastern longitude is ninety-five degrees East.



India - Location, Boundaries, Surface, Climate









INDIA...LOCATION? ZONES, BOUNDARIES? SURFACE, etc.

India lies in Southern Asia. It lies in the North Temperate and the North Torrid Zones. The important Parallel of Latitude that crosses it is The Tropic of Cancer.

The boundaries of this section are...On the North...The Pamirs, Himalaya Mountains, Siberia, China, Nepal, and Bhutan. On the East...Burma. On the South...Bay of Bengal, Arabian Sea, and the Indian Ocean. On the West...the Sulaiman Mountains, Baluchistan, and Afghanistan.

The surface of India is characterized by Mountains, foothills, lowland plains, rivers, plateau, low mountains, coastal plains, barrier beaches, and desert. The extreme north is very mountainous. South of this there are foot-hills. Then a great plain extends across the country. It is drained by the Indus River and the Ganges-Brahmaputra Rivers. Near the Indus there is a desert region which requires irrigation. The majority of southern India is a great plateau...The Deccan. It is bordered by the Eastern and Western Ghats which are low mountains. Near the coasts there are narrow coastal plains, and along the west coast there are barrier beaches.

The factors that influence the climate of the country are Latitude, Altitude, Prevailing Winds, The Monsoons, the Mountains, and nearness to the Ocean. The climate is comparatively mild. The tropical situation means that the climate will be tropical and sub-tropical. The different altitudes mean that there will be a variety of temperatures according to height above sea-level. The Prevailing Winds are the North-East Trades. The characteristic wind of India is the Monsoon which is a good example of Land and Sea Breezes. The winters of the north are dry and cool because the high mountains protect it from the cold north winds.



INDIA...LOCATION? ZONES, BOUNDARIES? SURROUND, etc.

India lies in Southern Asia. It lies in the North Temperate

and the North Torrid Zones. The important Parallel of Latitude that cross-

es it is The Tropic of Cancer.

The boundaries of this section are...On the North...The Himalayas

Himalaya Mountains, Siberia, China, Nepal, and Bhutan. On the East...

Burma. On the South...Bay of Bengal, Arabian Sea, and the Indian Ocean.

On the West...the Sulaiman Mountains, Baluchistan, and Afghanistan.

The surface of India is characterized by Mountains, foothills,

lowland plains, rivers, plateau, low mountains, coastal plains, barrier

beaches, and desert. The extreme north is very mountainous. South of

this there are foot-hills. Then a great plain extends across the country.

It is drained by the Indus River and the Ganges-Brahmaputra Rivers. Near

the Indus there is a desert region which requires irrigation. The majority

of southern India is a great plateau...The Deccan. It is bordered by the

Eastern and Western Ghats which are low mountains. Near the coasts there

are narrow coastal plains, and along the west coast there are barrier

beaches.

The factors that influence the climate of the country are

Latitude, Altitude, Prevailing Winds, The Monsoons, the Mountains, and

proximity to the Ocean. The climate is comparatively mild. The tropical

situation means that the climate will be tropical and sub-tropical. The

different altitudes mean that there will be a variety of temperatures

according to height above sea-level. The Prevailing Winds are the North-

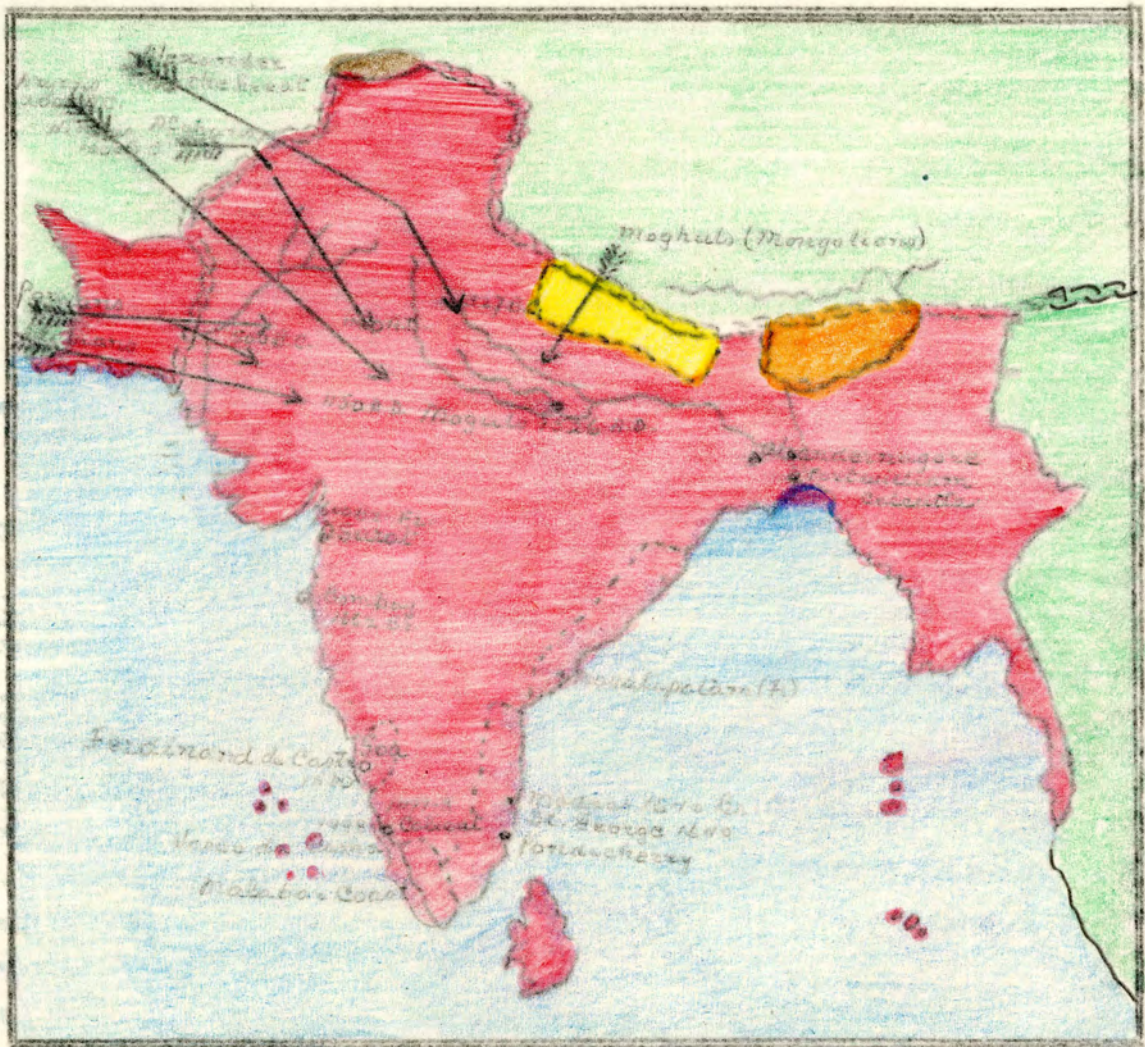
East Trades. The characteristic wind of India is the Monsoon which is

a good example of Land and Sea Breezes. The winters of the north are dry

and cool because the high mountains protect it from the cold north winds.



India - Early History - Native People - European Visitors.





# India - Early History - Before British Rule





The summers are hot and wet. Irrigation is necessary in the Indus Valley. There are three seasons.....Cool from October to February; Hot from March to June, and Wet from June to October.

---

INDIA...EARLY HISTORY....NATIVE PEOPLE.....EUROPEAN VISITORS.

In this section there is a combination of Geography and History with the information presented in brief. Some of the information listed here will be repeated at greater length under the History.

The early visitors to India included the following.....

2000 B.C.-1000 B.C.	Aryans.....	Indus River.
500 B.C.	Persians.....	Indus River.
483 B.C.	Buddha established Buddhism in India.	
327 B.C.	Alexander the Great..	Central Plain.
664 A.D.	Arabians.....	Indus River.
1150 A.D.	Afghans.....	The Northern Plain.
1526 A.D.	Mongolians.....	The Eastern Plain.
1747 A.D.	Persians.....	Indus River.
1761 A.D.	Afghans.....	The Central Plain.

The native people who were found in India included the Dravidians, the Telugus, and the Tamils.

The early European visitors who visited India between 1400 and 1800 included the following.....

1498.....	Vasco da Gama.
1530.....	Ferdinand de Castro.
1595.....	The Dutch to the East Indies and Agra Fort.
1599.....	Sir John Mildenhall.
1600.....	The British were at Surat.
1612.....	Captain Best defeated the Portuguese off Surat.
1614.....	Sir Thomas Roe founded Anglo-Indian trade.
1650.....	The French established a post at Surat.
1662.....	Bombay became British.
1665.....	Humphrey Cook was commander at Bombay.
1690.....	Job Charnock established Calcutta.
1740.....	The French and the English fought for supremacy in India.
1748.....	the French took Madras.

The centres established in India by Europeans included.....



The summers are hot and wet. Irrigation is necessary in the Indus Valley.  
There are three seasons....Cool from October to February; Hot from March  
to June, and Wet from June to October.

# INDIA...EARLY HISTORY...NATIVE PEOPLE...EUROPEAN VISITORS

In this section there is a combination of Geography and History  
with the information presented in brief. Some of the information listed  
here will be repeated at greater length under the History.

The early visitors to India included the following.....

2000 B.C.-1000 B.C. Aryans.....Indus River.  
500 B.C.....Persians.....Indus River.  
488 B.C.....Buddha established Buddhism in India.  
327 B.C.....Alexander the Great.....Central India.  
666 A.D.....Arabs.....Indus River.  
1180 A.D.....Afghans.....The Northern India.  
1206 A.D.....Mongols.....The Eastern India.  
1297 A.D.....Persians.....Indus River.  
1491 A.D.....Afghans.....The Central India.

The native people who were found in India included the Dravidians.

the Telugu, and the Tamil.

The early European visitors who visited India between 1400 and

1600 included the following.....

1498.....Vasco da Gama.  
1500.....Ferdinand de Castro.  
1505.....The Dutch to the East Indies and Agra Fort.  
1599.....Sir John Mildenhall.  
1600.....The British were at Surat.  
1612.....Captain Best defeated the Portuguese off  
Surat.  
1614.....Sir Thomas Roe founded Anglo-Indian trade.  
1650.....The French established a post at Surat.  
1662.....Bombay became British.  
1665.....Humphrey Cook was commander at Bombay.  
1690.....Job Charnock established Calcutta.  
1740.....The French and the English fought for  
supremacy in India.  
1748.....the French took Mahras.

The centres established in India by Europeans included.....



The Growth of British Influence in India.









Calicut.....	1498.....	Portugal.
Goa.....	1530.....	Portugal.
Surat.....	1600, 1612, 1650....	British....French.
Madras..(St. George)	1640.....	British.
Bombay.....	1662.....	British.
Calcutta.(Fort William).	1690.....	British.
Chandernagore.....		.....French.
Masulipatam.....		.....French.
Pondicherry.....		.....French.

### THE GROWTH OF BRITISH INFLUENCE IN INDIA.

#### a. FROM 1600 to 1747:

- 1600.....Surat was established as a British trading post.
- 1612.....Off Surat the Portuguese were defeated by Captain Best.
- 1614.....Anglo-Indian trade was established by Thomas Roe.
- 1640.....Madras was established as a British Trading Post.
- 1650.....Surat was established as a French Trading Post.
- 1662.....Bombay was established as a trading post by the British East India Company.
- 1690.....Calcutta was established as a trading post by the British.
- .....Chandernagore was established by the French north of Calcutta.
- .....Masulipatam was established by the French in Circars.
- .....Pondicherry was established by the French in the Carnatic.

#### b. FROM 1748 to 1763:

- 1748.....Madras was taken from British by the French.
- 1751.....Trichinopoly was attacked by the allies of the French.
- 1751.....Arcot was captured by Robert Clive for the British.
- 1756.....Calcutta was taken by Surajah Dowlah. The Black Hole of Calcutta was the result.
- 1757.....Calcutta was recaptured by Robert Clive.
- 1757.....Plassey was captured by the British. In the battle there were 70,000 men against 3000 men. The British won the large and fertile Province of Bengal.
- 1757.....Wandewash was captured by the British.
- 1757-8.....Pondicherry was captured by the British.
- 1763.....India became a British Possession, and Robert Clive laid the foundation of an Anglo-Indian Empire.

#### c. FROM 1764-1856.

- 1765.....Allahabad near Benares was captured by the British.
- 1779.....During the Mahratta War north-western Deccan was captured by the British.
- 1780.....The Carnatic was invaded and devastated by Hyder Ali.
- 1803.....Assaye to the north-east of Bombay was captured from the Mahrattas by the British.
- 1818.....The Rajputs acknowledged British supremacy.



Calicut.....	1498.....	Portuguese
Goa.....	1510.....	Portuguese
Bombay.....	1600, 1612, 1680.....	British
Madrass.....	1640.....	British
Bombay.....	1662.....	British
Calicut (Fort William).....	1690.....	British
Chandernagore.....	.....	French
Kanniyakum.....	.....	French
Pondicherry.....	.....	French

# THE GROWTH OF BRITISH INFLUENCE IN INDIA.

## a. FROM 1600 to 1747:

1600.....Surat was established as a British trading post.  
1612.....Off Surat the Portuguese were defeated by Captain Best.  
1614.....Anglo-Indian trade was established by Thomas Roe.  
1640.....Madrass was established as a British trading post.  
1650.....Surat was established as a French trading post.  
1662.....Bombay was established as a trading post by the British.  
.....East India Company.  
1690.....Calicut was established as a trading post by the British.  
.....Chandernagore was established by the French north of Calicut.  
.....Mannipattan was established by the French in Orissa.  
.....Pondicherry was established by the French in the Carnatic.

## b. FROM 1748 to 1763:

1748.....Madrass was taken from British by the French.  
1751.....Trichinopoly was attacked by the allies of the French.  
1751.....Arcot was captured by Robert Clive for the British.  
1756.....Calicut was taken by Surajah Dowlah. The Black Hole of Calicut was the result.  
1757.....Calicut was recaptured by Robert Clive.  
1757.....Plassey was captured by the British. In the battle there were 70,000 men against 3000 men. The British won the large and fertile Province of Bengal.  
1757.....Wandewash was captured by the British.  
1757-8.....Pondicherry was captured by the British.  
1763.....India became a British possession, and Robert Clive laid the foundation of an Anglo-Indian Empire.

## c. FROM 1764-1858:

1765.....Alibabad near Benares was captured by the British.  
1779.....During the Maratta War north-western Deccan was captured by the British.  
1780.....The Carnatic was invaded and devastated by Hyder Ali.  
1803.....Assaye to the north-east of Bombay was captured from the Marattas by the British.  
1818.....The Marattas acknowledged British supremacy.



1826.....Bharatpur was captured by the British.  
 1842.....In Khyber Pass British troops were massacred by the Afghans.  
 1843.....Hyderabad in the Scinde was captured by the British.  
 1846.....Punjab was ceded to the British.  
 1853.....A railway was extended from Bombay to Tannah.

d. FROM 1857 to 1858:

1857.....Lucknow was besieged by Native Troops.  
 1857.....Cawnpore was besieged, and the people were massacred after they had been promised safe passage out.  
 1857.....Delhi was besieged by natives.  
 1858.....1..The British East India Company ceased to govern India, and the country was placed under the British Crown.

e. FROM 1859 to 1918:

1879.....The third Afghan War occurred.  
 1880.....Mazar was a British victory in Afghanistan.  
 1880.....Kandahar was relieved by Lord Roberts.  
 1887.....Queen Victoria received the title "Empress of India."  
 1900.....Indian troops helped the British in South Africa.  
 1904.....By the Treaty of Lahasa trade was carried on with Tibet.  
 1911.....Delhi was made the capital of India.  
 1914-1918..Indian troops helped the Allies in the First World War.  
 1917.....Indian troops helped General Maude on the Euphrates.

f. FORM 1919 to 1947:

Mahatma Gandhi organized the Nationalistic Party in India. He helped in part to break down the Caste System.

The British Government made numerous concessions to the Indians and modified the Government, but in 1939 did not feel that India was ready for Dominion Status.

During World War 11 numerous Indians helped the Allies.

Now India has been granted Dominion Status, and there has been considerable strife between factions in that country.

---

The Provinces or states of India as listed in the New Educator Encyclopedia are.....Assam, Bengal, Bihar and Orissa, Bombay, Central Provinces and Berar, Coorg, Delhi, Madras, North-west Frontier Provinces, Punjab, and the United Provinces of Agra and Oudh.



Punjab, and the United Provinces of Agra and Oudh.  
 Provinces and Berar, Coorg, Delhi, Madras, North-west Frontier Provinces,  
 Hyderabad and Assam, Bengal, Bihar and Orissa, Bombay, Central  
 The Provinces or states of India as listed in the New Webster

country.  
 has been considerable strife between factions in that  
 Now India has been granted Dominion Status, and there  
 During World War II numerous Indians helped the Allies.  
 did not feel that India was ready for Dominion Status.  
 the Indians and modified the Government, but in 1939  
 The British Government made numerous concessions to  
 System.

India. He helped in part to break down the caste  
 Mahatma Gandhi organized the Nationalistic Party in

#### 1. FROM 1919 to 1947:

1917.....Indian troops helped General Maude on the Mesopotamian  
 War.  
 1914-1918.....Indian troops helped the Allies in the First World  
 War.  
 1911.....Delhi was made the capital of India.  
 Tibet.

1904.....By the Treaty of Lhasa trade was carried on with  
 Indian troops helped the British in South Africa.  
 1897.....Queen Victoria received the title "Empress of India."  
 1880.....Kandahar was relieved by Lord Roberts.  
 1880.....Kashgar was a British victory in Afghanistan.  
 1879.....The third Afghan War occurred.

#### 2. FROM 1859 to 1918:

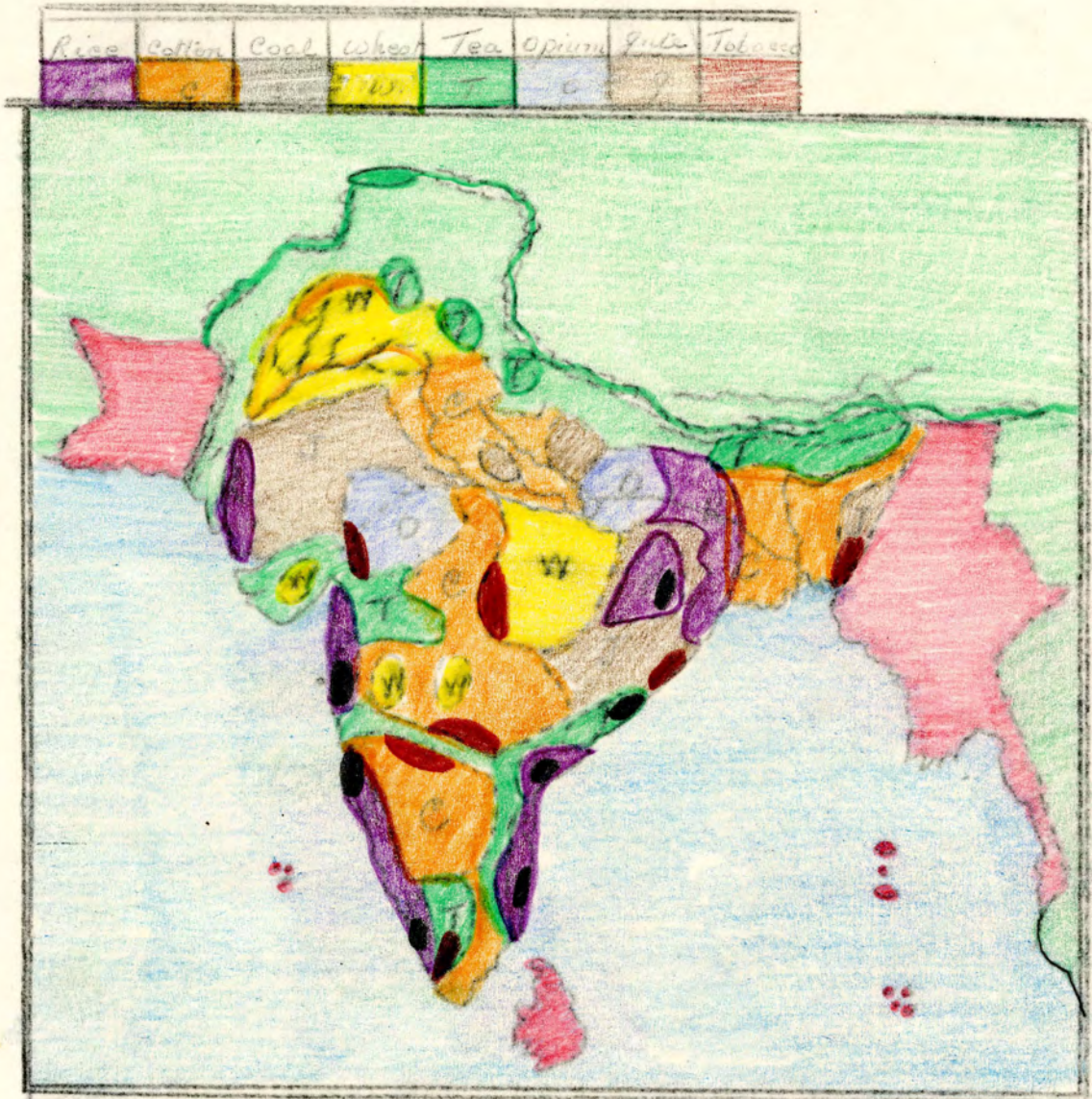
Grew.  
 India, and the country was placed under the British  
 1888.....The British East India Company ceased to govern  
 1857.....Delhi was besieged by natives.  
 after they had been promised safe passage out.  
 1857.....Gwalior was besieged, and the people were massacred  
 1857.....Lucknow was besieged by Native troops.

#### 3. FROM 1857 to 1858:

1855.....A railway was extended from Bombay to Tanna.  
 1845.....Frisland was ceded to the British.  
 1845.....Hyderabad in the Deccan was captured by the British.  
 1842.....In Khyber Pass British troops were massacred by the  
 Afghans.  
 1838.....Kharakpur was captured by the British.



The Work of the People.









## INDIA...THE WORK OF THE PEOPLE:

Agriculture is the chief industry of the country. It is carried on in the Indo-Gangetic plain and the Deccan. India is a land of farmers. Between eighty and ninety per cent of the people depend on Agriculture or its auxiliary services. About 350,000,000 acres are cultivated.

Rice-growing is carried on in the Indo-Gangetic plain. There are from three to five crops each year.

Cotton-growing is carried on in the Deccan. The cotton is used for manufacture for home consumption and for export.

Wheat-growing is carried on in the Punjab. The majority of the wheat grown is exported.

Jute-growing is carried on in the Bengal plain. It is used for making rope, sacking, and coarse cloth.

Millet-growing is carried on in the Bengal plain. It is used as food by the poor people.

Poppy-growing is carried on in the regions of Patna and Benares. White Poppies are cultivated under license for the production of opium.

Tobacco-growing is carried on in south-western and western India and in various other sections. The majority of the tobacco grown is consumed in the country.

Tea-growing is carried on in the foot-hills of the Himalayas. India produces a lot of tea, but very little of it is consumed at home, so India is the world's largest exporter of this product.

Cattle-raising is carried on in various parts of the country. In some sections cattle are sacred. They are used for drawing wagons, for ploughing, for treading grain, for working water-wheels, and for carrying crops.

---

Mining is not as important as agriculture in India, but it is gradually assuming an important place.

Manganese-mining is carried on in the central provinces. India is a large exporter of this mineral.

Coal-mining is carried on in the Damodar Valley. It is carried on on a small scale.

Iron-mining is as yet in its infancy. It is carried on in the coal-mining regions.



## INDIA...THE WORK OF THE PEOPLE

Agriculture is the chief industry of the country. It is carried on in the Indo-Gangetic plain and the Deccan. India is a land of farmers. Between eighty and ninety per cent of the people depend on agriculture or its auxiliary services. About 250,000,000 acres are cultivated. Rice-growing is carried on in the Indo-Gangetic plain. There are from three to five crops each year.

Cotton-growing is carried on in the Deccan. The cotton is used for manufacture for home consumption and for export.

Wheat-growing is carried on in the Punjab. The majority of the wheat grown is exported.

Jute-growing is carried on in the Bengal plain. It is used for making rope, sackings, and coarse cloth.

Millet-growing is carried on in the Bengal plain. It is used as food by the poor people.

Poppy-growing is carried on in the regions of Patna and Benares. White Poppies are cultivated under license for the production of opium.

Tobacco-growing is carried on in south-western and western India and in various other sections. The majority of the tobacco grown is consumed in the country.

Tee-growing is carried on in the foot-hills of the Himalayas. India produces a lot of tee, but very little of it is consumed at home. so India is the world's largest exporter of this product.

Cattle-raising is carried on in various parts of the country. In some sections cattle are reared. They are used for drawing wagons, for ploughing, for treading grain, for working water-wheels, and for carrying loads.

Mining is not as important as agriculture in India, but it is gradually assuming an important place.

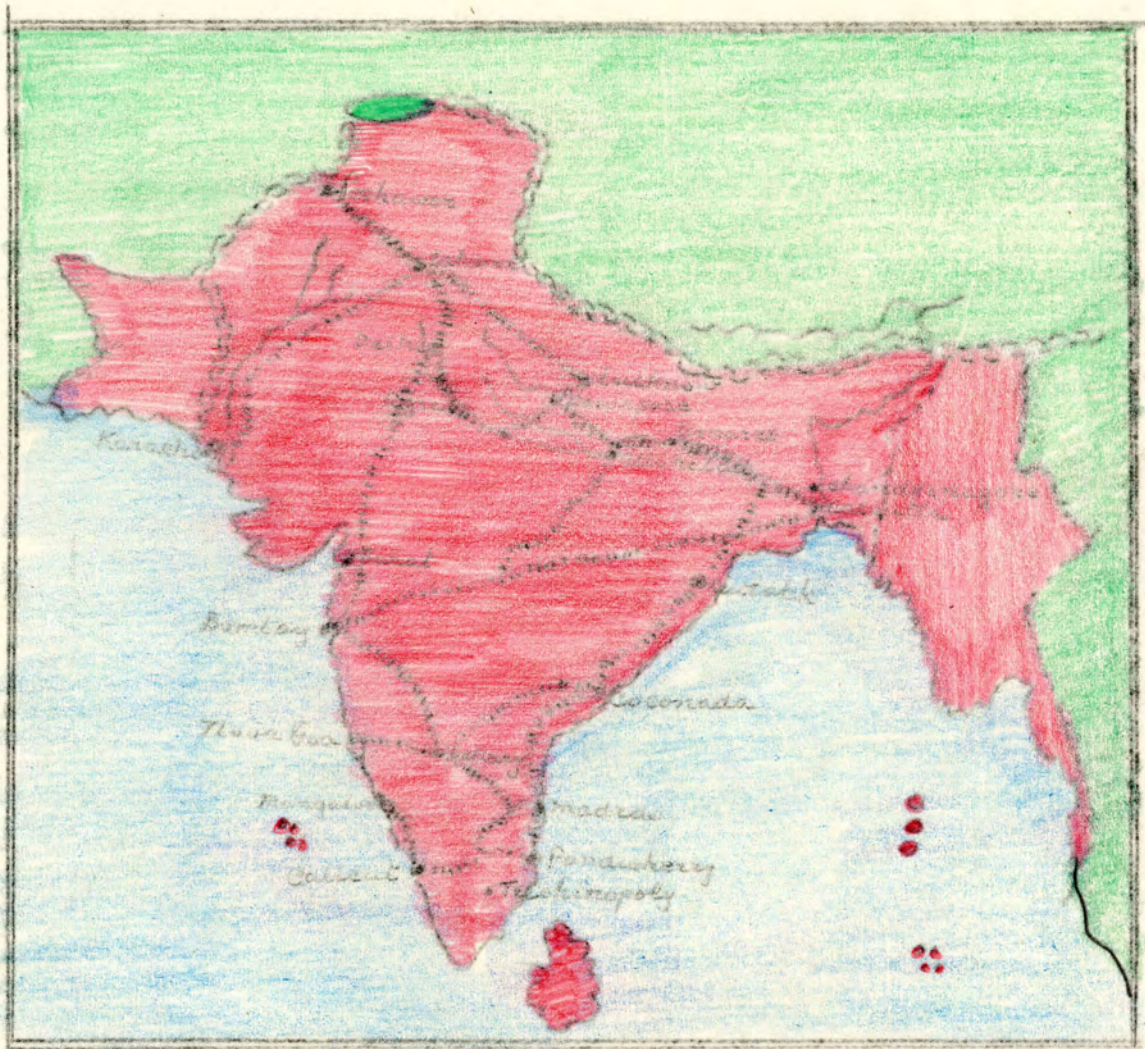
Manganese-mining is carried on in the central provinces. India is a large exporter of this mineral.

Coal-mining is carried on in the Damodar Valley. It is carried on on a small scale.

Iron-mining is as yet in its infancy. It is carried on in the coal-mining regions.



Cities, Towns and Transportation Systems.









## INDIA...CITIES, TOWNS, AND TRANSPORTATION:

Calcutta is about ninety miles from the sea on the Hoogly River which is one of the mouths of the Ganges River. It is a commercial and historical centre.

Bombay is situated on an island off the central west coast. It is a seaport, a trade centre, and a manufacturing centre where cotton is manufactured.

Madras is situated on the south-eastern coast on the Bay of Bengal. It is a seaport and a commercial centre.

Benares is situated inland on the Ganges River. It is the sacred city of the Hindus.

Hyderabad is situated in the Deccan. It is a collecting and distributing centre.

Karachi is situated near the mouth of the Indus River. It is an important wheat-exporting centre.

Delhi is situated inland on the Ganges River. It is the capital of the country.

Lucknow and Cawnpore are situated north of Allahabad in central India. They are important historical centres.

Simla is located in the foot-hills of the Himalayas to the north of Delhi. It is an important summer resort.

---

## TRANSPORTATION:

The first roads of India were poor, and were traversed by bullock-carts. The Ganges is navigable for considerable distance, and it is used by boats. The British built the first good roads for military purposes. The outstanding one was the Grand Trunk Road from Calcutta to Peshwar. There are about 42,000 miles of railroads. They are used for commercial purposes and connect the seaports with old towns like Cawnpore and Allahabad. These towns expanded, but they were not built by the railroads. There are four different railway lines in the country, but India is under-supplied. During World War 11 a number of airports were established in India. The planes connect a number of important cities.



## INDIA...CITIES, TOWNS, AND TRANSPORTATION

Calcutta is about ninety miles from the sea on the Hooghly River which is one of the mouths of the Ganges River. It is a commercial and historical centre.

Bombay is situated on an island off the central west coast. It is a seaport, a trade centre, and a manufacturing centre where cotton is manufactured.

Madras is situated on the south-eastern coast on the Bay of Bengal. It is a seaport and a commercial centre.

Banarases is situated inland on the Ganges River. It is the sacred city of the Hindus.

Hyderabad is situated in the Deccan. It is a collecting and distributing centre.

Karachi is situated near the mouth of the Indus River. It is an important wheat-exporting centre.

Delhi is situated inland on the Ganges River. It is the capital of the country.

Lucknow and Gwalpore are situated north of Allahabad in central India. They are important historical centres.

Simla is located in the foot-hills of the Himalayas to the north of Delhi. It is an important summer resort.

## TRANSPORTATION

The first roads of India were poor, and were traversed by bullock-carts. The Ganges is navigable for considerable distances, and it is used by boats. The British built the first good roads for military purposes. The outstanding one was the Grand Trunk Road from Calcutta to Peshwar. There are about 42,000 miles of railways. They are used for commercial purposes and connect the seaports with old towns like Gwalpore and Allahabad. These towns expanded, but they were not built by the railways. There are four different railway lines in the country, but India is under-supplied. During World War II a number of airports were established in India. The planes connect a number of important cities.



INDIA....THE ETERNAL LAND OF MYSTERY: 2000 B.C. to 1947 A.D.

**THE EARLY HISTORY:**

India had an outstanding civilization when Europeans were still in a state of barbarism. Fine poets, builders, and the great religious teacher, "Buddha" were produced there before the birth of Christ. Between 2000 B.C. and 1000 B.C. Aryan invaders who were the ancestors of the Hindus entered India from the north-west. They subdued the savage native tribes and settled along the banks of the Indus River. They did not establish a consolidated empire or a central administration, but they introduced their religion, philosophy, and social organization. These persist in the country to this day.

About 500 B.C. the Persians invaded the country, and conquered the Indus Valley. In 483 B.C. Gautama Buddha founded Buddhism. In 327 B.C. Alexander the Great of the Balkan States, Macedonia, and South-western Asia conquered north-western India, Hindustan, and Northern India as far as Lahore.

In 664 A.D. Arabians from Mecca who were Mohammedans, invaded the country, but no real conquests resulted until after 1000 A.D. In 1150 A.D. the Afghans conquered and established themselves in the northern Plains. By the fourteenth century they had extended their influence to the Deccan.

In 1526 A.D. the Mohammedan Moguls from Mongolia in northern China conquered the Afghans and established a great Mogul Empire there. This Empire lasted until the end of the eighteenth century, and Moguls are represented among the ruling princes of Afghanistan to-day. The Moguls captured Bengal, and made themselves over-lords over the country. They united the scattered tribes into the great Mogul Empire of India.



## INDIA.....THE BIRTH OF CIVILIZATION: 3000 B.C. to 1947 A.D.

### THE EARLY HISTORY:

India had an outstanding civilization when Europeans were still in a state of barbarism. Fine poets, builders, and the great religions teacher, "Buddha" were produced there before the birth of Christ. Between 3000 B.C. and 1000 B.C. Aryan invaders who were the ancestors of the Hindus entered India from the north-west. They subdued the savage native tribes and settled along the banks of the Indus River. They did not establish a consolidated empire or a central administration, but they introduced their religion, philosophy, and social organization. These persist in the country to this day.

About 300 B.C. the Persians invaded the country, and conquered the Indus Valley. In 483 B.C. Gautama Buddha founded Buddhism. In 327 B.C. Alexander the Great of the Balkan States, Macedonia, and South-western Asia conquered north-western India, Hindustan, and Northern India as far as Lahore. In 644 A.D. Arabians from Mecca who were Mohammedans, invaded the country, but no real conquests resulted until after 1000 A.D. In 1190 A.D. the Afghans conquered and established themselves in the northern plains. By the fourteenth century they had extended their influence to the Deccan.

In 1526 A.D. the Mohammedan Moguls from Mongolia in northern China conquered the Afghans and established a great Mogul Empire there. This Empire lasted until the end of the eighteenth century, and Moguls are represented among the ruling princes of Afghanistan to-day. The Moguls captured Bengal, and made themselves over-lords over the country. They united the scattered tribes into the great Mogul Empire of India.



Akbar, the great Mogul, reigned in India about the time that Queen Elizabeth reigned in England. Shah Jahan, the second last great Mogul, loved his favourite wife, Mumtaz Mahal. When she died, he caused a great and wonderful mausoleum..the Taj Mahal, to be erected in Delhi to her memory. That occurred during the reign of Charles 1 in England.

The Mogul rulers after that became very despotic. Corruption was rife, and the Mogul Empire declined after 1707.

The Persians and the Afghans attacked the Empire between 1747 and 1761. They pillaged, massacred, and burned in all directions. During these troubled times Europeans began to visit India.

#### THE NATIVE PEOPLE:

The aboriginal people found by the Aryan invaders when they conquered India were Dravidians, Telugus, and Tamils. They were small dark-skinned people who <sup>are descendants</sup> now live in the swamps along the Ganges River and in the interior of the Deccan. They have developed into scattered groups of superstitious natives living in remote parts of the country. They are classed under the general term of "Animists." They worship trees, rivers, and a number of things, and at one time they were said to offer human sacrifices.

Three-fourths of the people are Aryans whose ancestors originally came from north-western and central Asia. They are like the early dwellers on the shores of the Mediterranean Sea, and are Hindus. These people were divided into various groups....The Bssamese and the Bangali lived in the north-east; the Hindus proper lived in the Ganges Plain; the Rajputs and the Jats lived in the north-west; the Sikhs lived in the Punjab; the Mahrattas lived in the north-western part of the



Akbar, the Great Mogul, reigned in India about the time that

Queen Elizabeth reigned in England. Shah Jahan, the second last great

Mogul, loved his favourite wife, Mumtaz Mahal. When she died, he caused

a great and wonderful mausoleum, the Taj Mahal, to be erected in Delhi.

to her memory. That occurred during the reign of Charles I in England.

The Mogul rulers after that became very despotic. Corruption

was rife, and the Mogul Empire declined after 1707.

The Persians and the Afghans attacked the Empire between 1747

and 1761. They pillaged, massacred, and burned in all directions. During

these troubled times Europeans began to visit India.

#### THE NATIVE PEOPLE:

The aboriginal people found by the Aryan invaders when they

conquered India were Dravidians, Telugus, and Tamils. They were small

dark-skinned people who now live in the swamps along the Ganges River

and in the interior of the Deccan. They have developed into scattered

groups of superstitious natives living in remote parts of the country.

They are classed under the general term of "Animists." They worship trees,

rivers, and a number of things, and at one time they were said to offer

human sacrifices.

Three-fourths of the people are Aryans whose ancestors

originally came from north-western and central Asia. They are like the

early dwellers on the shores of the Mediterranean Sea, and are Hindus.

These people were divided into various groups....The Brahmins and the

Kshatriyas lived in the north-east; the Hindus proper lived in the Ganges

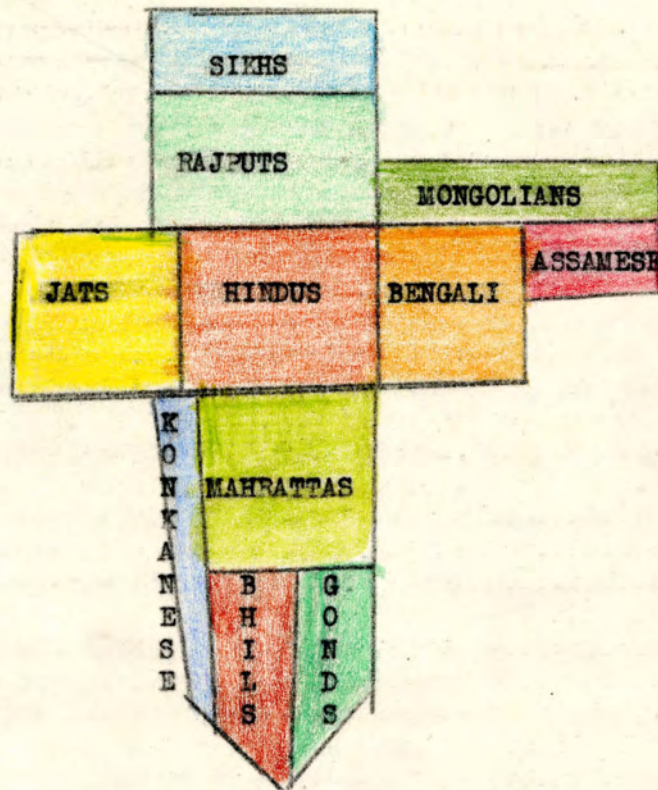
plain; the Rajputs and the Jats lived in the north-west; the Sikhs lived

in the Punjab; the Mahatmas lived in the north-western part of the



Deccan; the Konkanese lived along the coast near Bombay; the Mongolians lived in the north; and the Bhils and the Gonds lived in the forest regions of the southern Deccan.

The accompanying diagram shows the approximate areas occupied by the various groups of Hindus.....



There were various degrees of civilization among the Hindus ranging from the energetic manly Rajputs to the Barbarian Gonds. In this group about one-hundred and fifty different languages were spoken.

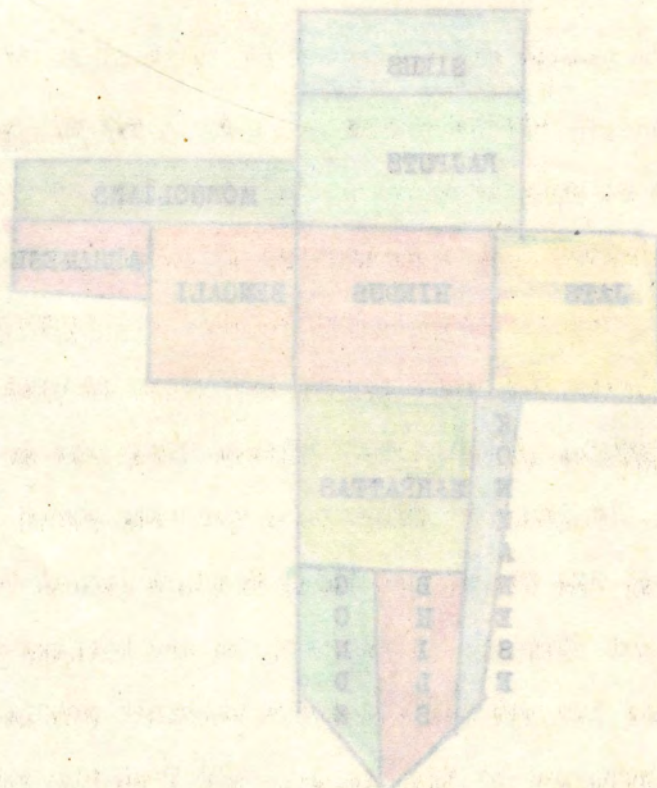
#### RELIGIONS:-

Religion in India is far more than a worship of deities or a belief in forces more powerful than man. The life of the Indian is greatly influenced



Deccan; the Konkanese lived along the coast near Bombay; the Mongolians lived in the north; and the Bhillas and the Gonds lived in the forest regions of the southern Deccan.

The accompanying diagram shows the approximate areas occupied by the various groups of Hindus.....



There were various degrees of civilization among the Hindus ranging from the energetic manly Rajputs to the barbarian Gonds. In this group about one hundred and fifty different languages were spoken.

#### RELIGIONS:-

Religion in India is far more than a worship of deities or a belief in forces more powerful than man. The life of the Indian is greatly influenced



by his religious belief in relation to the social, economic, or political world. The most important religions in India are Hinduism, Mohammedanism, Buddhism, Christianity, Sikhism, Jainism, Parsism, and numerous offshoots and cults.

.....

HINDUISM:- (240,000,000) (Brahminism).

There is no official head or organization to Hinduism. It divides the people into castes which used to be based on professions and occupations. The principal castes include.....The Brahmins or Priests...This caste includes persons of noble birth, priests, and those in pursuits requiring education....The Kshatriyas or Warriors....This caste includes the soldiers or fighting men....The Vaisyas or Business Men or Traders...This caste includes the shop-keepers and chief or head farmers....The Sudras or Servants....This caste includes those who do the menial work.The Pariahs....(70,000,000) This caste includes about one-sixth of the population. They are the untouchables who are forced to live outside of the villages, and they are not allowed to use bridges or temples.

There are between two and three thousand subdivisions of the above castes. Each one of them is shut off from the others by insurmountable barriers. No one can go from his own caste to a higher level.

The caste system specifies what a man shall believe; how he shall eat, drink, or sleep; whom he shall marry, and how he shall make his living. The Hindu religion has three chief gods....Brahma, the creator of the universe; Siva, the destroyer; and Vishnu, the preserver. The sacred books of the Hindus are the Vedas which are probably the oldest books in the world.



by his religious belief in relation to the social, economic, or political world. The most important religions in India are Hinduism, Mohammedanism, Buddhism, Christianity, Sikhism, Jainism, Parsian, and numerous off-shoots and cults.

## HINDUISM - (240,000,000) (Brahminism).

There is no official head or organization to Hinduism. It divides the people into castes which used to be based on professions and occupations. The principal castes are: 1. The Brahmins or Priests. This caste includes persons of noble birth, priests, and those in parasitic occupations. 2. The Kshatriyas or Warriors. This caste includes the soldiers or fighting men. 3. The Vaishyas or Business Men or Traders. This caste includes the shop-keepers and chief or head farmers. 4. The Sudras or Servants. This caste includes those who do the menial work. The Pariahs. (70,000,000) This caste includes about one-sixth of the population. They are the untouchables who are forced to live outside of the villages, and they are not allowed to use bridges or temples. There are between two and three thousand subdivisions of the above castes. Each one of them is shut off from the others by insurmountable barriers. No one can go from his own caste to a higher level. The caste system specifies what a man shall believe; how he shall eat, drink, or sleep; when he shall marry, and how he shall make his living. The Hindu religion has three chief gods... Brahma, the creator of the universe; Shiva, the destroyer; and Vishnu, the preserver. The sacred books of the Hindus are the Vedas which are probably the oldest books in the world.



The Hindus believe in a number of gods. They have numerous sacred books, and teach that all men are on different levels. During the past fifteen years the caste system as practised in the past, is gradually breaking down. This has been accomplished under the powerful leadership of Mahatma Ghandi who is mainly responsible for the establishment of the Nationalist Government which influences a great part of modern India.

#### MOHAMMEDANISM...(75,000,000)

It was established by Mohamet. Mecca in Arabia is the Holy City of the Mohammedans. There are approximately 75,000,000 adherents in India. Mohammedans ...believe in one God; have one sacred book...The Koran, and teach that all men are equal. They believe that the creator rules by love and mercy. They wash frequently; do not drink wine; and do not eat pork. They pray five times a day no matter where they are or what they are doing. They fast often; give alms as a duty, and go on pilgrimages to Mecca if they can. After a pilgrimage, the pilgrim is entitled to dye his beard red to show that he has made the journey.

#### BUDDHISM....(10,000,000)

It is a philosophy rather than a religion. It was founded five-hundred or six-hundred years before the birth of Christ by Siddhartha Gautama Buddha, a Hindu who left a life of luxury to wander through India to try to solve the problem of human suffering, poverty, and sin. It does not recognize any god. The aim is to reach a state called "Nirvana" where both pain and pleasure are extinguished. Buddhists believe that man is born and reborn again and again until he reaches this state, but not necessarily as a man. If his previous life has been unsatisfactory,



The Hindus believe in a number of gods. They have numerous sacred books, and teach that all men are on different levels. During the past fifteen years the caste system as practised in the past, is gradually breaking down. This has been accomplished under the powerful leadership of Mahatma Gandhi who is mainly responsible for the establishment of the Nationalist Government which influences a great part of modern India.

MOHAMMEDANISM... (75,000,000)

It was established by Mohammed. Mecca in Arabia is the Holy City of the Mohammedans. There are approximately 75,000,000 adherents in India. Mohammedans... believe in one God; have one sacred book... The Koran, and teach that all men are equal. They believe that the creator rules by love and mercy. They wash frequently; do not drink wine; and do not eat pork. They pray five times a day no matter where they are or what they are doing. They fast often; give alms as a duty, and go on pilgrimages to Mecca if they can. After a pilgrimage, the pilgrim is entitled to dye his beard red to show that he has made the journey.

BUDDHISM... (10,000,000)

It is a philosophy rather than a religion. It was founded five hundred or six hundred years before the birth of Christ by Siddhartha Gautama Buddha, a Hindu who left a life of luxury to wander through India to try to solve the problem of human suffering, poverty, and sin. It does not recognize any God. The aim is to reach a state called "Nirvana" where both pain and pleasure are extinguished. Buddhists believe that man is born and reborn again and again until he reaches this state, but not necessarily as a man. If his previous life has been unsatisfactory,



he may be reborn as a slave or even as a beetle. In many districts Buddhism is debased by idolatry and magic.

CHRISTIANITY....(4,000,000).

The Pariahs of Hinduism are embracing this religion in increasing numbers. Different churches have missionaries in India. Some of them have established schools where Christianity is taught.

SIKHS...(6,000,000)

These are a Hindu sect living in the Punjab. They preach..... the brother-hood of man; the rejection of caste; and the uselessness of idol-worship. They sing hymns, say prayers, and listen to sermons.

PARSIS OR PARSEES...

They worship the sun, and regard fire as an emblem of purity. They do not seek converts. The headquarters of this group is in Bombay.

NOTE:....

At least ten million in India believe in spirits that haunt the trees, hills, waterfalls, stones, and rivers.

---

EARLY EUROPEAN VISITORS....

Spices and luxuries of the East were taken to the West by three caravan routes....North by way of the Caspian and Black Seas; Central by way of Syria; and Southern by way of the Red Sea and the Nile River. These were gradually shut off by the Turks. This deprived Europeans of spices, and meant that they had to do without them or discover new routes.

In 1498 Vasco da Gama, a Portuguese navigator who had sailed



he may be reborn as a slave or even as a beetle. In many districts

Buddhism is debased by idolatry and magic.

CHRISTIANITY....(4,000,000).

The Pariahs of Hindulism are embracing this religion in increasing

numbers. Different churches have missionaries in India. Some of them

have established schools where Christianity is taught.

SIXES...(4,000,000)

There are a Hindu sect living in the Punjab. They preach.....

the brother-hood of man; the rejection of caste; and the usefulness of

idol-worship. They sing hymns, say prayers, and listen to sermons.

PARIAHS OR PARIAHS....

They worship the sun, and regard fire as an emblem of purity.

They do not seek converts. The headquarters of this group is in Bombay.

NOTE:....

At least ten million in India believe in spirits that haunt the

trees, hills, waterfalls, stones, and rivers.

EARLY EUROPEAN VISITORS....

Spices and luxuries of the East were taken to the West by three

caravan routes....North by way of the Caspian and Black Seas; Central by

way of Syria; and Southern by way of the Red Sea and the Nile River. These

were gradually shut off by the Turks. This deprived Europeans of spices.

and meant that they had to do without them or discover new routes.

In 1498 Vasco da Gama, a Portuguese navigator who had sailed



around the south of Africa, landed at Calicut on the Malabar Coast of India. He established Portugal's monopoly of trade with the East, and secured commercial concessions for the Portuguese from the Hindu Raja of Malabar. In 1530, Ferdinand de Castro visited Goa or Nova Goa, the capital of Portuguese India.

In 1595 the Dutch sailed to the East Indies and established a trade in spices. They broke the Portuguese monopoly, and raised the price of pepper and other spices. The English entered the scene then.

In 1599, Sir John Mildenhall visited the great Mogul Akbar at Agra Fort and established British influence in India. In 1600, the English formed the British East India Trading Company. The Dutch prevented them trading with the East Indies, so they, with the Mogul's permission, established a post at Surat in India. Later they established other settlements at St. George (Madras) in 1640; Bombay in 1662, and at Fort William (Calcutta) in 1690.

In 1612, Captain Best of the British navy defeated the Portuguese fleet off Surat. This success was followed by the establishment of the first British factory in India. In 1614, Sir Thomas Roe, an Englishman, visited the Mogul's court as an envoy of James I. He was the founder of British trade with India.

In 1662, Bombay became a British post through the marriage of Charles II of England and a Portuguese princess. Charles turned Bombay over to the East India Company for an annual rental of £10. In 1665, Humphrey Cook, an Englishman, assumed command of the fort at Bombay.

#### THE GROWTH OF BRITISH INFLUENCE IN INDIA.

In 1650 the French established their first trading post at



around the south of Africa, landed at Delagoa Bay on the Malabar Coast of India. He established Portugal's monopoly of trade with the East, and secured commercial concessions for the Portuguese from the Hindu Raja of Malabar. In 1580, Ferdinand de Castro visited Goa on Nov 6th, the capital of Portuguese India.

In 1595 the Dutch sailed to the East Indies and established a trade in spices. They broke the Portuguese monopoly, and raised the price of pepper and other spices. The English entered the scene then. In 1599, Sir John Widdowhall visited the great Mogul Akbar at

Agra Fort and established British influence in India. In 1600, the English formed the British East India Trading Company. The Dutch prevented them trading with the East Indies, so they, with the Mogul's permission, established a post at Surat in India. Later they established other settlements at St. George (Madras) in 1600; Bombay in 1662, and at Port William (Calcutta) in 1690.

In 1612, Captain Best of the British navy defeated the Portuguese fleet off Surat. This success was followed by the establishment of the first British factory in India. In 1614, Sir Thomas Roe, an Englishman, visited the Mogul's court as an envoy of James I. He was the founder of British trade with India.

In 1662, Bombay became a British port through the marriage of Charles II of England and a Portuguese princess. Charles turned Bombay over to the East India Company for an annual rental of £10. In 1668, Namphrey Cook, an Englishman, assumed command of the fort at Bombay.

#### THE GROWTH OF BRITISH INFLUENCE IN INDIA.

In 1680 the French established their first trading post at



Surat. Later they established others at Chandernagore near Calcutta, at Masulipatam north-east of Madras, and at Pondicherry south of Madras. They took part in quarrels between Indian princes, and in return they were allowed to increase their power and their possessions.

In 1690, Job Charnock rebuilt his ruined factory on the Hoogly River, and thereby founded Fort William which was later called Calcutta. This centre played an important part in later history, and as a result it was a very important post.

In 1740 English and French interests in India conflicted. The French under Dupleix became the ruler of over thirty-million people. The French were respected, and the English were despised. Joseph Dupleix tried to establish a French Empire in the country. His ambition caused the Anglo-French struggle for supremacy there. Robert Clive, a general and a statesman, prevented Dupleix from realizing his ambition, and founded British supremacy in India. In 1745, the most progressive British centre in the country was Fort William (Calcutta) which is on the Hoogli River in Bengal Province. In 1748, the French Fleet of the East forced the British to surrender Madras to them.

#### THE CONQUEST OF INDIA.....1756-1763

##### THE REMOTE CAUSES:

Trade rivalry developed between England and France, and the French with the help of the natives tried to drive the British out of India.

##### IMMEDIATE CAUSES:

In 1748 the French seized Madras. Robert Clive, an obscure clerk in the British East India Company, was taken prisoner, but he escaped. Madras was then restored to the British by the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.



Grant. Later they established others at Chandernagore near Calcutta, at  
Mauripur north-east of Madras, and at Pondicherry south of Madras. They  
took part in quarrels between Indian princes, and in return they were  
allowed to increase their power and their possessions.

In 1690, Job Charnock rebuilt his ruined factory on the Hooghly  
River, and thereby founded Port William which was later called Calcutta.  
This centre played an important part in later history, and as a result  
it was a very important post.

In 1740 English and French interests in India conflicted. The  
French under Dupleix became the ruler of over thirty-million people. The  
French were respected, and the English were despised. Joseph Dupleix  
tried to establish a French Empire in the country. His ambition caused  
the Anglo-French struggle for supremacy there. Robert Clive, a General  
and a statesman, prevented Dupleix from realizing his ambition, and  
founded British supremacy in India. In 1748, the most progressive British  
centre in the country was Port William (Calcutta) which is on the Hooghly  
River in Bengal Province. In 1748, the French Fleet of the East forced the  
British to surrender Madras to them.

## THE CONQUEST OF INDIA.....1756-1763

### THE REMOTE CAUSES:

Trade rivalry developed between England and France, and the French  
with the help of the natives tried to drive the British out of India.

### IMMEDIATE CAUSES:

In 1748 the French seized Madras. Robert Clive, an obscure clerk  
in the British East India Company, was taken prisoner, but he escaped.  
Madras was then restored to the British by the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.



The natives in the employ of the French became hostile toward the British, and tried to force them to withdraw from the country. They showed their antagonism by attacking British posts.

THE LEADERS:

The leader of the French and their allies was Joseph Dupleix. He was the French Governor in India who wanted to establish a French-Empire in that country. The leader of the British was Robert Clive. He was a dissatisfied clerk in the employ of the British East India Company who was captured by the French and their allies, but he escaped. Then he became a soldier. Soon he was a leader of the British forces in the Carnatic, and later in all of India.

THE EVENTS OF THE WAR:

In 1748 Madras was captured by the French, but it was returned to the British before real hostilities broke out. In 1751, Arcot was seized by the British under Robert Clive. Later he defended it against a native seige. This won the respect of a great many of the natives, and caused a loss of French prestige.

In 1756, Calcutta was captured by Surajah Dowlah, a native chief in the employ of the French. He imprisoned one-hundred and forty-six British prisoners in a dungeon that was eighteen feet long and fourteen feet wide for a night. Only twenty-three of them came out alive. In 1757 Calcutta was recaptured by Robert Clive.

In 1757 at Plassey Robert Clive defeated Surajah's forces which numbered fifty-five thousand with an army of three-thousand men, of which only one-thousand were British soldiers. The British victory is attributed to superior discipline and the treachery of Surajah Dowlah's chief lieutenants. This victory won for the British the fertile Province of Bengal, and decided the fate of India. Surajah Dowlah was deposed and



The natives in the employ of the French became hostile towards the British, and tried to force them to withdraw from the country. They showed their antagonism by attacking British posts.

#### THE LEADER:

The leader of the French and their allies was Joseph Bonaparte. He was the French Governor in India who wanted to establish a French Empire in that country. The leader of the British was Robert Clive. He was a dissatisfied clerk in the employ of the British East India Company who was captured by the French and their allies, but he escaped. Then he became a soldier. Soon he was a leader of the British forces in the Carnatic, and later in all of India.

#### THE EVENTS OF THE WAR:

In 1748 Madras was captured by the French, but it was returned to the British before real hostilities broke out. In 1751, Arcot was seized by the British under Robert Clive. Later he defended it against a native siege. This won the respect of a great many of the natives, and caused a loss of French prestige. In 1756, Calcutta was captured by Surajah Dowla, a native chief in the employ of the French. He imprisoned one hundred and forty-six British prisoners in a dungeon that was eighteen feet long and fourteen feet wide for a night. Only twenty-three of them came out alive. In 1757 Calcutta was recaptured by Robert Clive. In 1757 at Plassey Robert Clive defeated Surajah's forces which numbered fifty-five thousand with an army of three thousand men, of which only one thousand were British soldiers. The British victory is attributed to superior discipline and the treachery of Surajah Dowla's chief lieutenants. This victory won for the British the fertile Province of Bengal, and decided the fate of India. Surajah Dowla was deposed and



Bengal Province was placed under the control of the British East India Company.

In 1757 at Wandewash near Arcot, the French were defeated, and at Pondicherry in the same year the British forces were victorious. This practically ended the fighting in the Conquest of India.

#### THE RESULTS:

France's dream of a great French-Indian empire were shattered. By the Peace of Paris in 1763 France was given her former territory in India, but she could not fortify it. The foundations of the Anglo-Indian Empire were laid by Robert Clive, and Great Britain added a great colony to the British Empire.

---

#### FROM 1764 to 1856.

In 1765 Allahabad on the Ganges River west of Benares was captured by the British. In 1779 the Mahrattas of the Deccan started a series of wars against the British. The defeat of those who lived in the northern part of the Deccan, brought the most of their territory under British control.

In 1780 the Carnatic in south-eastern India, was invaded and destroyed by Hyder Ali. In 1803 at Assaye north-east of Bombay, Sir Arthur Wellesley won a decisive victory over the Mahrattas. In 1818 the Rajputs, an important race in northern India, acknowledged British supremacy. In 1826 Bharatpur in Rajputana near Agra, was captured by the British.

In 1842 an Anglo-Indian Army while evacuating Kabul in Afghanistan, was ambushed and destroyed in Khyber Pass by the Afghans. In 1843 the victory at Hyderabad near the mouth of the Indus River led



Bengal Province was placed under the control of the British East India Company.

In 1757 at Wandewash near Arcot, the French were defeated, and at Pondicherry in the same year the British forces were victorious. This practically ended the fighting in the conquest of India.

THE RESULTS:  
France's dream of a great French-Indian empire was shattered.

By the Peace of Paris in 1763 France was given her former territory in India, but she could not fortify it. The foundations of the Anglo-Indian Empire were laid by Robert Clive, and Great Britain added a great colony to the British Empire.

#### FROM 1764 to 1858.

In 1763 Alibabad on the Ganges River west of Benares was captured by the British. In 1773 the Marathas of the Deccan started a series of wars against the British. The defeat of those who lived in the northern part of the Deccan, brought the most of their territory under British control.

In 1780 the Carnatic in south-eastern India, was invaded and destroyed by Hyder Ali. In 1802 at Assaye north-east of Bombay, Sir Arthur Wellesley won a decisive victory over the Marathas. In 1818 the Rajputs, an important race in northern India, acknowledged British supremacy. In 1826 Bhamburda in Rajputana near Agra, was captured by the British.

In 1842 an Anglo-Indian Army while evacuating Kabul in Afghanistan, was ambushed and destroyed in Hyder Pass by the Afghans. In 1843 the victory at Hyderabad near the mouth of the Indus River led



to the subjugation and annexation of the Scinde. In 1845-6, the Sikhs were defeated in the Punjab. They ceded their territory to the British. In 1850 the first railroad was opened in India between Bombay and Tannah. By 1856 the British had made a number of successful attacks against the French who had incited the natives against them, and as a result Britain became supreme in India from Burma to the Sulaiman Mountains and from the Pamirs to Cape Comorin.

#### FROM 1857 to 1858:

#### THE INDIAN MUTINY 1857-1858:

##### THE CAUSES:

The Indians felt that British power was weakening because the British hadn't been able to win a decisive victory over the Russians in the Crimean War in 1854. They also felt that the British were trying to break down the caste system so that Christianity could be forced on them.

The number of Indians in the army was increased while the number of Europeans was decreased. The British issued a new type of cartridge, and propagandists spread the information that it was greased with the fat of swine and cows. This infuriated the native Sepoys.

##### THE EVENTS:

There were uprisings in the great Plain of India, particularly in the North-western Provinces. Lucknow was besieged. Cawnpore was besieged. The people there were offered safe passage if the garrison would surrender. As they were making their way to the nearby river men, women, and children were massacred. Later Delhi was besieged.

##### THE RESULTS:

A number of men, women, and children were massacred. The East



to the subjugation and annexation of the Sikhs. In 1845-6, the Sikhs were defeated in the Punjab. They ceded their territory to the British. In 1850 the first railway was opened in India between Bombay and Tannah. By 1856 the British had made a number of successful attacks against the Peshwas who had incited the natives against them, and as a result British became supreme in India from Burma to the Sulaiman Mountains and from the Panjra to Cape Comorin.

FROM 1857 TO 1858:

#### THE INDIAN MUTINY 1857-1858:

##### THE CAUSES:

The Indians felt that British power was weakening because the British hadn't been able to win a decisive victory over the Peshwas in the Orissa War in 1854. They also felt that the British were trying to break down the caste system so that Christianity could be forced on them. The number of Indians in the army was increased while the number of Europeans was decreased. The British issued a new type of cartridge. and propagandists spread the information that it was greased with the fat of swine and cows. This infuriated the native Sepoys.

##### THE EVENTS:

There were uprisings in the great plain of India, particularly in the North-western Provinces. Lucknow was besieged. Cawnpore was besieged. The people there were offered safe passage if the garrison would surrender. As they were making their way to the nearby river, men, women, and children were massacred. Later Delhi was besieged.

##### THE RESULTS:

A number of men, women, and children were massacred. The East



India Company ceased to govern the country. From 1600 to 1765 it had been concerned with commerce. After 1765 it entered the field of politics by assuming the financial administration of Bengal Province. In 1858 the British Government relieved the Company of its responsibility, and India was brought directly under the British Crown. The King of Delhi was arrested in 1857, and after the suppression of the mutiny, he was banished to Rangoon in Burma.

FROM 1859 to 1918:

In 1879 the murder of Sir George Cavagnari at Kabul in Afghanistan led to the start of the third Afghan war. In 1880 the army of Ayooob Khan was defeated at Mazar. This victory allowed General Roberts to relieve Kandahar in Afghanistan.

In 1887 a Proclamation at Delhi made Queen Victoria...Empress of India, and since then the reigning British sovereign has been designated as King Emperor of India.

In 1900 Indian troops acted as bearers in the Boer War in South Africa. After the war was over, a number of Indians moved into Natal where they worked on the sugar-plantations.

In 1904 the Treaty of Lhasa was signed. It permitted trade between Tibet and India. This treaty was sponsored by the British.

In 1911 the Proclamation of Delhi established the capital of India there. Since then Delhi has continued to be the Capital of the country.

Between 1914 and 1918 Indian soldiers helped the Allies in the First World War. They served in various fields of strife. In 1917 Indian soldiers helped General Maude in his campaign on the Euphrates River.



India Company ceased to govern the country. From 1800 to 1765 it had been concerned with commerce. After 1765 it entered the field of politics by assuming the financial administration of Bengal Province. In 1858 the British Government relieved the Company of its responsibility, and India was brought directly under the British Crown. The King of Delhi was arrested in 1857, and after the suppression of the mutiny, he was banished to Rangoon in Burma.

#### FROM 1859 to 1918:

In 1879 the murder of Sir George Cavagnar at Kabul in Afghanistan led to the start of the third Afghan war. In 1880 the army of Ayub Khan was defeated at Kaner. This victory allowed General Roberts to relieve Kandahar in Afghanistan. In 1887 a Proclamation at Delhi made Queen Victoria... Empress of India, and since then the reigning British sovereign has been designated as King Emperor of India. In 1900 Indian troops acted as helpers in the Boer War in South Africa. After the war was over, a number of Indians moved into Natal where they worked on the sugar-plantations. In 1904 the Treaty of Lhasa was signed. It permitted trade between Tibet and India. This treaty was sponsored by the British. In 1911 the Proclamation of Delhi established the capital of India there. Since then Delhi has continued to be the Capital of the country. Between 1914 and 1918 Indian soldiers helped the Allies in the First World War. They served in various fields of strife. In 1917 Indian soldiers helped General Maude in his campaign on the Euphrates River.



Between 1850 and 1918 the British sent seventy-two military expeditions against the Himalaya Frontier. These were necessary because of the unrest in that region.

FROM 1919 to the Present.

Mahatma Gandhi tried to organize a Nationalistic Party in India. Great Britain made numerous changes in the system of Government there, but did not feel that there was sufficient unity to warrant the establishment of Dominion Status until after the Second World War was completed. During the War part of India helped the Allies in their struggle to preserve the democratic way of life. In February of 1947 Louis Mountbatten became the last Governor of India. In July India was divided into India and Pakistan, and was given Dominion Status. Since then there has been considerable unrest, riots, and blood-shed in the country, and the caste system has been partly removed through the efforts of Gandhi.

THE GROWTH OF BRITISH INFLUENCE IN INDIA:

In summing up this topic it is necessary to refer to the brief topics that are listed under the geographical section as well as the longer explanations that are listed above. From 1600 to 1747 was the period during which Trading Posts were established. From 1748 to 1763 was the period during which the British conquered India, and India became a British Colony. From 1764 to 1856 was the period of British extension and conquest in India. From 1857 to 1858 was the period of the Indian Mutiny. From 1859 to 1918 was the period of extension of British influence in India and beyond its borders. From 1919 to the Present was the period of Governmental demands, Governmental changes and the granting of Dominion Status to India.



Between 1858 and 1918 the British sent seventy-two military expeditions against the Himalaya Frontier. These were necessary because of the unrest in that region.

#### FROM 1919 to the Present.

Mahatma Gandhi tried to organize a Nationalistic Party in India. Great Britain made numerous changes in the system of Government there, but did not feel that there was sufficient unity to warrant the establishment of Dominion Status until after the Second World War was completed. During the War part of India helped the Allies in their struggle to preserve the democratic way of life. In February of 1947 Louis Mountbatten became the last Governor of India. In July India was divided into India and Pakistan, and was given Dominion Status. Since then there has been considerable unrest, riots, and bloodshed in the country, and the caste system has been partly removed through the efforts of Gandhi.

#### THE GROWTH OF BRITISH INFLUENCE IN INDIA

In summing up this topic it is necessary to refer to the brief topics that are listed under the geographical section as well as the longer explanations that are listed above. From 1800 to 1747 was the period during which Trading Posts were established. From 1748 to 1763 was the period during which the British conquered India, and India became a British Colony. From 1764 to 1858 was the period of British extension and conquest in India. From 1859 to 1918 was the period of extension of British influence in India and beyond its borders. From 1919 to the Present was the period of Governmental demands, Governmental changes and the granting of Dominion Status to India.



## COSTUMES AND CUSTOMS:

Personal attire in India has been regulated to a large extent by the Hindus, and it has been dictated by the caste system. Hindu men and women of the highest caste wore robes of rich materials which were often heavily embroidered.

The costumes of Hindu men reflect the influence of western civilization. He wears a coat or jacket somewhat similar to that of a European above a draped skirtlike garment or baggy trousers which fit snugly at the ankle and calves of the legs. A skilfully wrapped turban is worn on the head.

The women adorned themselves with numerous rings, bracelets, and ear-rings which were fashioned of precious metals and jewels, and frequently a jewelled ornament was thrust through the lower centre of the nose. The Sari or outside garment worn by women is made of silk, linen, or cotton cloth. It is worn half-draped around the waist with the remainder passed up over the head and allowed to fall gracefully across the left shoulder.

The people in India's larger cities are at present tending to adopt western fashions of dress as well as social customs. However, there are quite a number who still cling to the native costumes.

The practice of cremation is wide-spread in India, the land of ritual and mystery. This ceremony is believed to insure the departed soul the pleasure of Paradise (Nirvana), and as a result the ceremony is one of rejoicing. After the funeral procession reaches the place of cremation and the body has been placed on the prepared pyre, the celebrant of Rites sprinkles water on it and throws a coin of small value upon it.



Personal attire in India has been regulated to a large extent by the Hindus, and it has been dictated by the caste system. Hindu men and women of the highest caste wore robes of rich materials which were often heavily embroidered.

The costumes of Hindu men reflect the influence of western civilization. He wears a coat or jacket somewhat similar to that of a European above a draped skirtlike garment or baggy trousers which fit snugly at the ankle and calves of the legs. A shawl is wrapped around his waist and tucked in at the front.

The women adorned themselves with numerous rings, bracelets, and earrings which were fashioned of precious metals and jewels, and frequently a jeweled ornament was thrust through the lower centre of the nose. The Sari or outside garment worn by women is made of silk, linen, or cotton cloth. It is worn half-draped around the waist with the remainder passed up over the head and allowed to fall gracefully across the left shoulder.

The people in India's larger cities are at present tending to adopt western fashions of dress as well as social customs. However, there are quite a number who still cling to the native costumes.

The practice of cremation is widespread in India, the land of ritual and mystery. This ceremony is believed to insure the departed soul the pleasure of Paradise (Nirvana), and as a result the ceremony is one of rejoicing. After the funeral procession reaches the place of cremation and the body has been placed on the prepared pyre, the celebrant of Hindu sprinkles water on it and throws a coin of small value upon it.



If the deceased has a son, he then takes a burning brand from the sacred fire, and looking towards the sun, he ignites the faggots of the pyre. When the fire has burned things to embers, milk and cocoanut water are thrown on them to quench the thirst of the departed soul.

Years ago many widows threw themselves into the flames so that they could accompany their husbands' souls to Nirvana. They did that because of emotionalism and because of the status of widows in India. After the death of a husband all authority was taken from his widow, and her life became only weary years of slavery.

#### INDIAN CITIES AND MOSQUES:

In this section only a few of the important Indian cities are to be considered because of their association with Indian History.

The city of Kashmir is located in the fertile and beautiful State of Kashmir. It is interlaced with numerous canals which give it a Venice-like appearance. In the past it was the famous resort of the old Mogul Emperors. To-day both Europeans and Indians seek the coolness of its climate during the hot weather. It has among its magnificent buildings four Mogul palaces and a gigantic Mosque in which sixty-thousand persons can worship at one time.

Delhi is situated inland on the Ganges River. In Old Delhi the Jumma Masjid, a great Mosque, is considered by the Mohammedans to be among the wonders of the world. New Delhi was built a short distance to the south of the Old city. It is the imperial capital of India.

Agra Fort is situated on the Ganges River south-east of Delhi. It was built by the great Mogul, Akbar. It was built of red sand-stone, and was ornamented with delicate lacelike traceries of white marble.



If the deceased has a son, he then takes a burning brand from the sacred fire, and looking towards the sun, he lights the flag of the pyre. When the fire has burned things to embers, milk and coconut water are thrown on them to quench the thirst of the departed soul. Years ago many widows threw themselves into the flames so that they could accompany their husbands' souls to Nirvana. They did that because of emotionalism and because of the status of widows in India. After the death of a husband all authority was taken from his widow, and her life became only weary years of slavery.

#### INDIAN CITIES AND MOSQUES:

In this section only a few of the important Indian cities are to be considered because of their association with Indian history. The city of Kashmir is located in the fertile and beautiful State of Kashmir. It is interlaced with numerous canals which give it a Venice-like appearance. In the past it was the famous resort of the old Mogul Emperors. To-day both Europeans and Indians seek the coolness of its climate during the hot weather. It has among its magnificent buildings four Mogul palaces and a gigantic Mosque in which sixty thousand persons can worship at one time.

Delhi is situated inland on the Ganges River. In Old Delhi the Jama Masjid, a great Mosque, is considered by the Mohammedans to be among the wonders of the world. New Delhi was built a short distance to the south of the Old city. It is the imperial capital of India.

Agra Fort is situated on the Ganges River south-east of Delhi. It was built by the great Mogul, Akbar. It was built of red sand-stone, and was ornamented with delicate lacelike traceries of white marble.



Budh Gaya was the centre where Buddha received the Great Enlightenment.

The great Mosques of India include the Mosque of Kashmir, the Jumma Masjid in Delhi, and the Taj Mahal , a tomb built in memory of a favourite wife, in Delhi by Shah Jahan the second last great Mogul.

#### INDIA TO-DAY:

The population reaches three-hundred and thirty-nine millions which is about one-fifth of the population of the world. There are seven main languages and at least two-hundred and fifty dialects in use in the country. There are really two main parts in India....British India and India under native Princes.

British India is that part which has been conquered outright, and until 1947 it was governed by British Officials. British India was made up of eleven Provinces. Each was ruled by a crown-appointed Governor who was under the authority of the Vice-roy who represented the King Emperor.

Native India included those parts which were submitted to British supervision. This included about two-fifths of the country, and it had about twenty-five per cent of the population. There were about six hundred Native Indian States. They ranged in size from Kashmir which has an area greater than that of England and Scotland together, to States which have little more than a few hundred acres.

The Indian army is maintained for defence only. It is composed of Sikhs, Gurkhas, and Pathans. During the First and Second World Wars Indian troops helped the Allies in various theatres of war.

Considerable progress has been and is being made in India.



Bobh Gave was the centre where Buddha received the Great

Enlightenment.

The Great Mosques of India include the Mosque of Kashmir,

the Jama Masjid in Delhi, and the Taj Mahal, a tomb built in memory

of a favourite wife, in Delhi by Shah Jahan the second last great Mogul.

## INDIA TO-DAY

The population reaches three-hundred and thirty-nine millions

which is about one-fifth of the population of the world. There are seven

main languages and at least two-hundred and fifty dialects in use in the

country. There are really two main parts in India.... British India and

India under native Princes.

British India is that part which has been conquered outright,

and until 1947 it was governed by British Officials. British India was

made up of eleven Provinces. Each was ruled by a crown-appointed Governor

who was under the authority of the Viceroy who represented the King

Emperor.

Native India included those parts which were submitted to

British supervision. This included about two-fifths of the country, and

it had about twenty-five per cent of the population. There were about six

hundred Native Indian States. They ranged in size from Kashmir which has

an area greater than that of England and Scotland together, to States

which have little more than a few hundred acres.

The Indian army is maintained for defence only. It is

composed of Sikhs, Gurkhas, and Pathans. During the First and Second

World Wars Indian troops helped the Allies in various theatres of war.

Considerable progress has been and is being made in India.



Plans have been made for educating the people along Western lines. The educated Indians use the English language as a common language. In 1877 Queen Victoria became Empress of India, and since then the sovereigns of England have used the title, King Emperor of India. Industries, railroads, highways, hospitals, and clinics have been established. Vast irrigation works have been established to carry water to rainless regions. That means increased production, and decreases the danger of famine. The latest irrigation schemes include the Lloy Barrage in Scinde which was opened by the Vice-roy in 1932. It provides water for five million acres much of which is desert. A dam has been built across the Indus, and a net-work of canals, branch-canals, and water-courses gives tillage to two and a quarter million peasants. There are seven great main canals. Four of them are wider than the Suez Canal, and some of them are two-hundred miles long.

#### THE ADMINISTRATION AND GOVERNMENT OF INDIA:

The King of Great Britain is the King-Emperor of India. His representative there is called the Vice-roy. The title, Emperor, inspires loyalty in a land which has always been one of personal government. The Indians are fond of pageantry and the personal touch. The Indian Princes suffer no loss of dignity by remaining under the control of an Emperor, because it is in line with the best Indian Traditions.

The Vice-roy or Governor-General is at the head of the government. He is appointed by the crown for a period of five years. He represents the Emperor, and has power to enact measures for the safety and the peace of the country. He does this with the consent of the Emperor.

The Council of State is composed of sixty members. Thirty



Plans have been made for educating the people along Western lines. The educated Indians use the English language as a common language. In 1877 Queen Victoria became Empress of India, and since then the sovereigns of England have used the title, King Emperor of India. Industries, railways, roads, highways, hospitals, and clinics have been established. Vast irrigation works have been established to carry water to various regions. That means increased production, and decreases the danger of famine. The latest irrigation schemes include the Jiv Barrage in Sindh which was opened by the Viceroy in 1932. It provides water for five million acres much of which is desert. A dam has been built across the Indus, and a network of canals, branch-canal, and water-courses gives tillage to two and a quarter million peasants. There are seven great main canals. Four of them are wider than the Suez Canal, and some of them are two-hundred miles long.

#### THE ADMINISTRATION AND GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

The King of Great Britain is the King-Emperor of India. His representative there is called the Viceroy. The title, Emperor, implies loyalty to a land which has always been one of personal government. The Indians are fond of paganism and the personal touch. The Indian Princes suffer no loss of dignity by remaining under the control of an Emperor, because it is in line with the best Indian traditions. The Viceroy or Governor-General is at the head of the government. He is appointed by the crown for a period of five years. He represents the Emperor, and has power to enact measures for the safety and the peace of the country. He does this with the consent of the Emperor. The Council of State is composed of sixty members. Thirty



of them are elected, and thirty of them are appointed. The Legislative Assembly is composed of one-hundred and forty-five members. One-hundred and four of these are elected. The Legislature makes laws for the people of British India, but not for the subjects of the Native Princes. Since 1919 much of the work of governing has been transferred to the State of Provincial Governments. For purposes of government the country has been divided into fifteen divisions. Each has a governor or a chief-commissioner, and each governor is assisted by an Executive and a Legislative Council. The Provincial Governments control purely Provincial matters such as Local Self-government, Public Health, and Sanitation. Ballots are now used in India, but less than eight million of the two-hundred and forty-eight million in British India enjoy the franchise. In some of the Provinces women are eligible for election. Local self-government has been encouraged in all of the Provinces.

The native States are independent. The only official link between the Indian Princes and the Central Government is a single political officer who advises the Princes. The Princes are not allowed to make war or Peace. They are not allowed to maintain armies greater than a fixed size, and they cannot employ Europeans in their Service unless they have special sanction.

#### POLITICAL PROBLEMS ASSOCIATED WITH INDIA:

These <sup>they</sup> were five in number, and play an important part in the lives of the people. They are Religious differences; the limit of political horizons; the growth of Nationalism; the demand for Self-government; and the division of the country on political issues.

There are a number of factors associated with the above



of them are elected, and thirty of them are appointed. The Legislative Assembly is composed of one hundred and forty-five members. One hundred and four of these are elected. The Legislature makes laws for the people of British India, but not for the subjects of the Native Princes. Since 1919 much of the work of governing has been transferred to the State of Provincial Governments. For purposes of government the country has been divided into fifteen divisions. Each has a governor or a chief-commissioner, and each governor is assisted by an Executive and a Legislative Council.

The Provincial Governments control purely provincial matters such as Local Self-government, Public Health, and Sanitation. Railways are now used in India, but less than eight million of the two hundred and forty-eight million in British India enjoy the franchise. In some of the provinces women are eligible for election. Local self-government has been encouraged in all of the provinces.

The native states are independent. The only official link between the Indian Princes and the Central Government is a single political officer who advises the Princes. The Princes are not allowed to make war or peace. They are not allowed to maintain armies greater than a fixed size, and they cannot employ Europeans in their service unless they have special sanction.

#### POLITICAL PROBLEMS ASSOCIATED WITH INDIA:

There are a number of factors associated with the above the lives of the people. They are religious differences; the kind of political horizons; the growth of Nationalism; the demand for Self-government; and the division of the country on political issues.



problems, and they are to be dealt with under the separate headings.

#### a. RELIGIOUS DIFFERENCES:

Religion is a great dividing factor in India. The Hindus observe caste distinction. The castes must be kept separate, and no social exchange of any kind is permitted among them. This makes it difficult for the people to take part in any democratic form of government. The fatalism and the unsanitary rituals of the Hindus form an almost insurmountable barrier to any type of government interested in political progress.

The Buddhists broke away from the Hindu religion, and repudiated the caste system. This caused a hatred which has never been removed. The Sikhs are primarily a religious group which broke away from Hinduism, and they proclaim the equality of men.

The Mohammedans persecuted the Sikhs in the Punjab about two-hundred years ago. The Moslems who are Mohammedans number 75,000,000 and are always on the verge of religious war. From the thirteenth to the eighteenth century they dominated India, and they still dream of transforming the present into the past. Such hatred exists between the Hindus and the Moslems that hundreds are killed every year as a result of acts which antagonize the other. This means that complete self-government is practically bound to fail.

#### LIMITED POLITICAL HORIZONS:

Three-quarters of the people are engaged in agriculture. They live in millions of villages which are largely self-contained, and the only form of co-operation of any kind is in the family. Very few of the



problems, and therefore to be dealt with under the separate headings.

#### RELIGIOUS DIFFERENCES:

Religion is a great dividing factor in India. The Hindus observe caste distinction. The castes must be kept separate, and no social exchange of any kind is permitted among them. This makes it difficult for the people to take part in any democratic form of government. The fatalism and the unmanly rituals of the Hindus form an almost insurmountable barrier to any type of government interested in political progress. The Buddhists broke away from the Hindu religion, and repudiated the caste system. This caused a hatred which has never been removed. The Sikhs are primarily a religious group which broke away from Hinduism, and they proclaim the equality of man.

The Mohammedans persecuted the Sikhs in the Punjab about two hundred years ago. The Muslims who are Mohammedans number 75,000,000 are always on the verge of religious war. From the thirteenth to the eighteenth century they dominated India, and they still dream of transforming the present into the past. Such hatred exists between the Hindus and the Muslims that hundreds are killed every year as a result of acts which antagonize the other. This means that complete self-government is practically bound to fail.

#### LIMITED POLITICAL MOVEMENTS:

Three-quarters of the people are engaged in agriculture. They live in millions of villages which are largely self-contained, and the only form of co-operation of any kind is in the family. Very few of the



people can read or write. Some authorities place the percentage of literacy at four per cent. Literacy is a basic necessity for the development of democratic institutions. This means that the majority of the people of India are uneducated; the country lacks economic unity; and the political horizons of the people do not extend beyond their village borders.

#### THE GROWTH OF NATIONALISM:

In 1885 the Indian National Congress was formed. It became the spear-head of Indian National feeling. Between 1898 and 1905 the Nationalist movement became extreme and radical. The Nationalist party started to use various methods to persuade the British Government to grant self-government to India. British goods were boycotted, and political murders were committed.

After the First Great War Nationalism caused unrest in India, but Great Britain promised that government reforms would be introduced in return for the loyalty of the Indians. The Nationalists felt that the promised reforms were too slow being introduced, so they caused more unrest. The leader of the Nationalist movement was Mohandas Karanjehand Gandhi, a Hindu. He advocated the return to simplicity, and objected to the introduction of Western Industrialization into India. He favoured passive resistance. In 1919 a number of Nationalistic Demands were granted, but the British Government did not grant Dominion Status to India then. The government of India was established on somewhat the same idea as in Canada. The Federal idea was introduced; the government was made more representative and more democratic; and double governments were introduced. This was a step toward complete responsible government. Gandhi refused to co-operate with the British, and tried to persuade



people can read or write. Some authorities place the percentage of literacy at four per cent. Literacy is a basic necessity for the development of democratic institutions. This means that the majority of the people of India are uneducated; the country lacks economic unity; and the political horizons of the people do not extend beyond their village borders.

#### THE GROWTH OF NATIONALISM:

In 1885 the Indian National Congress was formed. It became the spear-head of Indian National feeling. Between 1895 and 1905 the Nationalist movement became extreme and radical. The Nationalist party started to use various methods to persuade the British Government to grant self-government to India. British goods were boycotted, and political murders were committed.

After the First Great War Nationalism caused unrest in India. But Great Britain promised that government reforms would be introduced in return for the loyalty of the Indians. The Nationalists felt that the promised reforms were too slow being introduced, so they caused more unrest. The leader of the Nationalist movement was Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi, a Hindu. He advocated the return to simplicity, and objected to the introduction of Western industrialization into India. He favoured passive resistance. In 1919 a number of Nationalistic Demands were granted, but the British Government did not grant Dominion Status to India then. The government of India was established on somewhat the same lines as in Canada. The Federal idea was introduced; the government was made more representative and more democratic; and double governments were introduced. This was a step toward complete responsible government. Gandhi refused to co-operate with the British, and tried to persuade



the Mohammedans to join with the Hindus. The Moplahs revolted and butchered every Hindu they could find.

Gandhi then devoted himself to encouraging religious unity and the emancipation of the depressed masses. To-day Nationalism is embraced by practically one-half of the people of India, chiefly Hindus. Gandhi felt that the Second World Crisis in Europe presented the Indians with an opportunity to force Britain to grant the demands of the Nationalists. This caused considerable unrest in India at that time.

#### THE DEMAND FOR RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT:

Gandhi attended the first round-table conference. He announced that the price of his support was that there was to be a fifty per cent cut in the army estimates; complete prohibition in India; the abolition of licenses for fire-arms; and a British promise that Responsible Government would be established immediately. The Viceroy refused to consider Gandhi's demands. Gandhi then declared that India should become completely independent, and called an immediate campaign of civil disobedience. Gandhi did not realize his desire, so he continued his work. He used the Second European conflict to force the British Government to grant India her independence. The Nationalists adopted a resolution which demanded that Britain draw up a constitution for the new, free nation of India. At that time the British did not feel that India was ready for Responsible Government, nor for complete independence. They felt that an independent India could only be realized when the opposing races and creeds could agree among themselves.

#### THE DIVISION OF THE COUNTRY ON POLITICAL ISSUES:



the Mohammedans to join with the Hindus. The Mohajirs revolted and  
 gathered every Hindu they could find.  
 Gandhi then devoted himself to encouraging religious unity and  
 the emancipation of the depressed masses. To-day Nationalism is embodied  
 by practically one-half of the people of India, chiefly Hindus. Gandhi  
 felt that the Second World Crisis in Europe presented the Indians with  
 an opportunity to force Britain to grant the demands of the Nationalists.  
 This caused considerable unrest in India at that time.

# THE DEMAND FOR RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT

Gandhi attended the first round-table conference. He announced  
 that the price of his support was that there was to be a fifty per cent  
 cut in the army estimates; complete prohibition in India; the abolition  
 of licenses for fire-arms; and a British promise that Responsible Govern-  
 ment would be established immediately. The Viceroy refused to consider  
 Gandhi's demands. Gandhi then declared that India should become completely  
 independent, and called an immediate campaign of civil disobedience.  
 Gandhi did not realize his desire, so he continued his work. He used the  
 Second European conflict to force the British Government to grant India  
 independence. The Nationalists adopted a resolution which demanded  
 that Britain draw up a constitution for the new, free nation of India.  
 At that time the British did not feel that India was ready for Responsible  
 Government, nor for complete independence. They felt that an independent  
 India could only be realized when the opposing races and creeds could  
 agree among themselves.

# THE DIVISION OF THE GOVERNMENT OF POLITICAL ISSUES



The political controversy between the Hindus Nationalists and the British goes back to the First Great War, and has caused a division of the country politically. After that war Britain promised a gradual development of Responsible Government as a result of Indian loyalty during the time that she needed help. Some changes were made in the method of government soon after the war ceased, but the Nationalists wanted complete responsibility.

In 1934 a federation plan was tried. It was to unite all of India in a parliamentary system, but the Hindu Congress Party had the majority of votes, so expected to govern the country according to their ideas. The Mohammedan League and the Native Princes refused to enter the Federation, so the plan was not a success. Since then the radical Nationalists under Gandhi have tried to force Britain to compel the warlike Sikhs, the Mohammedans, and the Native Princes to agree to being ruled by the peaceful Hindus. If Britain had agreed to this, Gandhi's next step would have been to abolish British rule and declare India independent.

The Hindu Nationalists are not all united in their demands. The Moderate Nationalists favour the British while the Extreme or Radical Element wants India to become independent. The warlike tribes oppose the Hindu Nationalists, and look to Britain for support against them. The Native Princes are opposed because Gandhi wants to include their lands in a unified "Indian India." This would deprive them of their thrones, and such would be contrary to the original treaties between them and the British.

Those who are opposed to Gandhi's Nationalists are...The warlike Moslems...77,000,000; the pugnacious Sikhs...4,000,000; the Christians...6,000,000; subjects of the Native <sup>Pr</sup>inces...80,000,000; and the depressed



The political controversy between the Hindu Nationalists

and the British goes back to the First Great War, and has caused a division

of the country politically. After that war Britain promised a gradual development of Responsible Government as a result of Indian loyalty during

the time that she needed help. Some changes were made in the method of Government soon after the war ceased, but the Nationalists wanted complete

responsibility.

In 1934 a federation plan was tried. It was to unite all of

India in a parliamentary system, but the Hindu Congress Party had the

majority of votes, so expected to govern the country according to their

ideas. The Mohammedan League and the Native Princes refused to enter the

federation, so the plan was not a success. Since then the radical Nation-

alists under Gandhi have tried to force Britain to compel the warlike

princes, the Mohammedans, and the Native Princes to agree to being ruled by

the present Hindu. If Britain had agreed to this, Gandhi's next step

would have been to abolish British rule and declare India independent.

The Hindu Nationalists are not all united in their demands.

The Moderate Nationalists favour the British while the Extreme or Radical

Element wants India to become independent. The warlike tribes oppose the

Hindu Nationalists, and look to Britain for support against them. The

Native Princes are opposed because Gandhi wants to include their lands

in a united "Indian India." This would deprive them of their thrones,

and such would be contrary to the original treaties between them and the

British.

Those who are opposed to Gandhi's Nationalists are...

Warlike Moslems... 7,000,000; the pagans... 4,000,000; the Christians...

6,000,000; subjects of the Native Princes... 80,000,000; and the depressed



Hindu Castes...50,000,000.

---

#### SOCIAL PROBLEMS:

These are associated with Literacy, Religious differences, the Caste System, and the lack of Racial Unity. These play an important part in the lives of the people, and are to be considered under the headings that are listed above.

#### LITERACY:

Only about ten per cent of the male population is literate...can read and write. Only about one per cent of the female population is literate. The average Indian peasant, though illiterate, is not without knowledge. He has been carefully trained in his religion, in stories of his fore-fathers, and in growing crops. He is moulded on a traditional system which, even though it has its defects, has some good points. The lack of education retards the unity that is necessary for social equality.

#### RELIGIOUS DIFFERENCES:

Religion plays a conspicuous part in the social life of the people of India. The religions of India have continued side by side without intermingling. This has meant that the races have remained unblended and unmixed. The result is that it is difficult for the various religious groups to live and work together harmoniously.

#### THE CASTE SYSTEM:

This affects the Hindus who represent at least 240,000,000 of India's people. Each caste is shut off from the other by insurmountable barriers. No one has been able to go from his own caste to a higher one,



Hindu Castes... 20,000,000.

### SOCIAL PROBLEMS:

These are associated with literacy. Religious differences, the Caste System, and the lack of Racial Unity. These play an important part in the lives of the people, and are to be considered under the headings that are listed above.

### LITERACY

Only about ten per cent of the male population is literate... can read and write. Only about one per cent of the female population is literate. The average Indian peasant, though illiterate, is not without knowledge. He has been carefully trained in his religion, in stories of his forefathers, and in growing crops. He is moulded on a traditional system which, even though it has its defects, has some good points. The lack of education retards the unity that is necessary for social equality.

### RELIGIOUS DIFFERENCES:

Religion plays a conspicuous part in the social life of the people of India. The religions of India have continued side by side without intermingling. This has meant that the races have remained unblended and unmixed. The result is that it is difficult for the various religious groups to live and work together harmoniously.

### THE CASTE SYSTEM:

This affects the Hindus who represent at least 240,000,000 of India's people. Each caste is shut off from the other by insurmountable barriers. No one has been able to go from his own caste to a higher one.



June 21-1948.

Louis Mountbatten - British Governor-General of India - handed the post over to an Indian - and India really assumed responsible government.



June 21 - 1948

John Mountbatten - British Governor  
General of India - handed the post  
over to an Indian - and Indian  
nearly autonomous government



and no social mixing is permitted. Since 1930 the caste system has been gradually breaking down. This has been and is being accomplished by the perful leadership of Gandhi who is mainly responsible for the Nationalistic Government which influences a great part of Modern India. The caste system has retarded and is retarding social progress in India. It is one of the outstanding factors in the prevention of social unity.

#### THE LACK OF RACIAL UNITY:

The various races refuse to live harmoniously, and as a result racial unity is impossible. Racial disunity retards the development of a people who unite and work together for the betterment of all classes concerned. There are between thirty and forty distinct languages and a great many dialects in the country so that each language-group remains by itself. As a result India hasn't, and perhaps never will have social unity.

---

#### NOTE:-

In February of 1947 Louis Mountbaten became the last Viceroy of India. In July India was to be divided into India and Pakistan, and the British granted them Independent Dominion status. Since then there has been riots, disagreements, and blood-shed in the country. On January 1, 1948 India and Pakistan appealed to the United Nations to avert war as conditions in the country indicated that war was a possibility.



and no social mixing is permitted. Since 1930 the caste system has been gradually breaking down. This has been and is being accomplished by the partial leadership of Gandhi who is mainly responsible for the Nationalistic Government which influences a great part of Modern India. The caste system has retarded and is retarding social progress in India. It is one of the outstanding factors in the prevention of social unity.

#### THE LACK OF RACIAL UNITY

The various races refuse to live harmoniously, and as a result racial unity is impossible. Racial identity retards the development of a people who unite and work together for the betterment of all classes concerned. There are between thirty and forty distinct languages and a great many dialects in the country so that each language-group remains by itself. As a result India hasn't, and perhaps never will have social unity.

In February of 1947 Louis Mountbatten became the last Viceroy of India. In July India was to be divided into India and Pakistan, and the British granted them Independent Dominion status. Since then there has been riots, disagreements, and bloodshed in the country. On January 1, 1948 India and Pakistan appealed to the United Nations to avert war as conditions in the country indicated that war was a possibility.



### CEYLON:

The Island of Ceylon lies to the south-east of the peninsulas of India. It is separated from the mainland by Palk Strait and the Gulf of Manaar. It is about half the size of England, but it has a population of over 5,000,000 people. About 8,000 of them are Europeans, and the rest is made up of numerous native tribes.

The surface of the country presents a flat lowland region in the north, but the centre and the south are mountainous. The south-western section of the island is the most fertile. It receives an abundance of rain from the Monsoons which blow over that region. Immense tea-plantations are situated in that section.

About one-fifth of the surface is under cultivation. Nearly half a million acres are devoted to growing rubber trees, but the important products of the island include tea, rubber, cocoa, tobacco, copra, and spices, precious and semi-precious stones...the ruby, sapphire, amethyst, moonstone, and the garnet. Graphite, iron, and anthracite coal are mined.

### FACTS ASSOCIATED WITH CEYLON:

In 307 B.C. Prince Mahinda, a son of Asoka, introduced Buddhism into Ceylon. In 1530 A.D. the Portuguese captured Jaffna. Later it was seized by the Dutch. In 1795 the Dutch surrendered the Island to the British, and in 1802 it became a British possession by the Treaty of Amiens. In 1815 following a brief war, the British deposed the tyrannical king of Kandy, and assumed complete sovereignty over the Island.

The aborigines of Ceylon were called "Veddahs." They dwell in



## CEYLON:

The island of Ceylon lies to the south-east of the peninsula of India. It is separated from the mainland by Palk Strait and the Gulf of Mannar. It is about half the size of England, but it has a population of over 5,000,000 people. About 8,000 of them are Europeans, and the rest is made up of numerous native tribes.

The surface of the country presents a flat lowland region in the north, but the centre and the south are mountainous. The south-western section of the island is the most fertile. It receives an abundance of rain from the Monsoon which blow over that region. Numerous tea-plantations are situated in that section.

About one-fifth of the surface is under cultivation. Nearly half a million acres are devoted to growing rubber trees, but the important products of the island include tea, rubber, coconuts, tobacco, copra, and spices, precious and semi-precious stones...the ruby, sapphire, emerald, moonstone, and the garnet. Graphite, iron, and anthracite coal are mined.

## FACTS ASSOCIATED WITH CEYLON:

In 307 B.C. Prince Mahinda, a son of Ashoka, introduced Buddhism into Ceylon. In 1595 A.D. the Portuguese captured Jaffna. Later it was seized by the Dutch. In 1795 the Dutch surrendered the island to the British, and in 1802 it became a British possession by the Treaty of Amiens. In 1815 following a brief war, the British deposed the tyrannical king of Kandy, and assumed complete sovereignty over the island. The aborigines of Ceylon were called "Vedda". They dwell in



rock-shelters, and live wild in the woods of the interior. The Perahera is the procession of the sacred tooth of Buddah which is the most sacred relic of the Buddhists of Ceylon.

Ceylon was a Crown Colony of Great Britain until 1947. Then the British Government granted it permission to become an independent self-governing Dominion.

During the Second World War Ceylon provided the Allies with a number of Air-fields from which allied fliers flew over the waters of the region to safe-guard British shipping and manoeuvres of the British Fleet in the Indian Ocean.



rock-shelters, and live wild in the woods of the interior. The Perahera  
is the procession of the sacred tooth of Buddha which is the most sacred  
relic of the Buddhists of Ceylon.

Ceylon was a Crown Colony of Great Britain until 1947. Then the

British Government granted it permission to become an independent

self-governing Dominion.

During the Second World War Ceylon provided the Allies with a

number of Air-fields from which allied fighters flew over the waters of

the region to anti-guard British shipping and manoeuvres of the British

fleet in the Indian Ocean.











AUSTRALIA.







## CONTENTS.

### AUSTRALIA.

#### Australia (Geography)

- General.....
- The Discoverers.
- The Establishment of Settlements.
- The Penetration of the Interior.
- Industries and Products.
- Cities.
- Transportation.

#### Australia (History)

- The Discoverers.
- The Native People.
- The Establishment and Growth of Settlements.
  - The Early Settlers.
  - The Free Settlers.
  - After 1821.
- The Exploration and Penetration of the Interior.
- The Discovery of Gold and Associated Developments.
- The Bushrangers.
- Progress and Development of Australia between 1824 and 1927.
- The Administration of Affairs.
- The Political and Social Problems.
- The Keeping of Australia White.
- The Need of Increased Population.
- The Question of Transportation.
- The Effects of the Depressions.
- The Second World War...1939-1945.
- Australia to-day.



CONTENTS

AUSTRALIA

Australia (Geography)

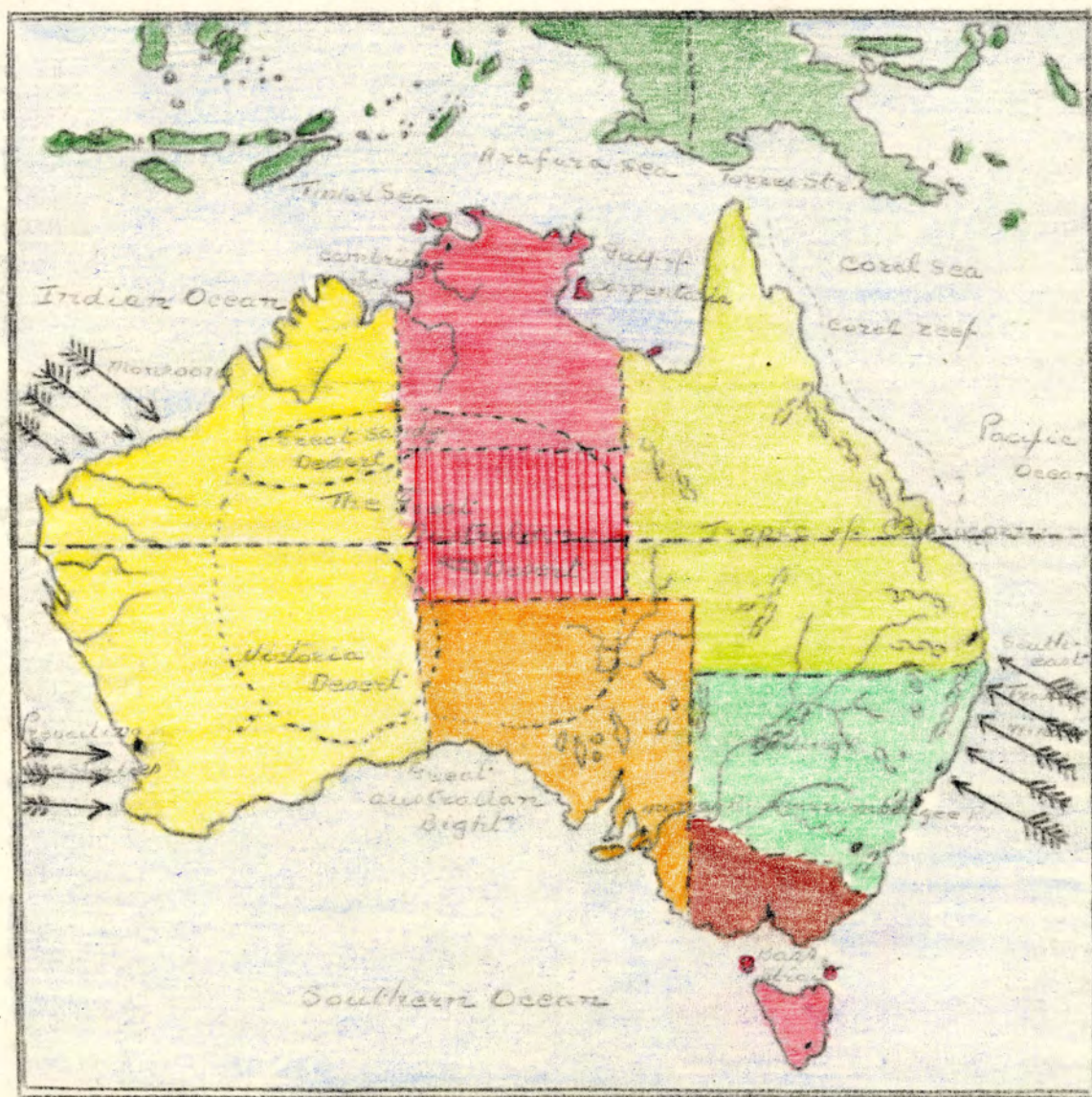
General.....  
The Discoverers.  
The Establishment of Settlements.  
The Penetration of the Interior.  
Industries and Products.  
Cities.  
Transportation.

Australia (History)

The Discoverers.  
The Native People.  
The Establishment and Growth of Settlements.  
The Early Settlers.  
The Free Settlers.  
After 1821.  
The Exploration and Penetration of the Interior.  
The Discovery of Gold and Associated Developments.  
The Bushrangers.  
Progress and Development of Australia between 1824 and 1927.  
The Administration of Affairs.  
The Political and Social Problems.  
The Keeping of Australia White.  
The Need of Increased Population.  
The Question of Transportation.  
The Effects of the Depressions.  
The Second World War...1939-1945.  
Australia to-day.



Australia (General)









## AUSTRALIA...GENERAL. 1606 to The Present.

The word "Australia" means "The Southern Land", so we may conclude that this continent lies entirely south of the Equator. It is divided by the Tropic of Capricorn, so part of it lies in the South Torrid Zone, and part of it lies in the South Temperate Zone. The Latitude extends from eleven degrees south to forty-five degrees south, and the Longitude extends from one-hundred and thirteen degrees east to one-hundred and fifty-four degrees east.

Australia is the smallest continent, but it is the largest Island. It is about three-quarters the size of Canada. The east-west distance is about two thousand four hundred miles, while the north-south distance is about two thousand miles.

The boundaries and coast waters include the following.....  
On the North.....Indian Ocean, Timor Sea, Cambridge Gulf, Arafura Sea, Gulf of Carpentaria, and Torres Strait. On the East....Coral Sea, and Pacific Ocean...On the West....Indian Ocean...On the South....Great Australian Bight, Spencer Gulf, St. Vincent Gulf, Encounter Bay, Bass Strait, and Southern Ocean.

The surface of Australia is like a hollow plate. There are mountains and coastal plains near the coast. The chief mountains are the Dividing Range which is near the eastern coast. The interior is chiefly desert. The chief deserts are the Great Australian Desert, the Great Sandy Desert, and the Great Victoria Desert.

The chief river of Australia is the Murray with its tributaries.. the Darling and the Murrumbidgee. There are a number of other rivers, but they are short. The chief lakes are...Lake Eyre, Lake Gairdner, and Lake Torrens.



AUSTRALIA... GENERAL. 1806 to the Present.

The word "Australia" means "The Southern Land", so we may

conclude that this continent lies entirely south of the Equator. It is

divided by the Tropic of Capricorn, so part of it lies in the South

Tropic Zone, and part of it lies in the South Temperate Zone. The latitude

extends from eleven degrees south to forty-five degrees south, and the

longitude extends from one hundred and thirteen degrees east to one

hundred and fifty-four degrees east.

Australia is the smallest continent, but it is the largest

island. It is about three-quarters the size of Canada. The east-west

distance is about two thousand four hundred miles, while the north-south

distance is about two thousand miles.

The boundaries and coast waters include the following.....

On the North..... Indian Ocean, Timor Sea, Cambridge Gulf, Arafura Sea,

Gulf of Carpentaria, and Torres Strait. On the East..... Coral Sea, and

Pacific Ocean. On the West..... Indian Ocean. On the South..... Great

Australian Bight, Spencer Gulf, St. Vincent Gulf, Encounter Bay, Bass

Strait, and Southern Ocean.

The surface of Australia is like a hollow plate. There are

mountains and coastal plains near the coast. The chief mountains are

the Dividing Range which is near the eastern coast. The interior is

chiefly desert. The chief deserts are the Great Australian Desert, the

Great Sandy Desert, and the Great Victoria Desert.

The chief river of Australia is the Murray with its tributaries..

the Darling and the Murrumbidgee. There are a number of other rivers, but

they are short. The chief lakes are... Lake Eyre, Lake Gairdner, and Lake

Torrens.



The Lakes of Australia are below sea-level, and there is no out-let from any one of them. Therefore, they are salt lakes. The rivers drain their water into them during the wet season. Then there is a dry season, and considerable of the water is evaporated and the water that is left is very salty.

The coastal regions receive an abundance of rain. The interior of the country is generally dry. The prevailing winds are the South-east Trades, the Monsoons, and the Prevailing Westerlies. The heaviest rainfall is to the east of the mountains, but the winds carry moisture to the majority of the coast-line. Owing to the situation of Australia the climate is tropical and sub-tropical. There are four seasons. Spring occurs during the months of September, October, and November; Summer... during December, January, and February; Autumn...during March, April, and May; and Winter during June, July, and August.

The curious feature of the east coast is The Great Barrier Reef. It is a coral reef that parallels the coast for twelve-hundred miles. This reef has been built by the bodies of a marine animal, the coral polyp, which attaches itself to the skeletons of those which have died. After death the skeletons are calcified.

---

DISCOVERERS: SETTLEMENTS: AND PENETRATION OF THE INTERIOR:

In this section the statements associated with the above are short, but under the history they are considered at greater length.

THE DISCOVERERS:

1606.....Louis de Torres.....Torres Strait.  
1606.....Pieter Carpenter.....Gulf of Carpentaria.  
1616.....Dirk Hartog.....Hartog Island off the west coast.



The lakes of Australia are below sea-level, and there is no out-let from any one of them. Therefore, they are salt lakes. The rivers drain their water into them during the wet season. Then there is a dry season, and considerable of the water is evaporated and the water that is left is very salty.

The coastal regions receive an abundance of rain. The interior of the country is generally dry. The prevailing winds are the South-east Trades, the Monsoons, and the Prevailing Westerlies. The heaviest rainfall is to the east of the mountains, but the winds carry moisture to the majority of the coast-line. Owing to the situation of Australia the climate is tropical and sub-tropical. There are four seasons. Spring occurs during the months of September, October, and November; Summer... during December, January, and February; Autumn... during March, April, and May; and Winter during June, July, and August.

The curious feature of the east coast is the Great Barrier Reef. It is a coral reef that parallels the coast for twelve-hundred miles. This reef has been built by the bodies of a marine animal, the coral polyp, which attaches itself to the skeletons of those which have died. After death the skeletons are calcified.

#### DISCOVERIES, SETTLEMENTS, AND PENETRATION OF THE INTERIOR:

In this section the statements associated with the above are short, but under the history they are considered at greater length.

#### THE DISCOVERIES:

1805.....Louis de Torres.....Torres Strait.  
1805.....Peter Carpenter.....Gulf of Carpentaria.  
1816.....Dink Hartege.....Hartege Island off the west coast.



Discoveries, Settlements and Explorations.





Map of Australia and Tasmania





1642..... Abel Tasman.....New Holland (Australia), Van  
Diemen's Land (Tasmania).  
1699.....William Dampier....Dampierland.  
1768-1770...Captain James Cook..Botany Bay on East Coast.  
1788.....Captain A. Philips..Sydney.  
1802-3.....Matthew Flinders....The coast of Australia.

THE ESTABLISHMENT OF SETTLEMENTS:

EARLY SETTLEMENTS:

1788.....Sydney Settlements....In New South Wales.  
1838.....Van Dieman's Land Settlement ..In Tasmania.

SETTLEMENTS ESTABLISHED BY FREE SETTLERS:

1793.....N.S.Wales Settlements.....Around Sydney.  
1807.....Hobart Settlements.....In Tasmania.  
1813.....Bathurst Settlement.....West of Blue Mountains N.S.W.

SETTLEMENTS ESTABLISHED AFTER 1821:

1824.....Brisbane Settlements.....On Brisbane River in Queensland.  
1827.....Western Australian S.....In Western Australia.  
1830.....Victoria Settlements.....In Victoria.  
1830.....South Australian Settlements..In South Australia.  
1830.....Queensland Settlements....In Queensland.  
1830.....Western Australian S.....In Western Australia.  
1830.....Tasmanian Settlements.....In Tasmania.  
1835.....Melbourne Settlements.....In Victoria.  
1836.....Adelaide Settlements.....In South Australia.  
1850-1855....New South Wales, South Australia, Victoria, and  
Tasmania became separate and independent colonies.

PENETRATION OF THE INTERIOR:

1813.....	Gregory Blaxland.....	From Sydney through the Blue Mountains to the Bathurst Plain.
1823.....	John Oxley.....	The Brisbane River in Queensland.
1828.....	Charles Sturt.....	The Murray River System.
1831-4...	Sir T. Mitchell.....	Eastern Australia.
1840.....	John Eyre.....	From Sydney to St. Vincent Gulf.
1846-58..	A. C. Gregory.....	Northern and Western Australia.
1854.....	Austin.....	In Western Australia.
1860-1...	Burke, King, Wills.....	From Melbourne to the Gulf of Carpentaria.
1862.....	John Stewart.....	Stuart..... From Adelaide to Port Darwin.
1873.....	Warburton.....	From the West coast across S. W. Australia.
1874.....	Forrest.....	Through central Western Australia and from Perth south in W.A.
1875.....	Giles.....	Part of South Australia.
1923-28..	Terry.....	Across Northern Australia, and down to Melbourne...5500 miles.



1602-3.....Matthew Flinders.....The coast of Australia.  
 1788.....Captain A. Phillip.....Sydney.  
 1790-1791.....Captain James Cook.....Botany Bay on East Coast.  
 1800.....William Dampier.....Dampierland.  
 1802.....Abel Tasman.....New Holland (Australia), Van  
 Diemen's Land (Tasmania).

# THE ESTABLISHMENT OF SETTLEMENTS:

## EARLY SETTLEMENTS:

1836.....Van Diemen's Land Settlement.....In Tasmania.  
 1788.....Sydney Settlement.....In New South Wales.

## SETTLEMENTS ESTABLISHED BY FREE SETTLERS:

1812.....Batavia Settlement.....West of Blue Mountains N.S.W.  
 1807.....Hobart Settlement.....In Tasmania.  
 1793.....N.S. Wales Settlement.....Around Sydney.

## SETTLEMENTS ESTABLISHED AFTER 1801:

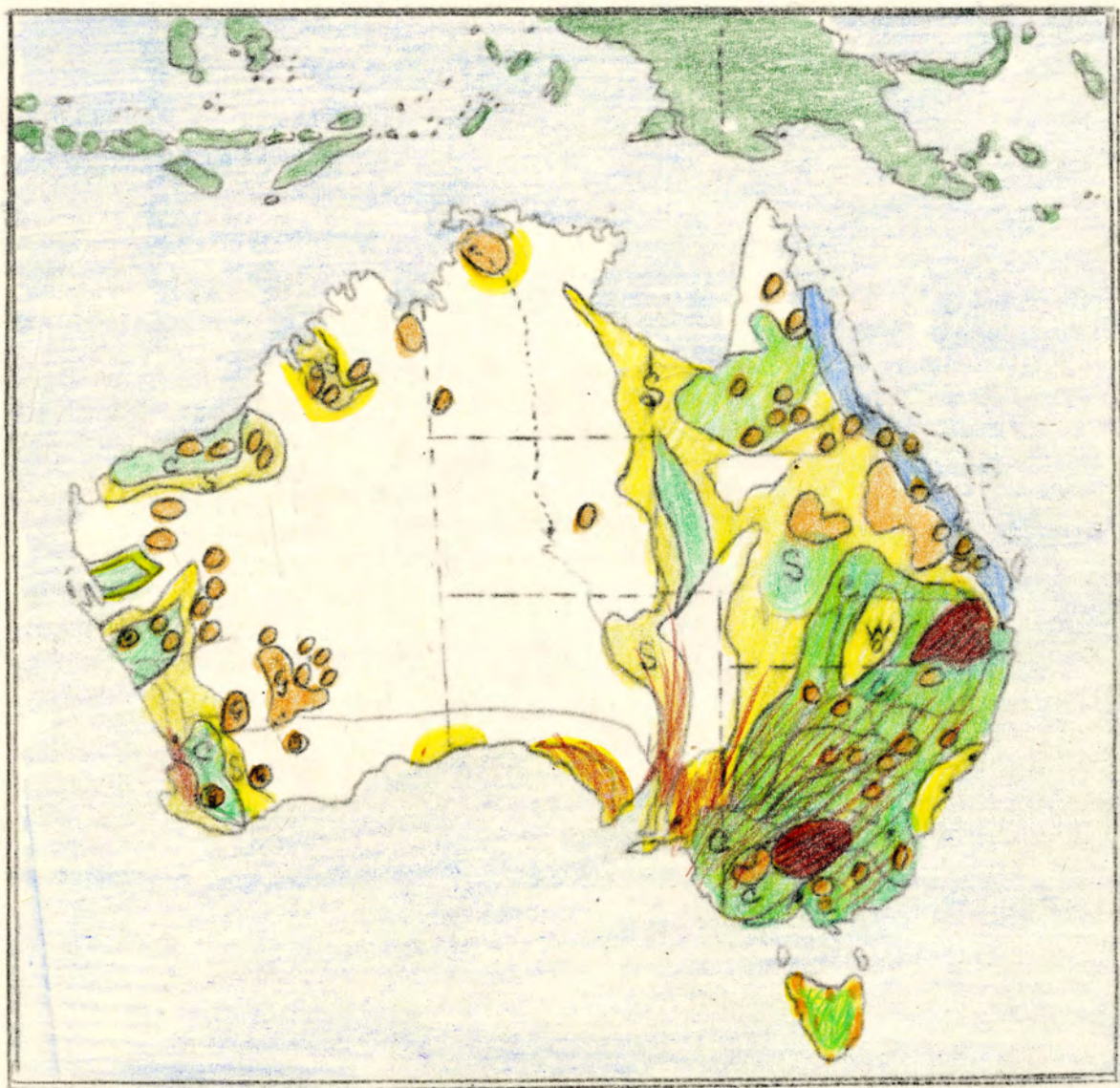
1802-1803.....New South Wales, South Australia, Victoria, and  
 Tasmania become separate and independent colonies.  
 1803.....Melbourne Settlement.....In Victoria.  
 1803.....Tasmanian Settlement.....In Tasmania.  
 1803.....Western Australian S.....In Western Australia.  
 1803.....Queensland Settlement.....In Queensland.  
 1803.....South Australian Settlement.....In South Australia.  
 1803.....Victoria Settlement.....In Victoria.  
 1807.....Western Australian S.....In Western Australia.  
 1807.....Queensland Settlement.....In Queensland.  
 1807.....On Brisbane River in Queensland.

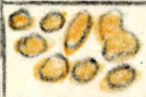
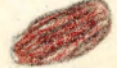
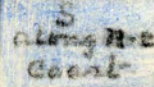



## PEOPLEMENT OF THE INTERIOR:

1812.....Gregory Blaxland.....From Sydney through the Blue  
 Mountains to the Bathurst plain.  
 1825.....John Oxley.....The Brisbane River in Queensland.  
 1828.....Charles Sturt.....The Murray River System.  
 1831-4.....Sir T. Mitchell.....Eastern Australia.  
 1840.....John Eyre.....From Sydney to St. Vincent Gulf.  
 1844-50.....A. G. Gregory.....Northern and Western Australia.  
 1844.....Austin.....In Western Australia.  
 1850-1.....Burton, King, Wills.....From Melbourne to the Gulf of  
 Carpentaria.  
 1852.....John Sturt.....From Adelaide to Port Darwin.  
 1873.....Watkinson.....From the West coast across S.  
 W. Australia.  
 1874.....Forrest.....Through central Western Australia  
 and from Perth south in W.A.  
 1875.....Giles.....Part of South Australia.  
 1882-88.....Terry.....Across Northern Australia, and  
 down to Melbourne...5500 miles.



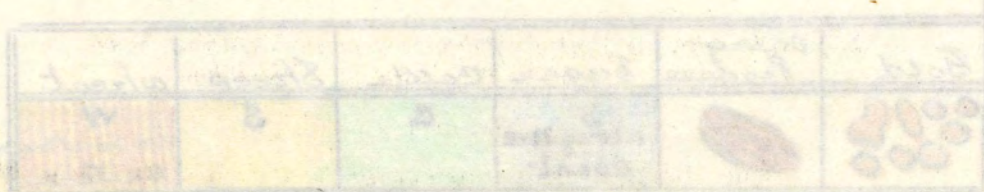
# Australian Industries and Products.



Gold	Dairy Products	Sugar	Cattle	Sheep	Wheat
					



Map of the Pacific Islands





## INDUSTRIES AND PRODUCTS OF AUSTRALIA:

The chief industries of Australia are agriculture, stock-raising, and mining. The chief products are wheat, cattle, sheep, wool, and gold. Merino sheep were introduced into Australia in 1803 by General John MacArthur, and recently sheep stations were large with about four-hundred thousand acres in each. The loss of sheep in one year totalled fifteen million. This loss was due to floods and droughts.

The record belows shows the states, the industries, and the important products produced in each...

STATE	INDUSTRIES	PRODUCTS
New South Wales..	Agriculture.....	Wheat. .
	Stockraising.....	Cattle, sheep.
	Mining.....	Gold, silver, lead, copper, coal. <u>Iron is not found.</u>
Victoria.....	Agriculture.....	Wheat, wine.
	Stockraising.....	Sheep, cattle.
	Mining.....	Gold 1851.
South Australia..	Agriculture.....	Wheat.
	Stockraising.....	Cattle, sheep.
	Mining.....	Iron, copper.
Queensland.....	Agriculture.....	Sugar-cane, Indian-corn.
	Stockraising.....	Cattle, sheep.
	Mining.....	Gold, tin.
Western Australia.	Lumbering.....	Valuable timber.
	Agriculture.....	Wheat.
	Mining.....	Gold.
Tasmania.....	Agriculture.....	Fruits, oats.
	Lumbering.....	Valuable timber.
	Mining.....	Tin, gold, coal.
Northern Australia.	Mining.....	Copper, tin.
	Stockraising.....	Sheep.

is

The most common family of trees in Australia are the Eucalyptus. It annually sheds its bark instead of its leaves.



# INDUSTRIES AND PRODUCTS OF AUSTRALIA:

The chief industries of Australia are agriculture, stock-raising, and mining. The chief products are wheat, cattle, sheep, wool, and gold. Merino sheep were introduced into Australia in 1803 by General John Macarthur, and recently sheep stations were large with about four-hundred thousand acres in each. The loss of sheep in one year totaled fifteen million. This loss was due to floods and droughts. The record below shows the states, the industries, and the important products produced in each...

STATE	INDUSTRIES	PRODUCTS
New South Wales	Agriculture	Wheat
	Stockraising	Cattle, sheep
	Mining	Gold, silver, lead, copper
		Coal. Iron is not found.
Victoria	Agriculture	Wheat, wine
	Stockraising	Sheep, cattle
	Mining	Gold 1851
South Australia	Agriculture	Wheat
	Stockraising	Cattle, sheep
	Mining	Iron, copper
Queensland	Agriculture	Sugar-cane, Indian-corn
	Stockraising	Cattle, sheep
	Mining	Gold, tin
Western Australia	Lumbering	Valuable timber
	Agriculture	Wheat
	Mining	Gold
Tasmania	Agriculture	Fruit, oats
	Lumbering	Valuable timber
	Mining	Tin, gold, coal
Northern Australia	Mining	Copper, tin
	Stockraising	Sheep

The most common family of trees in Australia are the

Acacias. It annually sheds its bark instead of its leaves.



Australia Cities and Transportation Systems.





Australian Colonies and Territories





## CITIES AND TRANSPORTATION OF AUSTRALIA:

The capital of Australia is Canberra. It is situated inland in the south-eastern section of New South Wales.

Sydney is on the east coast of New South Wales. It was the first place established as a settlement in Australia. It has a fine natural harbour, and does considerable shipping.

New Castle is north of Sydney on the east coast of New South Wales. It is the chief coal port of the continent.

Melbourne is north of Bass Strait in Victoria. It is the chief commercial centre of the state.

Adelaide is on St. Vincent Gulf in South Australia. It is a commercial centre.

Brisbane is on Brisbane River, twenty-five miles from the ocean in Queensland. It is the chief commercial centre of the state.

Perth is located toward the south-western part of South-western Australia. It is the capital of Western Australia.

Freemantle is on the coast of Western Australia south of Perth. It is the chief seaport of the west coast.

Albany is on the south coast of Western Australia. It is an important coaling station.

Hobart is located in south-eastern Tasmania. It is the capital of the island of Tasmania.

Coolgardie and Kalgoorlie are inland in Western Australia to the east of Perth. They are important gold-mining centres.

---

## TRANSPORTATION:

The sea is the main communication between eastern and western Australia. Various railway lines are mainly feeders of the sea-routes. The original settlements were far apart, therefore the sea-routes were important. Later a number of railway lines were built, but they have different gauges, and it is impossible for them to allow the engines to be transferred from one line to another. There is one transcontinental line from Kalgoorlie to Port Augusta a distance of one-thousand and fifty-two miles. There is an overland telegraph line from Port Augusta to Port Darwin. During the Second World War a number of air-fields were established in the country, and now air-transportation has been started.



## CITIES AND TRANSPORTATION OF AUSTRALIA

The capital of Australia is Canberra. It is situated inland in

the south-eastern section of New South Wales.

Sydney is on the east coast of New South Wales. It was the first place established as a settlement in Australia. It has a fine natural harbour, and does considerable shipping.

New Castle is north of Sydney on the east coast of New South Wales. It is the chief coal port of the continent.

Melbourne is north of Bass Strait in Victoria. It is the chief commercial centre of the state.

Adelaide is on St. Vincent Gulf in South Australia. It is a commercial centre.

Brisbane is on Brisbane River, twenty-five miles from the ocean in Queensland. It is the chief commercial centre of the state.

Perth is located toward the south-western part of South-western Australia. It is the capital of Western Australia.

Freemantle is on the coast of Western Australia south of Perth. It is the chief seaport of the west coast.

Albany is on the south coast of Western Australia. It is an important seaport.

Hobart is located in south-eastern Tasmania. It is the capital of the island of Tasmania.

Geelong and Melbourne are inland in Western Australia to the east of Perth. They are important gold-mining centres.

## TRANSPORTATION

The sea is the main communication between eastern and western Australia. Various railway lines are mainly leaders of the sea-routes. The original settlements were far apart, therefore the sea-routes were important. Later a number of railway lines were built, but they have different gauges, and it is impossible for them to allow the engines to be transferred from one line to another. There is one transcontinental line from Kalbarrie to Port Augusta a distance of one thousand and fifty-two miles. There is an overland telegraph line from Port Augusta to Port Darwin. During the second world war a number of air-fields were established in the country, and now air-transportation has been started.



AUSTRALIA...HISTORY....1606 to the Present Time.

THE DISCOVERERS OF AUSTRALIA:

The actual discovery of Australia is shrouded in the claims and counter-claims of several sixteenth century voyagers, <sup>but</sup> there is some evidence that the Chinese and the Malays had some knowledge of this land at least three centuries earlier. In 1597 a Dutch Historian, Wytfliet, wrote about the existence of a southern land which was thought to equal one-fifth of the earth's surface. This excited the imaginations and fastened the attention of a number of individuals on the possibilities of this land.

In 1503 the French made the first definite claims regarding the discovery of this land. Binot Paulmyer, sieur de Gonneville, had been forced by a storm to land on a large island. It might have been Australia, but it might have been Madagascar, so there is a question regarding his actual discovery. In 1531 Guillaume le Testu returned to France and told that he had sighted the land mentioned by the explorer above. The Portuguese also claim that they were the discoverers of the continent, but the lack of concrete evidence leaves the actual discovery open to question.

In 1606 Louis de Torres, a Portuguese navigator, on the Almarinta sighted the coast of northern Australia. He sailed through Torres Strait, but he did not land. In 1606 Pieter Carpenter in command of the Dutch ship, the Duyfken or the Dover, visited the Gulf of Carpentaria. The crew landed on the mainland of Australia. These were the first European visitors to what was named "New Holland" by the Dutch.

In 1616 Dirk Hartog, a Dutch sailor, landed on Hartog Island



AUSTRALIA... HISTORY... 1606 to the Present Time.

# THE DISCOVERERS OF AUSTRALIA:

The actual discovery of Australia is shrouded in the clouds

and counter-claims of several sixteenth century voyagers, but there is some

evidence that the Chinese and the Malays had some knowledge of this

land at least three centuries earlier. In 1597 a Dutch Historian, Wytfliet,

wrote about the existence of a northern land which was thought to equal

one-fifth of the earth's surface. This excited the imaginations and

fastened the attention of a number of individuals on the possibilities

of this land.

In 1606 the French made the first definite claims regarding

the discovery of this land. Binet Rouleux, sieur de Bonneville, had

been forced by a storm to land on a large island. It might have been

Australia, but it might have been Madagascar, so there is a question

regarding his actual discovery. In 1631 Guillaume Le Testu returned to

France and told that he had sighted the land mentioned by the explorer

above. The Portuguese also claim that they were the discoverers of the

continent, but the lack of concrete evidence leaves the actual discovery

open to question.

In 1606 Louis de Torres, a Portuguese navigator, on the Almazan

first sighted the coast of northern Australia. He sailed through Torres

Strait, but he did not land. In 1606 Pieter Garpenter in command of the

Dutch ship, the Hyphen or the Dover, visited the Gulf of Carpentaria.

The crew landed on the mainland of Australia. These were the first

European visitors to what was named "New Holland" by the Dutch.

In 1616 Dirk Hartog, a Dutch sailor, landed on Hartog Island



near Shark Bay, Western Australia. In 1642 Abel Tasman, a Dutch Explorer, visited both Australia and Tasmania. He named Tasmania, Van Dieman's Land in honour of the Governor of the Dutch East India Company. As no precious metals were found in either, the Dutch abandoned the newly discovered islands. He is credited with naming the large island "New Holland."

From 1606 to 1642 the Dutch were responsible for the first accurate knowledge of the north and the west coasts of what became known as New Holland. In the early voyages we find additional names to those mentioned above. They are Hartogszoon, Pool, Nuyts, Dewitt, and Pelsaert. The first definite knowledge that Europe obtained of the nature of New Holland was from Pelsaert, but it wasn't encouraging. He had been through a mutiny, and had landed on the coast. When he saw the inhospitable coast that was populated by "Large jumping raccoons," he felt that he had been swindled.

In 1652 William Dampier, an English member of a pirate crew, visited the coast of Australia. In 1656 the Dutch visited Western Australia. They were probably the first white people to remain in Western Australia as settlers.

In 1688 the "Cygnets" a trading vessel whose crew had turned buccaneers, sighted the Australian coast. On that ship William Dampier was a member of the crew. In 1689 he visited the western coast of the island on the Roebuck, and he reported his observations in his report which was entitled, "My Voyage to New Holland." In 1699 he persuaded the British authorities to send him to learn more about the southern land, "Terra Australis." One of his shipmates on this voyage was Alexander Selkirk who became the hero of Defoe's book, "Robinson Crusoe." He ex-



near Shark Bay, Western Australia. In 1642 Abel Tasman, a Dutch Explorer, visited both Australia and Tasmania. He named Tasmania, Van Diemen's Land in honor of the Governor of the Dutch East India Company. As no previous maps were found in either, the Dutch abandoned the newly discovered islands. He is credited with naming the large island "New Holland."

From 1606 to 1642 the Dutch were responsible for the first accurate knowledge of the north and the west coasts of what became known as New Holland. In the early voyages we find additional names to those mentioned above. They are Hartogsoom, Poel, Wyta, Dewitt, and Pelasart. The first definite knowledge that Europe obtained of the nature of New Holland was from Pelasart, but it wasn't encouraging. He had been through a mutiny, and had landed on the coast. When he saw the inhospitable coast that was populated by "large jumping raccoons," he felt that he had been misled. In 1692 William Dampier, an English member of a pirate crew,

visited the coast of Australia. In 1686 the Dutch visited Western Australia. They were probably the first white people to remain in Western Australia as settlers.

In 1686 the "Cygnet" a trading vessel whose crew had turned pirates, sighted the Australian coast. On that ship William Dampier was a member of the crew. In 1699 he visited the western coast of the island of the Houtman, and he reported his observations in his report which was entitled, "My Voyage to New Holland." In 1699 he persuaded the British authorities to send him to learn more about the southern land, "Terra Australis." One of his shipmates on this voyage was Alexander Selkirk who became the hero of Defoe's book, "Robinson Crusoe." He ex-



explored nine-hundred miles of the shore from Shark's Bay to Dampier's Archipelago, and from there to Roebuck Bay. He didn't like the country, so he described it as dry, barren, and useless land which was inhabited by a savage and dreadful people. This report discouraged further attempts to explore it for some time, so Australia was left alone for a number of years.

The last chapter in the coastal exploration of Australia was written by the great English navigator, Captain James Cook, who was sent by the British Government on a voyage of exploration and discovery. He left England in 1768 on the ship "Endeavour" which sailed to the Southern Seas. In 1770 he sighted New Zealand. He then sailed north-west to the coast of Australia. He landed at Botany Bay and took possession of the eastern sea-board for the British Crown. He named the region, "New South Wales". In the following five months he explored two-hundred miles of the coast-line. In a report that he compiled he remarked on the fertility of the soil and the luxuriant vegetation that he saw. In addition he told about seeing a kangaroo. At that time the western part of Australia was claimed by the Dutch, and was known as New Holland.

In 1778 Captain Arthur Phillip, a British Navigator, set sail for the Southern Continent with a number of vessels under his command. They carried eight-hundred men and women convicts and about two-hundred free-men, cattle, tools, seeds, and necessities. They reached Botany Bay after a voyage of thirty-six weeks..(nine months), and found that they could not land, so they sailed on until they came to the harbour of the present sea-port of Sydney. They landed there and built new homes. This was the first British settlement that was



explored nine-hundred miles of the shore from Shark's Bay to Dampier's Archipelago, and from there to Roebuck Bay. He didn't like the country, so he described it as dry, barren, and useless land which was inhabited by a savage and bloodthirsty people. This report discouraged further attempts to explore it for some time, so Australia was left alone for a number of years.

The last chapter in the coastal exploration of Australia was written by the great English navigator, Captain James Cook, who was sent by the British Government on a voyage of exploration and discovery. He left England in 1768 on the ship "Endeavour" which sailed to the Southern Seas. In 1770 he sighted New Zealand. He then sailed north-west to the coast of Australia. He landed at Botany Bay and took possession of the eastern sea-board for the British Crown. He named the region "New South Wales". In the following five months he explored two-hundred miles of the coast-line. In a report that he compiled he remarked on the fertility of the soil and the luxuriant vegetation that he saw. In addition he told about seeing a kangaroo. At that time the western part of Australia was claimed by the Dutch, and was known as New Holland.

In 1778 Captain Arthur Phillip, a British Navigator, set sail for the Southern Continent with a number of vessels under his command. They carried eight-hundred men and women convicts and about two-hundred free-men, cattle, tools, seeds, and necessaries. They reached Botany Bay after a voyage of thirty-six weeks (nine months), and found that they could not land, so they sailed on until they came to the harbour of the present sea-port of Sydney. They landed there and built new houses. This was the first British settlement that was



established in Australia. It developed into the town of Sydney, and January 28, 1788 is celebrated as the birthday of the present city of Sydney.

In 1798 George Bass and Matthew Flinders in a small boat made a trip along the coast from Port Jackson and entered the strait between Tasmania and Australia. Later in the year in a sloop, they sailed through Bass Strait and rounded Tasmania. In 1802 and 1803 Matthew Flinders continued his work of examining the south coast. On this trip he met a Captain Baudin, a French navigator, who was passing along the coast from the west. In 1803 he circumnavigated Australia. He explored and charted the entire coast of New Holland. He made important surveys in the Gulf of Carpentaria. He is credited with naming the southern continent, "Terra Australis" or Southern Land, Australia.

---

#### THE NATIVE PEOPLE:

The native people of Australia are called Aborigines. Those that were found in the country when it was visited by the white man, were found to be very low in the human scale. They were cannibals who thought that beetles and ants were delicacies. They knocked out the two front teeth of each individual as a beauty aid. Their weapons consisted of knives of wood, and spears that were tipped with wood or stone. There were peculiar flat pieces of wood which were curved in the middle. These after hitting their marks, returned to the throwers, and came to be called "Boomerangs."

They had crude message-sticks on which they drew pictures to tell stories. They were excellent hunters, and would follow a trail even



established in Australia. It developed into the town of Sydney, and  
January 28, 1788 is celebrated as the birthday of the present city of  
Sydney.

In 1798 George Bass and Matthew Flinders in a small boat made  
a trip along the coast from Port Jackson and entered the strait between  
Tasmania and Australia. Later in the year in a ship, they sailed through  
Bass Strait and rounded Tasmania. In 1801 and 1802 Matthew Flinders  
continued his work of examining the south coast. On this trip he met a  
Captain Baudin, a French navigator, who was passing along the coast from  
the west. In 1803 he circumnavigated Australia. He explored and charted  
the entire coast of New Holland. He made important surveys in the Gulf  
of Carpentaria. He is credited with naming the northern continent, "Terra  
Australiae" or Southern Land, Australia.

#### THE NATIVE PEOPLE:

The native people of Australia are called Aborigines. Those that  
were found in the country when it was visited by the white man, were  
found to be very low in the human scale. They were cannibals who thought  
that beetles and ants were delicious. They smoked out the two front  
teeth of each individual as a beauty aid. Their weapons consisted of  
knives of wood, and spears that were tipped with wood or stone. There  
were peculiar flat pieces of wood which were carved in the middle. These  
after hitting their marks, returned to the throwers, and came to be called  
"Boomerangs."

They had crude message-sticks on which they drew pictures to  
tell stories. They were excellent hunters, and would follow a trail even



SUMMARY RE:::THE DISCOVERY OF AUSTRALIA:

This summary should have been entered immediately after the note on the Discovery of Australia....

DATE	NAME	FOR	DISCOVERIES
1606	Luis de Torres	Portugal..	He sighted Northern Australia.
1606	Pieter Carpenter	Dutch....	His crew landed on the shores of the Gulf of Carpentaria.
1616	Dirk Hartog	Dutch....	Hartog Island, Western Aust.
1642	Abel Tasman	Dutch....	New Zealand and Australia.
1652	William Dampier	British...	The coast of Australia.
1656		Dutch....	Western Australia.
1689	William Dampier	British...	Western Australia.
1699	William Dampier	British...	The North Coast.
1768-1770	Captain James Cook	British...	Australia claimed for Br.
1770	Captain James Cook	...	Botany Bay.
1777	Captain James Cook	...	Landed at Adventure Bay in Tasmania.
1788	Captain Arthur Phillip	Br.....	Sydney established.
1802-3	Matthew Flinders	British...	He explored the entire coast.



# SUMMARY RE: THE DISCOVERY OF AUSTRALIA:

This summary should have been entered immediately after

the note on the Discovery of Australia....

DATE	NAME	FOR	DISCOVERIES
1606	Jules de Torres	Portuguese	He sighted Northern Australia.
1606	Pieter Carpentier	Dutch	His crew landed on the shores of the Gulf of Carpentaria.
1616	Dirk Hartog	Dutch	Hartog Island, Western Australia.
1622	Abel Tasman	Dutch	New Zealand and Australia.
1622	William Dampier	British	The coast of Australia.
1622	William Dampier	Dutch	Western Australia.
1622	William Dampier	British	Western Australia.
1622	William Dampier	British	The North Coast.
1622-1623	Captain James Cook	British	Australia claimed for Br.
1623	Captain James Cook	..	Botany Bay.
1623	Captain James Cook	..	Landed at Adventure Bay in Tasmania.
1623	Captain Arthur Phillip Br.	British	Sydney established.
1623-2	Matthew Flinders	British	He explored the entire coast.



better than the North American Indians. They were shamefully treated by degraded white men. They were shot down without mercy, and in return the natives speared the new-comers whenever the opportunity presented itself. The titles of the aborigines to the land of Australia were never considered.

When the white men arrived, there were probably 250,000 aborigines in the country. Now there are about 70,000, and this number is rapidly decreasing. The continued decline is due to the ravages of the white man's diseases to which these people are particularly susceptible.

The natives found in Tasmania were even more primitive than those of Australia. Their tools did not have handles; their weapons did not have stone tips; they did not have any boomerangs; they did not wear clothing; and they lived in hollow trees or shelters of boughs. They did not erect anything that might be classed as a hut. The remnants of these natives were rounded up between 1830 and 1834, and the three-hundred were put on an island. The last one died in 1876, and her skeleton was put in the British Museum.

---

#### THE ESTABLISHMENT AND GROWTH OF SETTLEMENTS:

##### THE EARLY SETTLERS:

The settlement of Australia was due to events in far-off America. In 1783 the American Colonies gained their Independence, and as a result it became ~~it became~~ impossible for the British to continue sending criminals to America to work in the cotton fields. The British jails became over-crowded with criminals, and suggestions were made for clearing them of their inmates. It was finally decided to make New South Wales



better than the North American Indians. They were shamefully treated by degraded white men. They were shot down without mercy, and in return the natives spared the new-comers whenever the opportunity presented itself. The titles of the aborigines to the land of Australia were never considered.

When the white men arrived, there were probably 250,000 aborigines in the country. Now there are about 70,000, and this number is rapidly decreasing. The continued decline is due to the ravages of the white man's diseases to which these people are particularly susceptible.

The natives found in Tasmania were even more primitive than those of Australia. Their tools did not have handles; their weapons did not have stone tips; they did not have any boomerangs; they did not wear clothing; and they lived in hollow trees or shelters of boughs. They did not erect anything that might be classed as a hut. The remnants of these natives were rounded up between 1830 and 1834, and the three hundred were put on an island. The last one died in 1876, and her skeleton was put in the British Museum.

#### THE ESTABLISHMENT AND GROWTH OF SETTLEMENTS:

##### THE EARLY SETTLEMENTS:

The settlement of Australia was due to events in far-off America. In 1788 the American Colonies gained their independence, and as a result it became impossible for the British to continue sending criminals to America to work in the cotton fields. The British jails became over-crowded with criminals, and suggestions were made for clearing them of their inmates. It was finally decided to make New South Wales



a penal settlement. This location was prompted by the fact that there was little chance of escape from such a remote place, and the criminals could become self-supporting.

In 1788 eight-hundred and fifty of the worst criminals were sent to Botany Bay. It was impossible for them to land at the point suggested, so they were taken north and landed near where Sydney now stands. The first few years were very difficult because there were no farmers among the convicts, and much of the seed which had been sent with them, was wasted. In 1790 conditions became so bad that the weekly ration was reduced to two pounds of mouldy flour, two pounds of dried up pork, and two pounds of maggoty rice. Fishing was tried, but the results were disappointing, and very few kangaroos were shot. In 1792 the settlement contained four-thousand persons. With the exception of the officials and soldiers the rest of the settlers were convicts and those who had remained when their terms had expired. Nine-tenths of the convicts refused to work. Crime was rampant; gardens were robbed nightly; stores were broken into and supplies were stolen; drunkenness was common. Severe penalties were inflicted for crimes and for attempting to escape. Men and women were flogged and even executed.

In 1793 each freed convict was given a grant of thirty acres; an additional twenty acres if he were married; and ten acres for each child. After ten years he was required to pay a quittance of six pence per ~~thirty~~ thirty acres. By 1794 over four-hundred persons were settled on farms. Convicts were assigned to land-holders to help work the farms. The land-holders had to feed, clothe, and look after his helpers. Later he had to pay them small wages.



a penal settlement. This location was prompted by the fact that there was little chance of escape from such a remote place, and the criminals could become self-supporting.

In 1788 eight-hundred and fifty of the worst criminals were

sent to Botany Bay. It was impossible for them to land at the point

suggested, so they were taken north and landed near where Sydney now

stands. The first few years were very difficult because there were no

farmers among the convicts, and much of the seed which had been sent

with them, was wasted. In 1790 conditions became so bad that the weekly

rations were reduced to two pounds of manly flour, two pounds of dried up

pork, and two pounds of maggoty rice. Fishing was tried, but the results

were disappointing, and very few kangaroos were shot. In 1792 the settlers

went contained four-thousand persons. With the exception of the officials

and soldiers the rest of the settlers were convicts and those who had

remained when their terms had expired. Nine-tenths of the convicts refused

to work. Crime was rampant; gardens were robbed nightly; stores were

broken into and supplies were stolen; drunkenness was common. Severe

penalties were inflicted for crimes and for attempting to escape. Men

and women were flogged and even executed.

In 1793 each freed convict was given a grant of thirty acres;

an additional twenty acres if he were married; and ten acres for each

child. After ten years he was required to pay a quitrent of six pence

per thirty acres. By 1794 over four-hundred persons were settled on farms.

Convicts were assigned to land-holders to help work the farms. The land-

holders had to feed, clothe, and look after his helpers. Later he had to

pay them small wages.



Four-hundred acres near each town were set aside for the support of the clergy. Two-hundred acres near each town were set aside for the school-master. Officers were permitted to engage in trade. They soon debauched the convicts with rum, and at one time they would work for rum as payment. The officers made a profit of five-hundred per cent, and rum was used as currency since everyone wanted it. Its use as currency was prohibited in 1807, but several years passed before the trade was ended, and the general morale of the colony was improved.

Between 1788 and 1867 one-hundred and thirty-seven thousand, one-hundred and sixty-one persons were transported from the British Isles to Australia. Between 1788 and 1836....59,778 of them were sent to New South Wales; between 1803 and 1853....67,655 of them were sent to Van Dieman's Island; and, between 1850 and 1867....9,728 of them were sent to Western Australia. Approximately 20,000 of those transported were women. The majority of sentences were from seven to fourteen years, but some of the convicts were transported for life.

Assigned convicts were practically slaves under these to whom they were assigned. If they did not get into trouble, they would not be placed in prison in Australia, but those who broke the law were placed in chain-gangs on roads or at work of a similar nature. Additional offences brought the lash and strict discipline in out-stations. These were even more horrible than the French penal settlements in French Guiana. Many of the assigned convict-servants were not hardened criminals. They had been apprehended and sentenced because in 1800, there were over two-hundred offences punishable in Great Britain by the death penalty. Magistrates frequently sentenced the individuals to transportation to



Magistrates frequently sentenced the individuals to transportation to  
two-hundred offences punishable in Great Britain by the death penalty.  
They had been apprehended and sentenced because in 1800, there were over  
Golems. Many of the assigned convict-servants were not hardened criminals.  
were even more horrible than the French penal settlements in French  
offences brought the lash and strict discipline in out-stations. These  
in chain-gangs on roads or at work of a similar nature. Additional  
placed in prison in Australia, but those who broke the law were placed  
they were assigned. If they did not get into trouble, they would not be  
Assigned convicts were practically slaves under these to whom  
some of the convicts were transported for life.  
women. The majority of sentences were from seven to fourteen years, but  
to Western Australia. Approximately 20,000 of those transported were  
Bismarck's Island; and, between 1850 and 1867... 2,728 of them were sent  
North Wales; between 1803 and 1833... 47,433 of them were sent to Van  
to Australia. Between 1788 and 1836... 59,778 of them were sent to New  
one-hundred and sixty-one persons were transported from the British Isles  
ended, and the general morale of the colony was improved.  
was prohibited in 1807, but several years passed before the trade was  
run was used as currency since everyone wanted it. It was as currency  
run as payment. The officers made profit of five-hundred per cent, and  
detached the convicts with rum, and at one time they would work for  
school-master. Officers were permitted to engage in trade. They soon  
of the colony. Two-hundred acres near each town were set aside for the  
four-hundred acres near each town were set aside for the support



the penal settlements rather than impose the death penalty.

Numerous people who wanted to go to Australia, but lacked the means, frequently committed some minor offence so that they might be transported. Numerous individuals were banished from Britain because they had advanced political opinions, or because they had taken part in disturbances or rebellions.

Assigned convicts were often better fed and better clothed than they had been in England while free. After they had served their sentences, they were free to return to England or to remain in Australia. A great many of them remained there, and established homes for themselves. Thousands of convicts tried to escape from the penal settlements by sea or over-land, and hundred of them perished. They stole small or large boats, and every vessel sailing from Australia had its cargo of stowaways. In 1803 the first convict settlements were established in Tasmania. This was done to forestall the French who seemed to be interested in creating a colony in that region.

---

#### THE FREE SETTLERS:

These were individuals who went to Australia of their own accord to establish homes for themselves. In 1788 about two-hundred of these accompanied the first shipment of convicts. In 1793 New South Wales was opened to Free Immigration and a number of free settlers arrived. Each settler was given a grant of one-hundred acres of land, and on these homesteads they started the cultivation of wheat.

In 1803 John MacArthur introduced the rearing of fine wool sheep in Australia. This proved to be an important factor in encouraging later



the penal settlements rather than impose the death penalty.

Numerous people who wanted to go to Australia, but lacked the

means, frequently committed some minor offence so that they might be

transported. Numerous individuals were banished from Britain because they

had advanced political opinions, or because they had taken part in disturb-

ances or rebellions.

Assigned convicts were often better fed and better clothed than

they had been in England while free. After they had served their sentences,

they were free to return to England or to remain in Australia. A great

many of them remained there, and established homes for themselves. Thousands

of convicts tried to escape from the penal settlements by sea or over-land,

and hundreds of them perished. They stole small or large boats, and every

vessel sailing from Australia had its cargo of stowaways. In 1803 the

first convict settlements were established in Tasmania. This was done to

forestall the French who seemed to be interested in creating a colony

in that region.

#### THE PENAL SETTLEMENTS:

These were individuals who went to Australia of their own accord

to establish homes for themselves. In 1788 about two-hundred of these

accompanied the first shipment of convicts. In 1793 New South Wales was

opened to free immigration and a number of free settlers arrived. Each

settler was given a grant of one-hundred acres of land, and on these

homesteads they started the cultivation of wheat.

In 1803 John Macarthur introduced the rearing of fine wool sheep

in Australia. This proved to be an important factor in encouraging later



settlements. The production of wool created a need for ware-houses and harbours for the ships that transported the wool. This gave rise to the establishment of a number of coast-cities, and brought prosperity to the sheep-raisers and to those associated with the disposal of the wool.

In 1807 Colonel Collins established a permanent settlement at Hobart in Tasmania. It is situated on the Derwent River, and it has a number of important industries.

The Free Settlers increased in New South Wales to such an extent that the region between the the mountains and the coast became too narrow to accommodate those who wanted to establish homes there. In 1813 Gregory Blaxland, a pioneer of inland exploration, conquered the rock-hewn road through the Blue Mountains, and thereby opened the Bathurst Plain to pastoral settlement.

In 1816 Governor Davey of New South Wales issued a proclamation which advised that the aborigines and the whites would receive equal justice in the region. This prompted the establishment of more permanent buildings, and by 1821 numerous buildings of brick and stone had been erected; over two-hundred Public Buildings had been erected throughout the country; the sites of several towns were selected; the population was increased by twenty-three thousand Free Settlers; schools were established in out-lying districts; and the number of cattle and sheep had increased eight-fold.

#### THE ESTABLISHMENT, AND GROWTH OF SETTLEMENTS AFTER 1821:

The first thirty years of the nineteenth century were occupied with a number of minor explorations which spread from the settlements along the east coast. The explorers gradually penetrated the coastal



settlements. The production of wool created a need for wire-fences and harbours for the ships that transported the wool. This gave rise to the establishment of a number of coast-towns, and brought prosperity to the sheep-rangers and to those associated with the disposal of the wool.

In 1807 Colonel Collins established a permanent settlement at

Robert in Tasmania. It is situated on the Derwent River, and it has

a number of important industries.

The Free Settlers increased in New South Wales to such an extent

that the region between the mountains and the coast became too narrow

to accommodate those who wanted to establish homes there. In 1813

Gregory Blaxland, a pioneer of inland exploration, conquered the rock-

new road through the Blue Mountains, and thereby opened the Bathurst

plain to pastoral settlement.

In 1816 Governor D'Arcy of New South Wales issued a proclamation

which advised that the aborigines and the whites would receive equal

justice in the region. This prompted the establishment of more permanent

buildings, and by 1821 numerous buildings of brick and stone had been

erected; over two-hundred Public Buildings had been erected throughout

the country; the sites of several towns were selected; the population

was increased by twenty-three thousand Free Settlers; schools were estab-

lished in out-lying districts; and the number of cattle and sheep had

increased eight-fold.

#### THE ESTABLISHMENT AND GROWTH OF SETTLEMENTS AFTER 1821:

The first thirty years of the nineteenth century were occupied

with a number of minor explorations which spread from the settlements

along the east coast. The explorers gradually penetrated the coastal



mountain ranges and the passes through them. In 1823 John Oxley discovered the Brisbane River in south-eastern Queensland. In 1824 the British established a penal colony in that region to prevent the French gaining a foot-hold.

In 1827 the French made plans to establish a settlement in Western Australia, and in the same year the Americans made plans to establish a settlement in the unpopulated country. In 1830 settlers moved from New South Wales into Tasmania, Queensland, Victoria, and South Australia. In 1830 a band of four-thousand immigrants from England settled in Western Australia. Land was sold to them for one shilling six pence per acre, and large tracts were purchased. That meant that the population was scattered. By 1835 these settlers found that the land was poor, and that there were a number of plants that were poisonous to stock, so they left Western Australia and moved to Tasmania and New South Wales.

In 1835, Edward Henty founded the city of Melbourne. In 1836 the Town of Adelaide was established on the Gulf of St. Vincent, and a colony was gradually developed around the town. By 1840 the foundations of the colonies of Tasmania, Victoria, and South Australia were well established.

In 1850 the five-thousand settlers of Western Australia asked that convicts be sent there. During the next seventeen years about ten-thousand convicts were sent there, and ten-thousand Free Settlers established homes for themselves in that section of Australia. At that time there wasn't any connection between Western Australia and the East except by sea. It remained that way until 1917 when the transcontinental rail-



mountain ranges and the passes through them. In 1822 John Oxley discovered  
of the Brisbane River in north-eastern Queensland. In 1824 the British  
established a penal colony in that region to prevent the French gaining  
a foot-hold.  
In 1827 the French made plans to establish a settlement in  
Western Australia, and in the same year the Americans made plans to  
establish a settlement in the unpopulated country. In 1830 settlers  
moved from New South Wales into Tasmania, Queensland, Victoria, and  
South Australia. In 1830 a band of four-thousand immigrants from England  
settled in Western Australia. Land was sold to them for one shilling  
six pence per acre, and large tracts were purchased. That meant that  
the population was scattered. By 1835 these settlers found that the  
land was poor, and that there were a number of plants that were poisonous  
to stock, so they left Western Australia and moved to Tasmania and New  
South Wales.  
In 1835, Edward Henty founded the city of Melbourne. In 1836  
the Town of Adelaide was established on the Gulf of St. Vincent, and a  
colony was gradually developed around the town. By 1840 the foundations  
of the colonies of Tasmania, Victoria, and South Australia were well  
established.  
In 1850 the five-thousand settlers of Western Australia asked  
that convicts be sent there. During the next seventeen years about ten-  
thousand convicts were sent there, and ten-thousand free settlers estab-  
lished homes for themselves in that section of Australia. At that time  
there wasn't any connection between Western Australia and the East except  
by sea. It remained that way until 1917 when the transcontinental rail-



way was built.

Between 1850 and 1855 New South Wales, South Australia, Victoria, and Tasmania became separate and independent colonies. In 1867 Victoria recorded a land boom. Prices rose from £40 to £40,000, and squatters entered the region. South Australia was settled partially by a Company in England, and by a number of Germans. The Germans settled in blocks, and had their own language, schools, and churches.

SUMMARIES ASSOCIATED WITH THE EARLY SETTLERS: THE FREE SETTLERS: AND SETTLEMENTS AFTER 1821:

a. THE EARLY SETTLERS:

DATES	SETTLERS	REMARKS
1783.....		1.The Americans won their independence. 2.America ceased to be a dumping ground for British Convicts. 3.A new convict settlement had to be established because British jails were over-crowded. 4.Australia was selected for the establishment of the new settlement.
1788.....	850 Br. Convicts...	Established a settlement at Sydney.
1790.....		...The weekly ration was reduced.
1792.....	4000 Br. Settlers...	In the Sydney Settlement.
1793.....	Freed Convicts.....	Each was given a grant of land.
1794.....	400 Farmers	...They were in charge of estates.
1788-1867.	137,161 Convicts...	These were sent to Australia.
1788-1836.	59,778 Convicts...	To New South Wales.
1803-1853.	67,655 Convicts...	To Van Dieman's Island.(Tasmania).
1850-1867.	9,728 Convicts...	To Western Australia.

b. THE FREE SETTLERS:

DATES	PERSONS	REMARKS.
1793.....		...Free Settlers entered N. S. Wales. Wheat-growing was started.
1803.....	John McArthur.....	He introduced sheep-raising.
1807.....	Colonel Collins....	He established a permanent settlement at Hobart in Tasmania.



very was built.

Between 1820 and 1825 New South Wales, South Australia, Victoria, and Tasmania became separate and independent colonies. In 1827 Victoria received a land boom. Prices rose from £40 to £40,000, and settlers entered the region. South Australia was settled partially by a company in England, and by a number of Germans. The Germans settled in blocks, and had their own language, schools, and churches.

# SUMMARY ASSOCIATED WITH THE EARLY SETTLERS: THE FREE SETTLERS: AND

## SETTLEMENTS AFTER 1821:

### a. THE EARLY SETTLERS:

DATE	SETTLING	REMARKS
1788		1. The Americans won their independence.
1789		2. America ceased to be a dumping ground for British convicts.
1790		3. A new convict settlement had to be established because British jails were over-crowded.
1791		4. Australia was selected for the establishment of the new settlement.
1792	850 Br. Convicts	Established a settlement at Sydney.
1793		The weekly ration was reduced.
1794	4000 Br. Settlers	In the Sydney Settlement.
1795	Free Convicts	Each was given a grant of land.
1796	400 Farmers	They were in charge of estates.
1797-1807	127,121 Convicts	These were sent to Australia.
1798-1825	29,778 Convicts	To New South Wales.
1802-1825	27,625 Convicts	To Van Diemen's Island (Tasmania).
1820-1827	9,725 Convicts	To Western Australia.

### b. THE FREE SETTLERS:

DATE	PERSONS	REMARKS
1792		Free Settlers entered N. S. Wales.
1802	John MacArthur	Wheat-growing was started.
1807	Colonel Collins	He introduced sheep-raising.
		He established a permanent settlement at Hobart in Tasmania.



DATES	PERSONS	REMARKS
1813.....	Gregory Blaxland	..He discovered a way through the Blue Mountains to the Bathurst Plain.
1816.....	Governor Davey	..He assured justice to Natives and the Whites.
1821.....		..23,000 Free Settlers had entered Australia.

ce SETTLEMENTS AFTER 1821:

DATE	REGION	REMARKS
1823.....	Brisbane River	..In Queensland was discovered. by John Oxley.
1824.....	Queensland	..A British penal colony was established there.
1827.....	Western Australia	..French and Americans planned settlements.
1830.....	Tasmania, Victoria, Queensland, and Southern Australia.	..They received settlers from New South Wales.
1830.....	Western Australia.	..British immigrants settled there.
1832.....	Western Australia.	..Some of the British settlers moved out.
1835.....	Melbourne	.. It was established in Victoria by Edward Henty.
1836.....	Adelaide.	..It was established on St. Vincent Gulf.
1840.....	Tasmania, Victoria, Queensland, and Southern Australia.	..These colonies were well established.
1850.....	Western Australia	..The number of settlers increased.
1850-5...	New South Wales, Southern Australia, Victoria, Tasmania.	..These became independent colonies.
1867.....	Victoria	.. A land boom occurred. £40-£4000

NOTE: RE- THE TRANSPORTATION OF CONVICTS TO AUSTRALIA:

DATE	REGION	REMARKS.
1840 .....	New South Wales....	The British Government stopped sending convicts to the regions indicated.
1853.....	Tasmania.....	
1868.....	Western Australia...	



DATE	PERSON	REMARKS
1818	Gregory Blaxland	He discovered a way through the Blue Mountains to the Western Plains.
1818	Governor Davey	He assured justice to Natives and the Whites.
1821		25,000 Free Settlers had entered Australia.

# of SETTLEMENTS AFTER 1821:

DATE	REGION	REMARKS
1823	Brisbane River	In Queensland was discovered.
1824	Queensland	by John Oxley.
1827	Western Australia	A British penal colony was established there.
1828	Tasmania, Victoria, Queensland, and Southern Australia	French and Americans planned settlements.
1829	Western Australia	They received settlers from New South Wales.
1830	Western Australia	British immigrants settled there.
1831	Western Australia	Some of the British settlers moved out.
1832	Melbourne	It was established in Victoria by Edward Henty.
1833	Adelaide	It was established on St. Vincent Gulf.
1834	Tasmania, Victoria, Queensland, and Southern Australia	These colonies were well established.
1835	Western Australia	The number of settlers increased.
1836	New South Wales, Southern Australia, Victoria, Tasmania	These became independent colonies.
1837	Victoria	A land boom occurred. 140-24000

# NOTE: RE - THE TRANSPORTATION OF CONVICTS TO AUSTRALIA:

DATE	REGION	REMARKS
1840	New South Wales	The British Government stopped sending convicts to the regions indicated.
1853	Tasmania	
1868	Western Australia	



## THE EXPLORATION AND THE PENETRATION OF THE INTERIOR:

In 1813 Gregory Blaxland, a pioneer of inland exploration, travelled through the Blue Mountains in New South Wales and opened the Bathurst Plain to pastoral settlement. In 1823 John Oxley discovered the Brisbane River in southern Queensland. He also made a number of pioneer trips into the interior of the country. He was followed by Hume, Hovell, and others.

In 1828 Charles Sturt explored the Darling River. Between 1828 and 1831 he explored the Murrumbidgee and the Murray, and demonstrated the great potentialities of the great river system of south-eastern Australia. Between 1831 and 1834 Major Thomas Mitchell explored considerable of Eastern Australia. These men added most to the exploration of eastern Australia. During the first part of their work there was a serious drought, and the task of finding water and new range for the settlers spurred their exploration.

In 1828 Charles Sturt followed the River Macquarie beyond the point reached by Oxley, and eventually he followed it into the Darling River which proved to be an outlet for two of the streams that Oxley had reported. His next attempt was made in 1829. He started at Sydney and went to the headwaters of the Murrumbidgee River. There he launched a boat and travelled down the river to its confluence with a stream flowing in from the north. This was the Darling. He continued down stream on the waters of the Murray River, and reached its mouth in Encounter Bay. Then he turned about and made a difficult and tiring journey up the river to its headwaters and crossed to Sydney. In 1844 he made his final trip. He set out from Adelaide and moved into the interior by way of the Murray and the Darling Rivers. He then journeyed in a north-western direction across a region that he called the Great Stony Desert. He crossed



THE EXPLORATION AND THE SETTLEMENT OF THE INTERIOR

In 1813 Gregory Blaxland, a pioneer of inland exploration, travelled

through the Blue Mountains in New South Wales and opened the Bathurst plain to pastoral settlement. In 1822 John Oxley discovered the Brisbane River in northern Queensland. He also made a number of pioneer trips into the interior of the country. He was followed by Hume, Hovell, and others. In 1828 Charles Stuart explored the Darling River. Between 1828 and 1831 he explored the Murrumbidgee and the Murray, and demonstrated the great potentialities of the great river system of south-eastern Australia.

Between 1831 and 1834 Major Thomas Mitchell explored considerable of Eastern Australia. These men added most to the exploration of eastern Australia. During the first part of their work there was a serious drought, and the task of finding water and new ranges for the settlers spurred their exploration.

In 1828 Charles Stuart followed the River Macintyre beyond the point reached by Oxley, and eventually he followed it into the Darling River which proved to be an outlet for two of the streams that Oxley had reported. His next attempt was made in 1829. He started at Sydney and went to the headwaters of the Murrumbidgee River. There he launched a boat and travelled down the river to its confluence with a stream flowing in from the north. This was the Darling. He continued down stream on the waters of the Murray River, and reached its mouth in Encounter Bay. Then he turned about and made a difficult and tiring journey up the river to its headwaters and crossed to Sydney. In 1844 he made his final trip. He set out from Adelaide and moved into the interior by way of the Murray and the Darling rivers. He then journeyed in a north-western direction across a region that he called the Great Sandy Desert. He crossed



Strzelecki Creek and Cooper's Creek and penetrated well into the central area of Australia.

In 1839 E. John Eyre with a native boy called Wylie set out from Sydney and travelled through twelve-hundred miles of wilderness and desert to St. Vincent Gulf. From there they journeyed to Eyre's sheep-ranch which was one-hundred and fifty miles north of Adelaide. They set out from the ranch and explored the Flinders Range, climbed Mount Eyre, and saw Lake Torrens. They also explored the Lincoln Peninsula. In 1841 Eyre decided on a western journey. Accompanied by John Baxter and three natives, he started from Mount Arden at the head of Spencer Gulf and went to Streaky Bay. He had limited provisions and equipment, and was undoubtedly rash in determining to follow the south coast of Australia around the Great Australian Bight. The party pushed on, and passed Fowler's Bay. Provisions dwindled rapidly and six-hundred miles of unexplored coast lay before them. The party suffered greatly from thirst and hunger, and a few weeks later Baxter was murdered by two of the natives who fled. Eyre still pushed on until his supplies were completely exhausted. He finally signalled a ship that was passing near the shore. He renewed his provisions and continued his journey. At last he reached Albany on the southwest coast, and revealed the difficult and forbidding character of the south Australian coast, and linked the settled areas of the east with those of the west.

In 1844 Dr. Ludwig Leichhardt extended the exploration of the northeastern section of Australia. He started from Moreton Bay in the centre of the east coast, and journeyed to the headwaters of the Condamine River. He then travelled parallel to the north-east coast. He passed along the Burdekin River and down the Lynd and Mitchell rivers to near



Stratford Creek and Cooper's Creek and penetrated well into the central  
area of Australia.

In 1833 E. John Byrne with a native boy called Willie set out from  
Sydney and travelled through twelve hundred miles of wilderness and desert  
to St. Vincent Gulf. From there they journeyed to Byrne's sheep-ranch which  
was one hundred and fifty miles north of Adelaide. They set out from the  
ranch and explored the Flinders Range, climbed Mount Byrne, and saw Lake  
Torrens. They also explored the Lincoln Peninsula. In 1841 Byrne decided  
on a western journey. Accompanied by John Barker and three natives, he  
started from Mount Arden at the head of Spencer Gulf and went to Stirling  
Bay. He had limited provisions and equipment, and was undoubtedly rash  
in determining to follow the south coast of Australia around the Great  
Australian Bight. The party pushed on, and passed Fowler's Bay. Provisions  
 dwindled rapidly and six hundred miles of unexplored coast lay before  
them. The party suffered greatly from thirst and hunger, and a few weeks  
later Barker was murdered by two of the natives who fled. Byrne still  
pushed on until his supplies were completely exhausted. He finally  
sighted a ship that was passing near the shore. He renewed his provisions  
and continued his journey. At last he reached Albany on the southwest  
coast, and revealed the difficult and forbidding character of the north  
Australian coast, and limited the settled areas of the east with those of  
the west.

In 1844 Dr. Ludwig Leichhardt extended the exploration of the  
northeastern section of Australia. He started from Moreton Bay in the  
centre of the east coast, and journeyed to the headwaters of the Condamine  
River. He then travelled parallel to the north-east coast. He passed  
along the Burdekin River and down the Lynd and Mitchell rivers to near



the eastern shore of the Gulf of Carpentaria. He passed around the Gulf and journeyed to Port Essington on the extreme northern coast. His journey covered about three-thousand miles. In 1846 he tried to cross Australia from east to west, but he was never heard of again.

In 1855 A.C. Gregory started on the Victoria River and journeyed southward by way of Sturt Creek through Western Australia and Northern Territory to the region of Mountains which are called the McDonnell Range and Central Mount Stuart. In 1858 he skirted the Gulf of Carpentaria on a route very similar to that followed by Dr. Leichhardt.

In general up to 1858 knowledge of Australia was confined to the coast-line and to some of the readily accessible rivers. However, the southeastern section of Australia was an exception because it had been crossed and recrossed in a number of directions, and already it was supporting a large pioneer population. The interior was known in a very limited fashion through Sturt's last journey. The explorations that had been made had given an understanding of the important characteristics of at least part of the outer rim of the continent. The great interior of the continent remained untraversed and unexplored, and the western sea-board was explored during and after the time mentioned.

Between 1840 and 1858 A. C. Gregory and his brother, F.T. Gregory explored in Western Australia. They made a number of circuits north from Perth. F. t. Gregory followed the courses of the De Grey, Fortescue, Lyons, and Gascoyne Rivers.

In 1860 The first crossing of Australia from south to north was made by R. O'H. Burke, W. J. Wills, and King. They outfitted an elaborate expedition at public expense. It was even supplied with a



the eastern shore of the Gulf of Carpentaria. He passed around the Gulf and journeyed to Port Essington on the extreme northern coast. His journey covered about three-thousand miles. In 1845 he tried to cross Australia from east to west, but he was never heard of again.

In 1855 A. G. Gregory started on the Victoria River and journeyed northward by way of Stuart Creek through Western Australia and Northern Territory to the region of mountains which are called the McDonnell Range and Central Mount Stuart. In 1858 he skirted the Gulf of Carpentaria on a route very similar to that followed by Dr. Leichhardt.

In general up to 1858 knowledge of Australia was confined to the coast-line and to some of the readily accessible rivers. However, the southeastern section of Australia was an exception because it had been crossed and traversed in a number of directions, and already it was supporting a large pioneer population. The interior was known in a very limited fashion through Stuart's last journey. The explorations that had been made had given an understanding of the important characteristics of at least part of the outer rim of the continent. The great interior of the continent remained untraversed and unexplored, and the western sea-board was explored during and after the time mentioned.

Between 1840 and 1858 A. G. Gregory and his brother, E. T. Gregory explored in Western Australia. They made a number of circuits north from Perth. E. T. Gregory followed the courses of the De Grey, Fortescue, Lyons, and Gascoyne Rivers.

In 1860 the first crossing of Australia from south to north was made by E. O'H. Barker, W. J. Wills, and King. They enlisted an elaborate expedition at public expense. It was even supplied with a



caravan of camels imported from Peshawar in India, horses, and ample provisions. The expedition travelled from Melbourne in the south to the Gulf of Carpentaria in the north. While the expedition was returning, Burke and Wills perished, but King was cared for by the natives. Important discoveries were made by the parties which were sent to hunt for the missing explorers.

In 1860 J. M. Stuart started to explore central Australia, and he intended ~~to~~ to make a complete transcontinental journey. On his first trip he started from Adelaide, passed around Lake Eyre by the west, discovered, and named the MacDonnell Mountains. Farther north he discovered the solitary, central mountain that is now named Mount Stuart. In 1861 he journeyed still farther north, but he ran short of provisions and water, and had to return. In 1862 he made his third and successful trip which brought him out by way of the Adelaide River on the extreme north coast. A telegraph line has been erected along this route, and it connects Adelaide with Port Darwin.

In 1874 John Forrest explored considerable of Western Australia. He also crossed the great central desert from west to east.

In 1873 P. E. Warburton travelled from Alice Springs westward to the coast.

In 1875 Giles journeyed across the southern section.

It might be said that 1875 marked the end of pioneer days in interior exploration of Australia, but exploration on a minor scale has continued in the country up to the present time, and scientific surveys are still in the process of development. There are many small sections that are still uninvestigated, but the general features of the continent are fairly well known.



caravan of camels imported from Baghdad in India, horses, and ample provisions. The expedition travelled from Melbourne in the south to the Gulf of Carpentaria in the north. While the expedition was returning, Burke and Wills perished, but King was saved for by the natives. Important discoveries were made by the parties which were sent to hunt for the missing explorers.

In 1860 J. M. Stuart started to explore central Australia, and he intended him to make a complete transcontinental journey. On his first trip he started from Adelaide, passed around Lake Eyre by the west, discovered, and named the MacDonnell Mountains. Further north he discovered the solitary, central mountain that is now named Mount Stuart. In 1861 he journeyed still further north, but he ran short of provisions and water, and had to return. In 1862 he made his third and successful trip which brought him out by way of the Adelaide River on the extreme north coast. A telegraph line has been erected along this route, and it connects Adelaide with Port Darwin.

In 1874 John Forrest explored considerable of Western Australia. He also crossed the great central desert from west to east. In 1875 P. E. Harpurton travelled from Alice Springs westward to the coast. In 1875 Alice journeyed across the southern section. It might be said that 1875 marked the end of pioneer days in interior exploration of Australia, but exploration on a minor scale has continued in the country up to the present time, and scientific surveys are still in the process of development. There are many small sections that are still uninvestigated, but the general features of the continent are fairly well known.



In 1923 Terry crossed Northern Australia from East to West in an old Ford car. In places it was necessary for him to use a pick and shovel before he could proceed. It took him twelve days to cover one rough stretch of country that was a distance of eighty miles. In 1928 he set out again with two six-wheeled motor trucks. On this trip he travelled a distance of 5,500 miles. 2000 miles of this was across unknown trackless country. The first journey was made across Northern Australia, but the second was from Port Holland to Melbourne.

SUMMARY RE- INTERIOR EXPLORATION:

DATES	EXPLORERS	REMARKS
1813.....	Gregory Blaxland.....	He travelled from Sydney through the Blue Mountains to the Bathurst Plain in New South Wales.
1823.....	John Oxley.....	He explored the Brisbane River in Queensland.
1828-44...	John Sturt.....	He explored the Macquaire River, Darling, Murrumbidgee, Murray,
1831-1834.	Major T. Mitchell...	Eastern Australia.
1839-41...	E. John Eyre.....	He travelled from Sydney to Adelaide, Flinders Range, Mount Eyre, Lake Torrens, Lincoln Peninsula, Spencer Gulf, Streaky Bay, Fowler's Bay, Around Great Australian Bight to Albany.
1844.....	Dr. Ludwig Leichhardt..	He travelled from Moreton Bay up the Condamine River, Burdekin R., L Lund and Mitchell R, Gulf of Carpentaria, to Port Essington .
1846-56...	F. T. Gregory.....	West coast, De Grey, Portescue, Lyons, Gascoyne R.
1855-6....	A. C. Gregory.....	Victoria R, Sturt Creek, MacDonnell Range, Mount Stuart, around Gulf of Carpentaria.
1860.....	Burke, Wills, King...	Melbourne, Darling R, Cooper Creek, Burke Creek, to G. of Carpentaria.
1860,1,2..	J. M. Stuart.....	Adelaide, Lake Eyre, MacDonnell Mt. Adelaide R. to Port Darwin.
1873.....	P.E. Warburton.....	Alice Springs across northern part of desert.
1874.....	John Forrest.....	Across the central part of the desert.
1875.....	Giles.....	Across the southern part of the desert.



# GERMANY IN - INTERIOR EXPLORATION

DATE	EXPLORER	REMARKS
1813	Gregory Blaxland	He travelled from Sydney through the Blue Mountains to the Bathurst Plain in New South Wales.
1823	John Oxley	He explored the Brisbane River in Queensland.
1828-44	John Stuart	He explored the Macintyre River, Darling, Murrumbidgee, Murray, Eastern Australia.
1831-1834	Major T. Mitchell	He travelled from Sydney to Adelaide, Flinders Range, Mount Eyre, Lake Torrens, Lincoln Peninsula, Spencer Gulf, Streaky Bay, Fowler's Bay.
1833-41	R. John Hyde	Around Great Australian Bight to Albany.
1844	Dr. Ludwig Leichhardt	He travelled from Moreton Bay up the Condamine River, Burdekin R., and Mitchell R. Gulf of Carpentaria, to Port Macquarie.
1853-54	P. T. Gregory	West coast, De Grey, Fortescue, Lyons, Gascoyne R.
1855-56	A. C. Gregory	Victoria R., Stuart Creek, Macdonald Range, Mount Stuart, around Gulf of Carpentaria.
1860	James Wills, King	McIntyre, Darling R., Cooper Creek, Burke Creek, to G. of Carpentaria.
1860, 1861	J. M. Stuart	Adelaide, Lake Eyre, Macdonald Mt. Adelaide R. to Port Darwin.
1873	F. K. Waples	Alice Springs across northern part of desert.
1874	John Forrest	Across the central part of the desert.
1875	Glenn	Across the southern part of the desert.

In 1823 Ferry crossed Northern Australia from East to West in an old Ford car. In places it was necessary for him to use a pick and shovel before he could proceed. It took him twelve days to cover one rough stretch of country that was a distance of eighty miles. In 1928 he set out again with two six-wheeled motor trucks. On this trip he travelled a distance of 5,500 miles. 2000 miles of this was across unknown trackless country. The first journey was made across Northern Australia, but the second was from Port Holland to Melbourne.



## THE DISCOVERY OF GOLD AND ASSOCIATED DEVELOPMENTS:

In 1851 Edward Hargreaves discovered gold at Summerhill Creek twenty miles north of Bathurst in New South Wales. In the same year gold was discovered at Ballarat and Bendigo in Victoria. The discovery of this precious metal marked the turning point in the history of Australia. Some had known of the presence of gold in these sections, but they did not advertise the fact because they were afraid that a gold-rush would occur. That would have taken workers away from the enterprises that were being developed, and disorders would have occurred among the convicts if they had heard about a stampede.

The authorities knew that the gold rush in California had taken a great many men away from Australia. That caused a decrease in development, and a number of undesirable characters left the country. They also knew that announcing that gold had been discovered would have had a tendency to attract a number of undesirable citizens. The government finally advertised that gold had been found, and encouraged the looking for precious metals. Rewards were offered to those who could find large deposits. This resulted in the discovery of gold in a number of places, and a number of gold rushes resulted.

In 1852 Victoria became the leading gold producing state. Its population increased rapidly. At least two-thousand persons a week entered the state by way of Melbourne. The people living in Tasmania and South Wales soon found that it was quite profitable for them to supply food and other necessities for those going to Victoria. The gold fields of Victoria proved to be very rich. Between 1851 and 1860 ~~between~~ gold valued at £80,000,000 was taken out. Part of this was obtained by surface-mining, but after 1855 machinery was used. During this gold



THE DISCOVERY OF GOLD AND ASSOCIATED DEVELOPMENTS:

In 1851 Edward Hargraves discovered gold at Summerhill Creek twenty miles north of Bathurst in New South Wales. In the same year gold was discovered at Ballarat and Bendigo in Victoria. The discovery of these precious metals marked the turning point in the history of Australia. Some had known of the presence of gold in these sections, but they did not advertise the fact because they were afraid that a gold-rush would occur. That would have taken workers away from the enterprises that were being developed, and disorders would have occurred among the convicts if they had heard about a stampede.

The authorities knew that the gold rush in California had taken a great many men away from Australia. That caused a decrease in development, and a number of undesirable characters left the country. They also knew that announcing that gold had been discovered would have had a tendency to attract a number of undesirable citizens. The government finally advertised that gold had been found, and encouraged the looking for precious metals. Rewards were offered to those who could find large deposits. This resulted in the discovery of gold in a number of places, and a number of gold rushes resulted.

In 1853 Victoria became the leading gold producing state. Its population increased rapidly. At least two thousand persons a week entered the state by way of Melbourne. The people living in Tasmania and South Wales soon found that it was quite profitable for them to supply food and other necessities for those going to Victoria. The gold fields of Victoria proved to be very rich. Between 1851 and 1860 between gold valued at 180,000,000 was taken out. Part of this was obtained by surface-mining, but after 1855 machinery was used. During this gold



rush flour cost £4 for each hundred pounds.

In 1860 gold rushes occurred in Queensland. In 1892 gold was discovered at Kalgoorlie in Western Australia. Since then £70,000,000 have been taken out. In addition to gold, rich deposits of coal, copper, silver, lead, and tin were found in Northern Australia. In 1932 there was a gold rush to the Granites near Alice Springs in the Northern Territory. It is striking to note that the important discoveries of gold in Australia occurred during periods of depression. The first gold strike occurred at Ballarat between 1849 and 1852; the one at Kalgoorlie between 1892 and 1894, and the one at the Granites in 1932. The years indicated were years of depression in the Southern Continent.

The discovery of gold gave employment to a great many men. It opened up the country, and enriched the government. It also increased the demand for improvements and developments in the country. Two outstanding nuggets have been found in Australia. One nugget was eighteen inches in length and weighed over one-hundred pounds, and The Welcome Nugget weighed over one-hundred and eighty-four pounds.

---

The mining regions discovered in Victoria were at Summerhill Creek twenty miles north of Bathurst; at Andreson's Creek near Melbourne; at Ballarat seventy-five miles north-west of Melbourne, and at Bendigo.

---

#### THE BUSHRANGERS:

These were also known as "The Fly in the Ointment." They were individuals who found out that it was easier to live by robbery and murder than to work for an honest living. They were desperadoes and



was four cost 14 for each hundred pounds.

In 1850 gold rushes occurred in Queensland. In 1852 gold was discovered at Kalgoorlie in Western Australia. Since then 276,000,000 have been taken out. In addition to gold, rich deposits of coal, copper, silver, lead, and tin were found in Northern Australia. In 1852 there was a gold rush to the Granites near Alice Springs in the Northern Territory. It is striking to note that the important discoveries of gold in Australia occurred during periods of depression. The first gold strike occurred at Ballarat between 1849 and 1852; the one at Kalgoorlie between 1892 and 1894, and the one at the Granites in 1932. The years indicated were years of depression in the Southern Continent. The discovery of gold gave employment to a great many men. It opened up the country, and enriched the Government. It also increased the demand for improvements and developments in the country. Two outstanding nuggets have been found in Australia. One nugget was eighteen inches in length and weighed over one hundred pounds, and the Wolseley nugget weighed over one hundred and eighty-four pounds.

The mining regions discovered in Victoria were at Summerhill, Ballarat, and Bendigo. At Bendigo, at Ballarat, and at Melbourne, at Ballarat seventy-five miles north-west of Melbourne, and at Ballarat twenty miles north of Ballarat; at Anderson's Creek near Melbourne.

#### THE MUCKAMORETS

These were also known as "The Fly in the Ointment." They were individuals who found out that it was easier to live by robbery and murder than to work for an honest living. They were desperadoes and



escaped convicts who, singly or in bands, terrorized the rest of the populace. Sometimes the bands were composed of as many as a hundred individuals. They would ride to a community where they would rob and kill the people, destroy the buildings, and retire to their hideouts.

The bands were even worse in Tasmania than in Australia. At times they even attacked the constables or the soldiers. Part of these bands were dispersed, and a number of their members were killed or hanged.

With the discovery of gold bushranging increased. Thousands of robberies were committed, and at times even piracy was attempted. This evil persisted in Australia for a considerable time, but it was finally stamped out. An interesting account of Bushranging in Australia is contained in the book "The Broad Arrow" by William MacLeod Raine. It tells about a man who had been transported to Australia as a felon. He was embittered by the harshness of a brutal penal code. He escaped from his imprisonment and became a "Robin Hood" among the outlaw Bushrangers. He eventually proved his innocence and found happiness.

---

#### PROGRESS AND DEVELOPMENT OF AUSTRALIA BETWEEN 1824 and 1927:

In 1824 the system of making land-grants in Australia was discontinued, and all land was sold at a minimum of five shillings per acre. This was later increased to twelve shillings, and later still it was increased to £1 per acre. Individual purchases were limited to 4000 acres.

A nominated Legislative Council was selected in New South Wales to advise the governor and to pass bills. In 1830 military rule was abolished; the press was made free, and trial by jury was established.



escaped convicts who, singly or in bands, terrorized the rest of the population. Sometimes the bands were composed of as many as a hundred individuals. They would ride to a community where they would rob and kill the people, destroy the buildings, and retire to their hideouts. The bands were even worse in Tasmania than in Australia. At times they even attacked the constables or the soldiers. Part of these bands were dispersed, and a number of their members were killed or hanged.

With the discovery of gold mining increased. Thousands of robberies were committed, and at times even piracy was attempted. This evil persisted in Australia for a considerable time, but it was finally stamped out. An interesting account of bushranging in Australia is contained in the book "The Broad Arrow" by William MacLeod Raine. It tells about a man who had been transported to Australia as a felon. He was captured by the police and a partial pardon given. He escaped from his imprisonment and became a "Robin Hood" among the outlaw bushrangers. He eventually proved his innocence and found happiness.

#### PROGRESS AND DEVELOPMENT OF AUSTRALIA BETWEEN 1824 AND 1827:

In 1824 the system of making land-grants in Australia was discontinued, and all land was sold at a minimum of five shillings per acre. This was later increased to twelve shillings, and later still it was increased to 21 per acre. Individual purchases were limited to 4000 acres. A nominated Legislative Council was selected in New South Wales to advise the governor and to pass bills. In 1830 military rule was abolished; the press was made free, and trial by jury was established.



In 1840 the transportation of convicts to New South Wales was discontinued. In 1850 provisions were made so that each colony could set up a responsible government. In 1850 the first railways were built. State jealousies caused a great mistake to be made. Each state built lines of different gauges, and now it will cost about £100,000,000 before the mistake is rectified. Between 1850 and 1855 New South Wales, South Australia, Victoria, and Tasmania each established a responsible government of its own.

In 1853 The Australian Ballot was first used in Victoria. The introduction of camels helped in the exploration of the interior of Western and Central Australia. In 1859 Queensland separated from New South Wales. The American Civil War 1861-1865 caused a cotton-growing boom in Australia--particularly in Queensland. This helped to start the state of Queensland on the road to prosperity.

From 1861 to 1901 each colony was separated from New South Wales and became independent, but after 1885 there was a Federal Council with an advisory capacity only. It was composed of representatives from each of the states that wished to participate.

In 1863 the transportation of convicts to Western Australia was discontinued. This meant that the land-owners had to rely on help that was available within the country rather than on imported felons.

In 1901 Australia became a Commonwealth. It was specified that the capital must be in New South Wales, and that it must be at least one-hundred miles from Sydney. Canberra was eventually chosen in 1908, but it did not actually become the capital until 1927.

In early days communication with England was very slow.



In 1840 the transportation of convicts to New South Wales

was discontinued. In 1850 provisions were made so that each colony could

set up a responsible government. In 1850 the first railways were built.

State legislatures caused a great mistake to be made. Each state built lines

of different gauges, and now it will cost about £100,000,000 before the

mistake is rectified. Between 1850 and 1855 New South Wales, South

Australia, Victoria, and Tasmania each established a responsible govern-

ment of its own.

In 1855 The Australian Ballot was first used in Victoria. The

introduction of canals helped in the exploration of the interior of

Western and Central Australia. In 1859 Queensland separated from New

South Wales. The American Civil War 1861-1865 caused a cotton-growing

boom in Australia--particularly in Queensland. This helped to start the

state of Queensland on the road to prosperity.

From 1861 to 1901 each colony was separated from New South

Wales and became independent, but after 1885 there was a Federal Council

with an advisory capacity only. It was composed of representatives from

each of the states that wished to participate.

In 1868 the transportation of convicts to Western Australia

was discontinued. This meant that the land-owners had to rely on help

that was available within the country rather than on imported felons.

In 1901 Australia became a Commonwealth. It was specified

that the capital must be in New South Wales, and that it must be at

least one-hundred miles from Sydney. Canberra was eventually chosen

in 1908, but it did not actually become the capital until 1927.

In early days communication with England was very slow.



Some boats made the trip in four months, while others took eight months or more to make it. Improvements in sailing vessels resulted in clippers making the journey in less than seventy days. The opening of the Suez Canal in 1869 provided a new and shorter route. The opening of the Panama Canal in 1919 shortened the distance between Eastern America and Australia.

A telegraph line 1,970 miles long was built from Adelaide to Port Darwin through much unknown and unsettled country. In 1871 Australia was linked to Java by cable, and in 1902 a cable was laid from Brisbane in Queensland to Vancouver in Canada.

#### THE ADMINISTRATION OF AFFAIRS:

Each state in the Commonwealth has a form of responsible government. The Australian constitution resembles that of Canada. Federal rights are specified, and the remaining rights belong to the individual states. There is a Governor-General appointed to represent the king. The Duke of Kent as appointed to the post prior to the out-break of the Second World Conflict. Then the appointment was cancelled, and Alexander Gore Arkright was the Governor-General until November of 1943.

The Federal Legislature consists of a Senate with six members from each state. The states also send members to the House of Representatives in proportion to their population. The Federal Parliament controls trade, customs, defence, telegraph, railways, shipping, light-houses, finance, and currency.

Each State Parliament is made up of a Legislative Council and a Legislative Assembly. Each parliament has its Prime Minister and cabinet as well as a Governor to represent the king. Each state manages



Some boats made the trip in four months, while others took eight months or more to make it. Improvements in sailing vessels resulted in clipper making the journey in less than seventy days. The opening of the Canal in 1859 provided a new and shorter route. The opening of the

Panama Canal in 1919 shortened the distance between Eastern America and Australia.

A telegraph line 1,970 miles long was built from Adelaide to Port Darwin through much unknown and unsettled country. In 1871 Australia was linked to Java by cable, and in 1902 a cable was laid from Brisbane in Queensland to Vancouver in Canada.

#### THE ADMINISTRATION OF AFFAIRS:

Each state in the Commonwealth has a form of responsible government. The Australian constitution resembles that of Canada. Federal rights are specified, and the remaining rights belong to the individual states. There is a Governor-General appointed to represent the king. The Duke of Kent was appointed to the post prior to the outbreak of the Second World Conflict. Then the appointment was cancelled, and Alexander Gore Arlwright was the Governor-General until November of 1945. The Federal Legislature consists of a Senate with six members

from each state. The states also send members to the House of Representatives in proportion to their population. The Federal Parliament controls trade, customs, defence, telegraph, railways, shipping, light-houses, finance, and currency.

Each State Parliament is made up of a Legislative Council and a Legislative Assembly. Each parliament has its Prime Minister and cabinet as well as a Governor to represent the king. Each state manages



its own local affairs as well as development and improvements.

#### THE POLITICAL AND SOCIAL PROBLEMS:

These include the keeping of Australia white; the need of increased population; the question of transportation; the effects of the depression of the 1930's; and the Second World War. There are a number of factors associated with each of the topics listed above, and they are to be dealt with under the individual headings.

#### THE KEEPING OF AUSTRALIA WHITE:

One of Australia's present day problems is to keep Australia white. Chinese, Japanese, Malays, and Hindus from India want to settle in the country, and the authorities wonder just how long they can bar them from the country. The northern part of the country is too tropical for settlement by the whites, and it is into these regions that the Orientals want to be permitted to move. Australia does not want the people of the yellow race because their standard of living is too low. It is acknowledged that they provide cheap labour, but this would destroy the need for machinery, and would ultimately leave the whites in the position of overseers with vast numbers of coolies under them.

#### THE NEED OF INCREASED POPULATION:

Australia is about three-quarters the size of Canada, and has a population of about 7,000,000. Increased population would mean increased development of the country, and would mean that production would have to be increased to help look after the requirements of the people. At the present time Australia has about <sup>24,000</sup> 2,400 factories, but more are required. There are sufficient industries in the country to warrant



its own local affairs as well as development and improvements.

#### THE POLITICAL AND SOCIAL PROBLEMS:

These include the keeping of Australia white; the need of

increased population; the question of transportation; the effects of the

depression of the 1930's; and the Second World War. There are a number

of factors associated with each of the topics listed above, and they

are to be dealt with under the individual headings.

#### THE KEEPING AUSTRALIA WHITE:

One of Australia's present day problems is to keep Australia

white. Chinese, Japanese, Malays, and Hindus from India want to settle

in the country, and the authorities wonder just how long they can bar

them from the country. The northern part of the country is too tropical

for settlement by the whites, and it is into these regions that the

Orientals want to be permitted to move. Australia does not want the

people of the yellow race because their standard of living is too low.

It is acknowledged that they provide cheap labour, but this would

destroy the need for machinery, and would ultimately leave the whites

in the position of overcast with vast numbers of coolies under them.

#### THE NEED OF INCREASED POPULATION:

Australia is about three-quarters the size of Canada, and has

a population of about 7,000,000. Increased population would mean increased

development of the country, and would mean that production would have

to be increased to help look after the requirements of the people. At

the present time Australia has about 2,400 factories, but more are

required. There are sufficient industries in the country to warrant



that a great many more workers could become established there.

#### THE QUESTION OF TRANSPORTATION:

Each state has its own railway gauge. This was the result of state jealousies, and will cost the Federal Government £100,000,000 before it is rectified. Motor roads have been established in some parts, but a great many more are needed. There is a great deal of desert to be conquered, but camels are used in some sections. The camels provide the best means of crossing the sandy wastes. A system of air transportation is being established, but it will be some time before it is perfected.

#### THE EFFECTS OF THE DEPRESSIONS:

There have been three major depressions in the history of Australia. The first occurred between 1849 and 1852; the second between 1892 and 1894; and the third between 1930 and 1935. Each depression caused a number of individuals to lose their employment. Then the government offered rewards for the discovery of rich mineral deposits, and a number of them have been discovered. These ultimately gave employment to a great many, and increased the demands for development and improvement.

#### THE SECOND WORLD WAR....1939-1945.

The Australian Government pledged assistance to the Allies in this conflict. Then the Labour Party in New South Wales issued a demand that Australia withdraw from the conflict, and that hostilities against Russia cease. The Federal Government refused to consider the demands issued by New South Wales, and by May 17, 1940 two contingents of Australian troops landed in the vicinity of the Suez Canal. Since



that a great many more workers could become established there.

#### THE QUESTION OF TRANSPORTATION:

Each state has its own railway gauge. This was the result of state jealousies, and will cost the Federal Government \$100,000,000 before it is rectified. Motor roads have been established in some parts, but a great many more are needed. There is a great deal of desert to be conquered, but canals are used in some sections. The canals provide the best means of crossing the sandy wastes. A system of air transportation is being established, but it will be some time before it is perfected.

#### THE EFFECTS OF THE DEPRESSIONS:

There have been three major depressions in the history of Australia. The first occurred between 1849 and 1852; the second between 1892 and 1894; and the third between 1930 and 1932. Each depression caused a number of individuals to lose their employment. Then the government offered rewards for the discovery of rich mineral deposits, and a number of them have been discovered. These ultimately gave employment to a great many, and increased the demands for development and improvement.

#### THE SECOND WORLD WAR... 1939-1945.

The Australian Government pledged assistance to the Allies in this conflict. Then the Labour Party in New South Wales issued a demand that Australia withdraw from the conflict, and that hostilities against Russia cease. The Federal Government refused to consider the demands issued by New South Wales, and by May 17, 1940 two contingents of Australian troops landed in the vicinity of the Suez Canal. Since



then soldiers of the Southern Continent helped the Allies win the victory in Europe and Japan by their whole-hearted co-operation in various theatres of war. Australian troops received air-training in Canada, and afterwards they saw service wherever they were needed.

#### AUSTRALIA TO-DAY:

Australia is an island continent which is three-quarters the size of Canada. It has been changed from an untamed wilderness to a country that is crossed by numerous roads and railroads. Millions of acres have been turned to practical use as farms, as sheep and cattle stations, as orchards, and as factory sites. Beautiful cities, towns, and villages have been built. Schools, universities, and all other essentials of learning have been established, with the result that this country possesses remarkably good educational facilities, so that learning and culture are firmly established.

The Commonwealth of Australia is a self-governing Dominion of the British Empire. It was established as a Commonwealth in 1901 by the federation or the union of the six states---New South Wales, Victoria, Queensland, South Australia, Tasmania, and Western Australia. The population is about 7,000,000. Eighty-six per cent of the people are native born, and ninety-seven per cent of them are of British stock. English is spoken throughout the Commonwealth, but some of the three per cent also speak their native tongue.

Australia's development is only in the beginning stage. The great fertile belt around the coast is capable of sustaining a great many more people. Large tracts of the interior are arid, but much of it is suitable for stock-raising and some for cultivation. The rich mineral



then soldiers of the Southern Continent helped the Allies win the victory in Europe and Japan by their whole-hearted co-operation in various theatres of war. Australian troops received air-training in Canada, and afterwards they saw service wherever they were needed.

#### AUSTRALIA TO-DAY

Australia is an island continent which is three-quarters the size of Canada. It has been changed from an untamed wilderness to a country that is crossed by numerous roads and railways. Millions of acres have been turned to practical use as farms, as sheep and cattle stations, as orchards, and as factory sites. Beautiful cities, towns, and villages have been built. Schools, universities, and all other essentials of learning have been established, with the result that this country possesses remarkably good educational facilities, so that learning and culture are firmly established.

The Commonwealth of Australia is a self-governing Dominion of the British Empire. It was established as a Commonwealth in 1901 by the federation of the union of the six states--New South Wales, Victoria, Queensland, South Australia, Tasmania, and Western Australia. The population is about 7,000,000. Eighty-six per cent of the people are native born, and ninety-seven per cent of them are of British stock. English is spoken throughout the Commonwealth, but some of the three per cent also speak their native tongue.

Australia's development is only in the beginning stage. The great fertile belt around the coast is capable of sustaining a great many more people. Large tracts of the interior are arid, but much of it is suitable for stock-raising and some for cultivation. The rich mineral



areas are large, and it is expected that they will be extended. At the present time a systematic search is being conducted for oil.

Opportunities exist in Australia for investors, individual investments, and for people of enterprise and courage who are willing to play a part in the development of the country. The financial system is the same as that used in the British Isles..(.£, s, d.) Tariff laws are designed to afford protection to new industries which are not as yet fully established. Industrial unrest is practically unknown. During the latter part of the depression and during the war years, the time lost through strikes in Australian manufacturing industries averaged less than two-thirds of a day per annum per employee. Living costs are lower than they are in North America. There are about 24,000 factories. These make the country to a considerable extent independent of imported goods.

Australia is the greatest of all the wool-producing countries, and it is among the leaders in the output of wheat, meat, dairy products, and wines. The standard of education is high. Primary education at State schools is free and compulsory. There are secondary colleges and technical schools, and there is a university in each capital city.

Wages and working conditions are, for the most part, laid down by arbitration courts. These produce peace and stability in industry, and maintain a standard of living that is unexcelled in any part of the world. Since 1909 Australia has had a system of old age pensions.

In 1914 German New Guinea with Bismarck Archipelago was surrendered to an Australian expeditionary force, and to-day it is administered by the government of Australia. In 1917 the Australians helped the allies in the First World War near Ypres. During that war



are large, and it is expected that they will be extended. At the

present time a systematic search is being conducted for oil.

Opportunities exist in Australia for investors, individuals

investments, and for people of enterprise and courage who are willing

to play a part in the development of the country. The financial system

is the same as that used in the British Isles. (L. S. D.) Tariff laws

are designed to afford protection to new industries which are not as yet

fully established. Industrial unrest is practically unknown. During the

latter part of the depression and during the war years, the time lost

through strikes in Australian manufacturing industries averaged less

than two-thirds of a day per annum per employee. Living costs are lower

than they are in North America. There are about 24,000 factories. These

make the country to a considerable extent independent of imported goods.

Australia is the greatest of all the wool-producing countries.

and it is among the leaders in the output of wheat, meat, dairy products,

and wines. The standard of education is high. Primary education at State

schools is free and compulsory. There are secondary colleges and technical

schools, and there is a university in each capital city.

Peace and working conditions are, for the most part, fair

down by arbitration courts. These produce peace and stability in industry.

and maintain a standard of living that is unexcelled in any part of the

world. Since 1900 Australia has had a system of old age pensions.

In 1914 German New Guinea with Bismarck Archipelago was

entrusted to an Australian expeditionary force, and to-day it is

administered by the Government of Australia. In 1917 the Australians

helped the allies in the First World War near Ispahan. During that war



Australia sent 320,000 men. 60,000 of them were killed, and the war cost her £350,000,000.

In 1928 Air-commodore Kingsford Smith accomplished the first Pacific flight of 7,400 miles from Oakland, California, to Australia in "The Southern Cross." To-day Australia is producing outstanding aviators, and has established a regular air-way system.

In 1932 the Sydney Harbour Bridge was completed. It is considered "The Australian Steel Marvel." It has a span of 1,650 feet between massive piers.

From 1939 to 1945 Australian soldiers helped the Allies in the Second World War. They served in various branches of the services and in various theatres where their help was needed.

Since the cessation of hostilities this Southern Continent has helped considerably in the period of reconstruction at home and abroad.



Australia sent 320,000 men. 60,000 of them were killed, and the war cost her £250,000,000.

In 1923 Air-commodore Kingsford Smith accomplished the first Pacific flight of 7,400 miles from England, California, to Australia in "The Southern Cross." To-day Australia is producing outstanding aviators, and has established a regular air-way system.

In 1923 the Sydney Harbour Bridge was completed. It is considered "The Australian Steel Marvel." It has a span of 1,550 feet between massive piers.

From 1939 to 1945 Australian soldiers helped the Allies in the Second World War. They served in various branches of the services and in various theatres where their help was needed.

Since the cessation of hostilities this Southern Continent has helped considerably in the period of reconstruction at home and abroad.











NEW ZEALAND



1941

1941

1941

1941

1941

1941

1941

1941

1941

1941

1941

1941

1941

1941

1941

1941

1941



CONTENTS.

NEW ZEALAND.

New Zealand (Geography)

General...

Early Settlements.....Facts...

Cities.

Industries and Products.

Transportation.

New Zealand (History)

The Early Discoverers.

The Native People.

The Establishment of Settlements.

Progress in New Zealand from 1870 to 1910.

The Government.

New Zealand from 1900 to The Present.

The Relations with the Natives from 1860 to the Present.

Political and Social Problems.



CONTENTS.

NEW ZEALAND.

New Zealand (Geography)

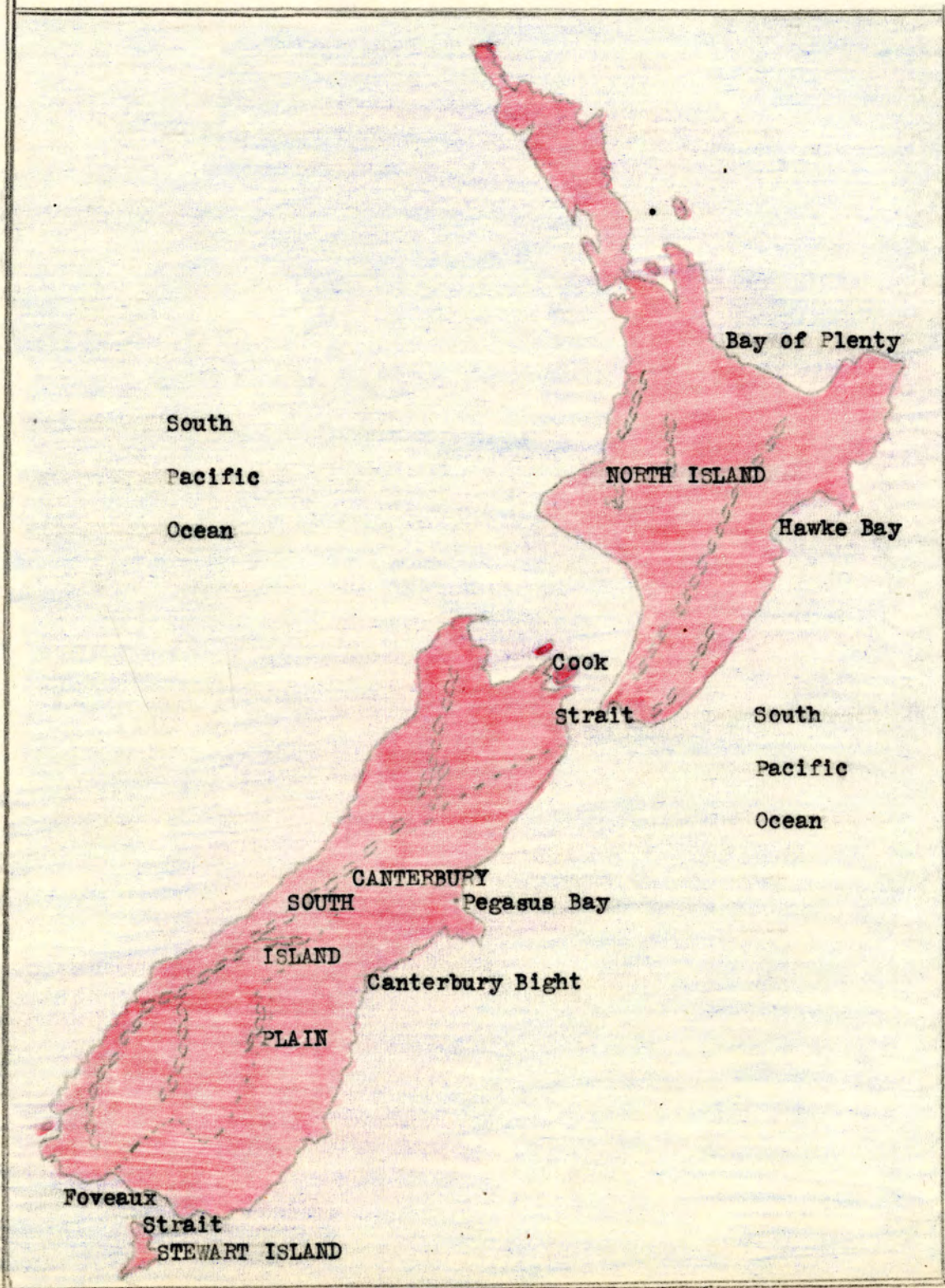
General.....  
Early Settlements.....  
Climate.....  
Industries and Products.....  
Transportation.....

New Zealand (History)

The Early Discoverers.....  
The Native People.....  
The Establishment of Settlements.....  
Progress in New Zealand from 1840 to 1910.....  
The Government.....  
New Zealand from 1900 to the Present.....  
The Relations with the Natives from 1840 to the Present.....  
Political and Social Problems.....



NEW ZEALAND..(GENERAL)









NEW ZEALAND....1642--The Present Time.

The discoverers of this continent were Abel Tasman for the Dutch in 1642, and Captain J. Cook for the British in 1769. It lies in the South Pacific Ocean, in the South Temperate Zone, and 1200 miles east of Australia. The northern latitude is 34 degrees south, and the southern latitude is 48 degrees south. The Longitude extends from 166 degrees east to 179 degrees east.

The continent of New Zealand includes North Island, South Island, Stewart Island, and smaller islands around the coast. The coast waters are South Pacific Ocean, Bay of Plenty, Hawke Bay, Cook Strait, Pegasus Bay, Canterbury Bight, and Foveaux Strait.

New Zealand is a land of mountains, lakes, and rivers. The mountains extend from the south-western tip of South Island to East Cape in North Island..a distance of 1000 miles..broken only by Cook Strait. The mountains are the Southern Alps. The south-west coast of South Island is deeply indented. The rivers are short and rapid. The mountains of North Island have pools of boiling mud. The outstanding peak is Mount Tarawera. To the east of the mountains in South Island there is the Canterbury Plain.

These islands lie in the path of the Prevailing Westerlies. The rainfall is abundant on the west coast, but every part receives a good supply. They are in the south Temperate Zone, therefore, the climate is mild and equable. The northern part enjoys a sub-tropical climate. In South Island the climate resembles that of Great Britain. That is one reason that it attracted so many immigrants from the Mother Country. The seasons are Summer during December, January and February; Autumn



The discoverers of this continent were Abel Tasman for the Dutch

in 1642, and Captain J. Cook for the British in 1769. It lies in the South Pacific Ocean, in the South Temperate Zone, and 1200 miles east of Australia. The northern latitude is 34 degrees south, and the southern latitude is 48 degrees south. The longitude extends from 166 degrees east to 179 degrees east.

The continent of New Zealand includes North Island, South Island,

Stewart Island, and smaller islands around the coast. The coast waters are South Pacific Ocean, Bay of Plenty, Hawke Bay, Cook Strait, Tasman Bay, Canterbury Bight, and Pegasus Strait.

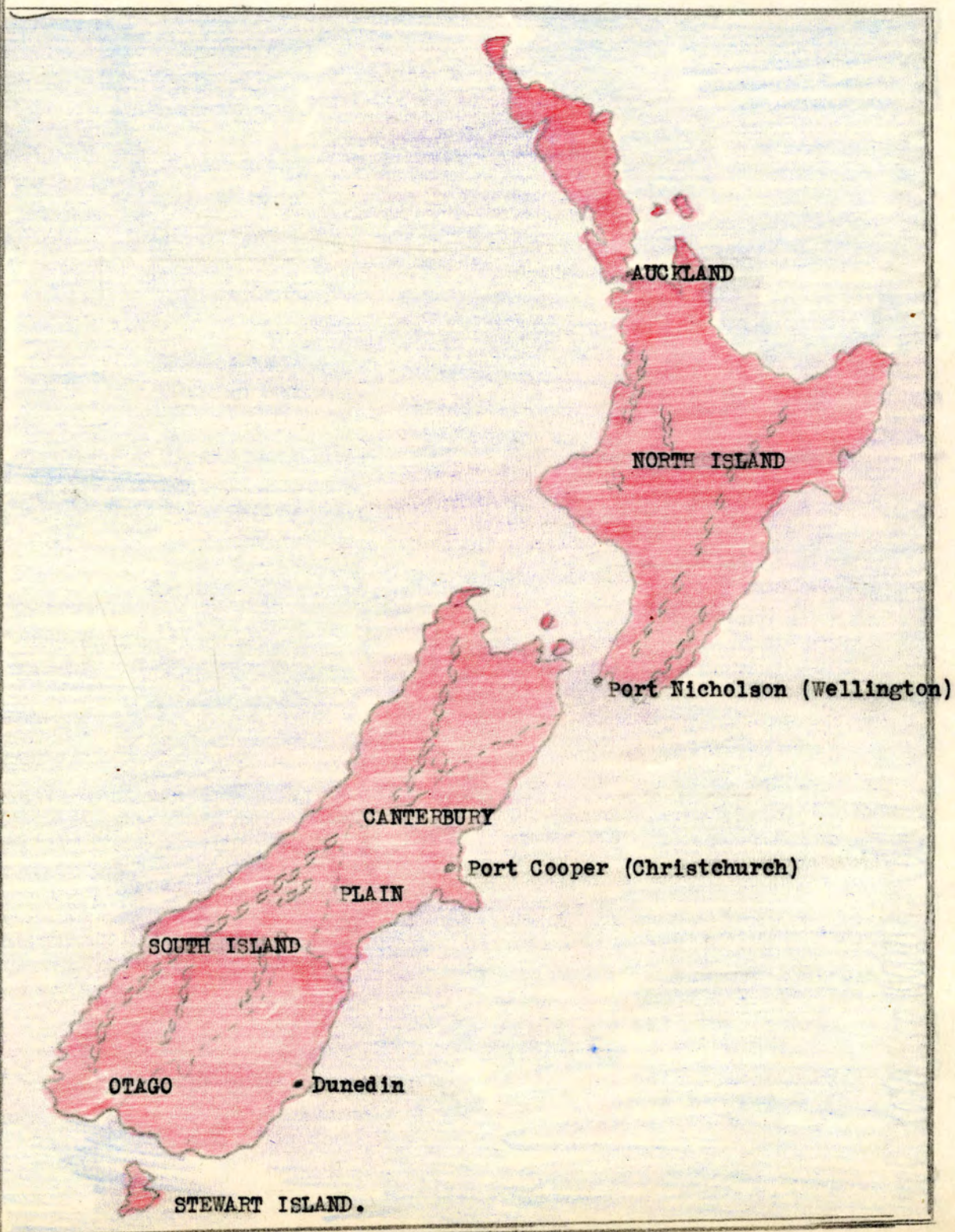
New Zealand is a land of mountains, lakes, and rivers. The mountains extend from the south-western tip of South Island to East Cape in North Island, a distance of 1000 miles, broken only by Cook Strait. The mountains are the Southern Alps. The south-west coast of South Island is deeply indented. The rivers are short and rapid. The mountains of North Island have pools of boiling mud. The outstanding peak is Mount Tararua. To the east of the mountains in South Island there is the Canterbury Plain.

These islands lie in the path of the prevailing westerlies. The

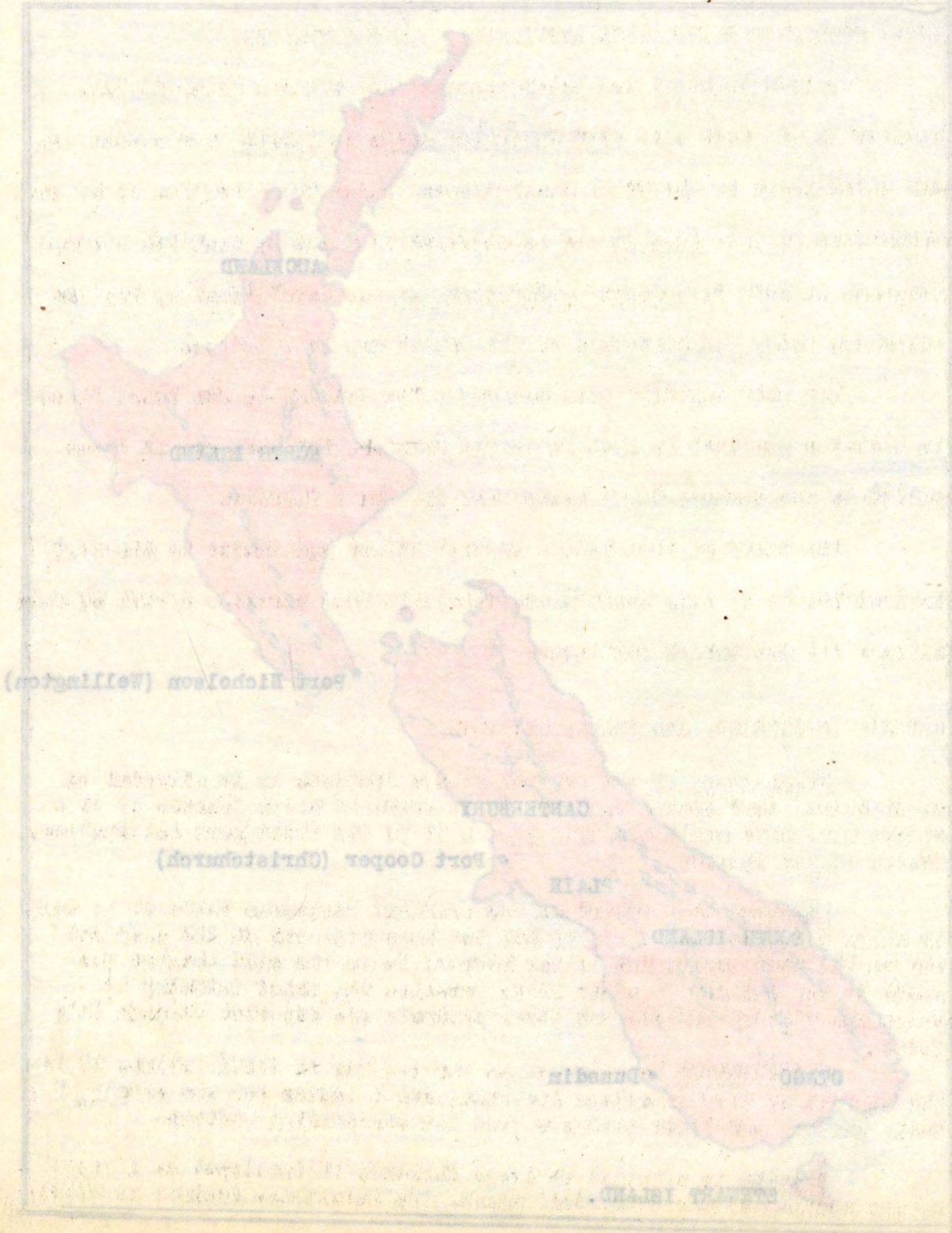
rainfall is abundant on the west coast, but every part receives a good supply. They are in the south temperate zone, therefore, the climate is mild and equable. The northern part enjoys a sub-tropical climate. In South Island the climate resembles that of Great Britain. That is one reason that it attracted so many immigrants from the Mother Country. The seasons are summer during December, January and February; autumn



NEW ZEALAND....EARLY HISTORY.









during March, April, and May; Winter during June, July, and August; and Spring during September, October, and November.

#### EARLY SETTLEMENTS AND FACTS ASSOCIATED WITH NEW ZEALAND:

In 1840 Auckland was established by the British under Captain I. Hobson. In the same year Port Nicholson where Wellington now stands was established by the New Zealand Company under the direction of Colonel Wakefield. In 1848 Danedin was established in Otago by Scottish Presbyterians. In 1850 Port Cooper---Christchurch was established by English colonists under the direction of the Canterbury Association.

The most valuable tree native to New Zealand is the Kauri Pine. It yields a gum that is used in making varnish. The best gum is found buried in the swamps. North Island has two Kauri Forests.

The range of temperature between summer and winter is scarcely noticeable. It is only about sixteendegrees. That provides a very equable climate for the entire continent.

#### CITIES: INDUSTRIES: AND TRANSPORTATION.

Wellington is the capital of New Zealand. It is situated on an excellent land-locked harbour at the south of North Island. It is a modern city with ample electric power. It is the chief port and business centre of the island.

Auckland is situated on the Auckland Peninsula where it is only six miles wide, so that the city has two harbours..one on the east and one on the west coast. The better harbour is on the east because the other is too shallow to admit large vessels. The chief industry is shipping. Timber, butter, and other products are exported through this port.

Christchurch is situated on Pagasus Bay in South Island. It is the capital of the Canterbury District, and a centre for the export of wool, mutton, and other products from the surrounding regions.

Dunedin is situated on Otago Harbour. It developed as a result of the opening of the Otago Gold mines. Its industries include refriger-



during March, April, and May; Winter during June, July, and August; and  
Spring during September, October, and November.

#### MAINTAIN SETTLEMENTS AND FACTS ASSOCIATED WITH NEW ZEALAND:

In 1840 Auckland was established by the British under Captain I.  
Hobson. In the same year Fort Nicholson where Wellington now stands was  
was established by the New Zealand Company under the direction of Colonel  
Wentworth. In 1848 Dunedin was established in Otago by Scottish Presby-  
terians. In 1850 Port Cooper--Christchurch was established by English  
colonists under the direction of the Canterbury Association.  
The most valuable tree native to New Zealand is the Kauri Pine.  
It yields a gum that is used in making varnish. The best gum is found  
buried in the swamps. North Island has two Kauri forests.  
The range of temperature between summer and winter is scarcely  
noticeable. It is only about sixteen degrees. That provides a very equable  
climate for the entire continent.

#### CITIES: INDUSTRIES: AND TRANSPORTATION.

Wellington is the capital of New Zealand. It is situated on  
an excellent land-locked harbor at the south of North Island. It is a  
modern city with ample electric power. It is the chief port and business  
centre of the island.

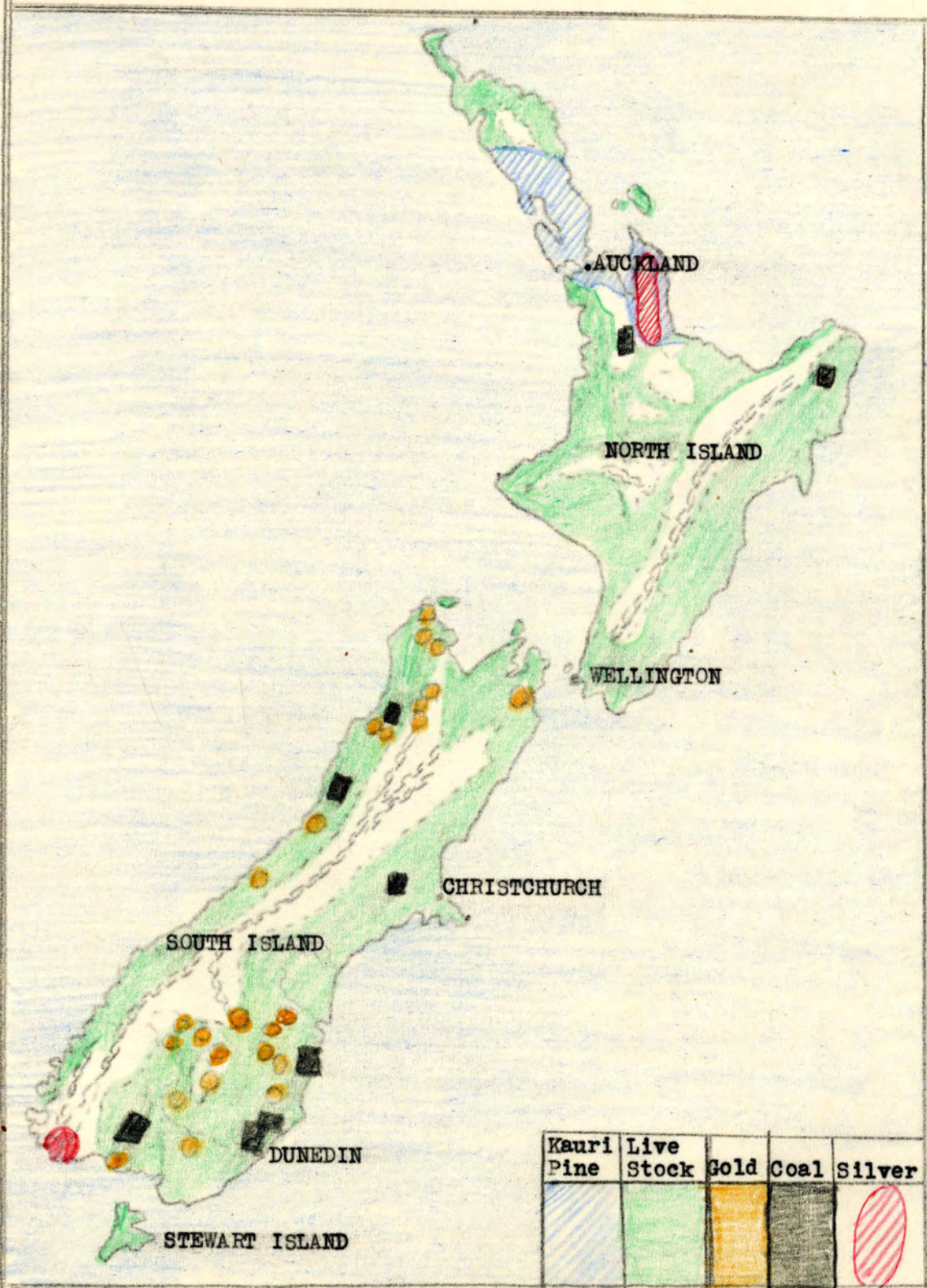
Auckland is situated on the Auckland Peninsula where it is only  
six miles wide, so that the city has two harbours--one on the east and  
one on the west coast. The better harbor is on the east because the  
other is too shallow to admit large vessels. The chief industry is  
shipping. Timber, butter, and other products are exported through this  
port.

Christchurch is situated on Pegasus Bay in South Island. It is  
the capital of the Canterbury District, and a centre for the export of  
wool, cotton, and other products from the surrounding regions.

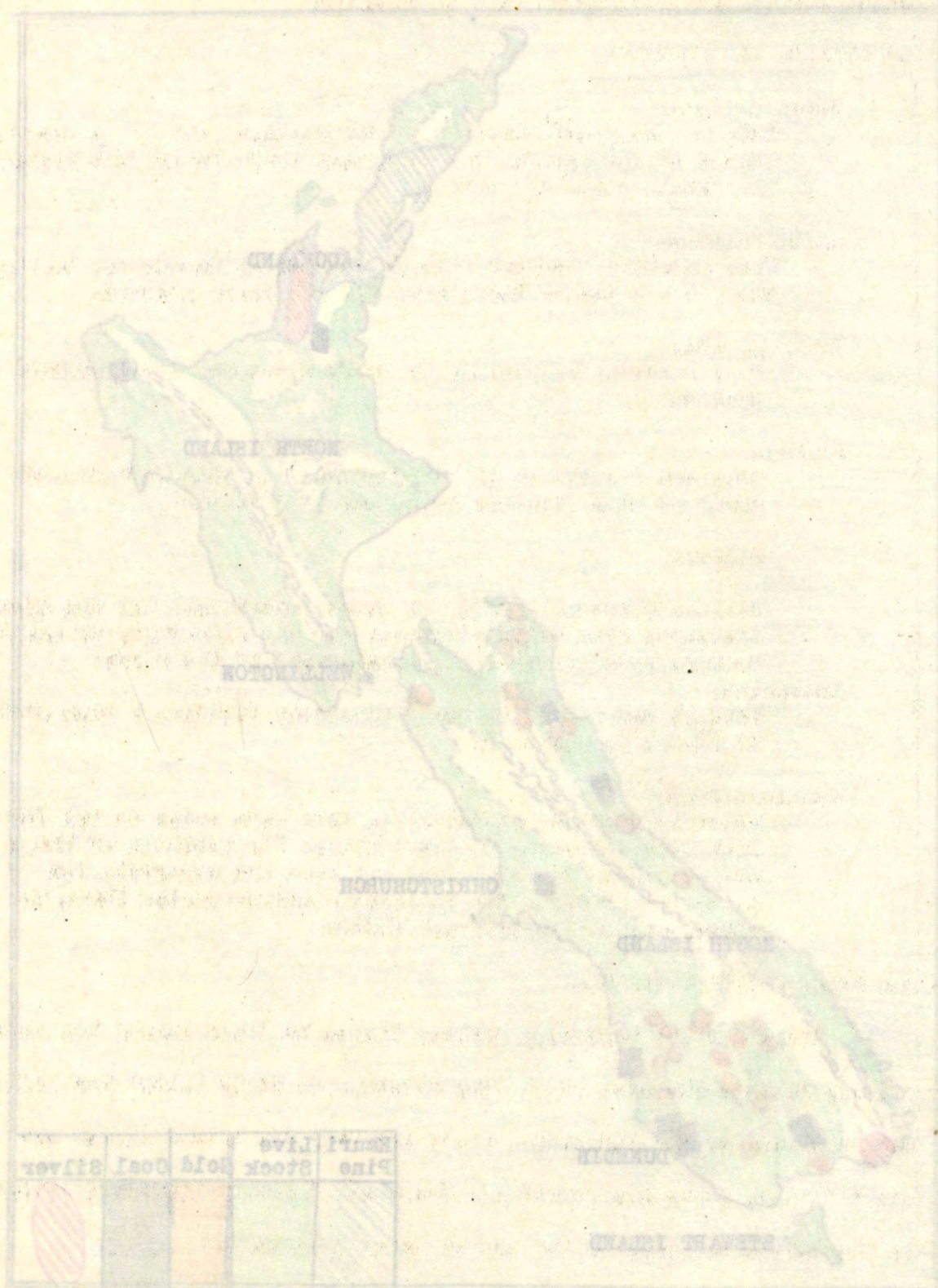
Dunedin is situated on Otago Harbor. It developed as a result  
of the opening of the Otago Gold mines. Its industries include refiner-



NEW ZEALAND.....INDUSTRIES AND PRODUCTS.









ation plants, and the manufacture of woollens.

#### INDUSTRIES AND PRODUCTS.

##### Sheep-farming.

This is the chief industry of New Zealand, and it is the main source of its wealth. The important products include Canterbury lamb, wool, and mutton.

##### Stock-raising.

This industry together with dairy-farming is growing in importance. The products include cattle and dairy produce.

##### Fruit-growing.

This industry is growing in importance. The chief product is apples.

##### Mining.

Gold was discovered in 1857. Since then over \$550,000,000 worth of this precious metal has been mined.

##### Silver.

Coal...is known to exist in large quantities, but the great distances from outside markets and the difficulty of getting workers have hindered the development of the mines.

##### Lumbering.

This is carried on in the mountainous regions. A good grade of timber is produced.

##### Manufacturing.

Recently a number of factories have been added to the few that were operating in the country. The products of these are primarily for home use, but some are exported. The principal products are woollens, leather-goods, boots and shoes, soaps, candles, and flour.

#### The TRANSPORTATION SYSTEMS:

There are two important railway lines. In South Island the chief railway follows the east coast very closely. In North Island the railway runs west of the highlands. There are very few branch lines, but the principal ports are connected. There are numerous tourist steamers on the lakes. Shipping on the sea is quite important.



ation plants, and the manufacture of woollens.

## INDUSTRIES AND PRODUCTS.

### Sheep-farming.

This is the chief industry of New Zealand, and it is the main source of its wealth. The important products include Carcase, dairy lamb, wool, and mutton.

### Stock-raising.

This industry together with dairy-farming is growing in importance. The products include cattle and dairy produce.

### Fruit-growing.

This industry is growing in importance. The chief product is apples.

### Mining.

Gold was discovered in 1857. Since then over \$250,000,000 worth of this precious metal has been mined.

### Silver.

Coal is known to exist in large quantities, but the great distances from outside markets and the difficulty of getting workers have hindered the development of the mines.

### Lumbering.

This is carried on in the mountainous regions. A good grade of timber is produced.

### Manufacturing.

Recently a number of factories have been added to the few that were operating in the country. The products of these are primarily for home use, but some are exported. The principal products are woollens, leather-goods, boots and shoes, soap, candles, and flour.

## THE TRANSPORTATION SYSTEM.

There are two important railway lines. In South Island the chief

railway follows the east coast very closely. In North Island the rail-

way runs west of the highlands. There are very few branch lines, but

the principal ports are connected. There are numerous tourist steamers

on the lakes. Shipping on the sea is quite important.



## NEW ZEALAND....1642--THE PRESENT TIME. (HISTORY)

### THE EARLY DISCOVERERS:

In 1642 Abel Tasman, a Dutch navigator, discovered the islands. He named them "New Zealand" after one of the provinces of Holland. He was repulsed while attempting to land in Massacre Bay. In 1769 Captain James Cook, an English explorer, while on his first voyage, re-discovered the islands and surveyed the coasts. In 1770 he landed at "Ship Cove" on Queen Charlotte Sound, and annexed and claimed New Zealand for the British.

### THE NATIVE PEOPLE:

They were called "Maoris." They were divided into a large number of clans each of which had its own chief, priests, and unwritten laws. There was perpetual strife between the clans, and sometimes among groups of them. They were careful farmers even though their tools were very primitive. They were good craftsmen. They made small boats, and enormous double canoes which were capable of holding one-hundred and fifty warriors, and they were excellent sailors. They built houses of timber and covered them with artistic designs. They weaved, plaited, and made feather-covered cloaks for use on state occasions. Everything that they made was elaborately covered with design. They tattooed their bodies with patterns. They were able to count and measure. They were skilled fishermen and used a variety of methods and devices. They were skilled in wood-craft and in methods of defence. They were of a high social order even before they came in contact with Europeans.

### THE ESTABLISHMENT OF SETTLEMENTS:

The first settlers were not a very desirable type, because they included escaped convicts and runaway sailors. After 1800 traders, whalers,



## NEW ZEALAND...THE PRESENT TIME. (HISTORY)

### THE EARLY DISCOVERERS:

In 1642 Abel Tasman, a Dutch navigator, discovered the islands.

He named them "New Zealand" after one of the provinces of Holland. He

was repulsed while attempting to land in Massacre Bay. In 1769 Captain

James Cook, an English explorer, while on his first voyage, re-discovered

the islands and surveyed the coasts. In 1770 he landed at "Ship Cove"

on Queen Charlotte Sound, and annexed New Zealand for the

British.

### THE NATIVE PEOPLE:

They were called "Maoris." They were divided into a large number

of clans each of which had its own chief, priests, and written laws.

There was perpetual strife between the clans, and sometimes among groups

of them. They were careful farmers even though their tools were very

primitive. They were good craftsmen. They made small boats, and enormous

double canoes which were capable of holding one-hundred and fifty warriors,

and they were excellent sailors. They built houses of timber and covered

them with artistic designs. They wove, plaited, and made leather-covered

clothes for use on state occasions. Everything that they made was elaborately

covered with design. They tattooed their bodies with patterns. They were

able to count and measure. They were skilled fishermen and used a variety

of methods and devices. They were skilled in wood-craft and in methods of

defense. They were of a high social order even before they came in con-

tact with Europeans.

### THE ESTABLISHMENT OF SETTLEMENTS:

The first settlers were not a very desirable type, because they

included escaped convicts and runaway sailors. After 1800 traders, whalers,



and sealers visited the islands. In 1814 Samuel Marsden, a trading chaplain from Sydney in Australia, took a band of missionaries from New South Wales, and started to convert the Maoris to christianity. In 1839 <sup>Edward</sup> Colonel/Wakefield urged the British government to safe-guar~~ant~~e British rights by establishing settlements in the islands when the French occupied Tahiti and were suspected of having designs on the islands, but the British refused.

In 1840 Captain James Hobson annexed New Zealand for the British, and he established the foundation of the city of Auckland. In the same year Colonel Edward Wakefield founded the New Zealand Company. He arranged for the purchase of land, and sent 1300 colonists to the islands. They landed and established a settlement at Port Nicholson, the present site of the city of Wellington.

In 1840 by the Treaty of Waitangi, the Maori chiefs accepted British sovereignty. In return they were guaranteed possession of their lands and fisheries. The colonists ignored the rights of the natives, and there were continual quarrels between them..usually on account of land.

Sir George Grey went over from Australia. He worked among the Maoris, learned their language, and discussed their problems. He bought large tracts of unoccupied land, and handed it over to the New Zealand Company for settlement. The New Zealand Company developed the settlement at Port Nicholson which is on the southern end of North Island in a land-locked crater basin surrounded by high mountains. This Company transferred the settlement from the north shore of the harbour because the natives became hostile and floods caused considerable damage.



and sealers visited the islands. In 1814 Samuel Marsden, a trading  
chaplain from Sydney in Australia, took a band of missionaries from New  
South Wales, and started to convert the Maoris to Christianity. In 1839  
Colonel Edward Wakefield urged the British government to cede-guarantee British  
rights by establishing settlements in the islands when the French occupy-  
ied Tahiti and were suspected of having designs on the islands, but the  
British refused.

In 1840 Captain James Hobson annexed New Zealand for the British,  
and he established the foundation of the city of Auckland. In the same  
year Colonel Edward Wakefield founded the New Zealand Company. He arranged  
for the purchase of land, and sent 1300 colonists to the islands. They  
landed and established a settlement at Port Nicholson, the present site  
of the city of Wellington.

In 1840 by the Treaty of Waitangi, the Maori chiefs accepted  
British sovereignty. In return they were guaranteed possession of their  
lands and fisheries. The colonists ignored the rights of the natives,  
and there were continual quarrels between them. Annually on account of  
land.

Sir George Grey went over from Australia. He worked among  
the Maoris, learned their language, and discussed their problems. He  
bought large tracts of uncultivated land, and handed it over to the New  
Zealand Company for settlement. The New Zealand Company developed the  
settlement at Port Nicholson which is on the southern end of North  
Island in a land-locked crater basin surrounded by high mountains. This  
Company transferred the settlement from the north shore of the harbour  
because the natives became hostile and floods caused considerable damage.



It was re-established on the beach and hill to the west. The town gradually expanded up the hills by terraces and on to reclaimed sea-land.

In 1848 a Scottish Colony was planned in Otago which forms the southern part of South Island, by the Otago Association which sent out a number of settlers. They established Dunedin. The settlers belonged to the Presbyterian Church of Scotland, so the Otago is the Scottish part of the Dominion.

In 1850 a ship of English settlers landed at Port Cooper... Christchurch. This settlement was established by the Canterbury Association, and they were members of the Church of England. They tried to make the place like an English Cathedral town.

In 1853 the first gold was discovered at Coromandel. In 1860 the colonists realized the possibilities of New Zealand for pasturing stock, and introduced sheep. After 1860 the discovery of gold in other sections, and the establishment of a number of industries gave a great stimulus to immigration. In 1861 Gabriel Read discovered a rich gold-bearing area at Tuapeka in the Otago.

In 1863 the colonists and the Maori held friendly negotiations at Napier on Hawke Bay. This led to the establishment of a land settlement there. In 1864 the Maori wars commenced. In 1868 Tikooti and his band of Maori convicts escaped from Chatham Island. They reached the mainland, and conducted a reign of terrorism and massacre of the white settlers around Poverty Bay. Shortly afterwards all differences were straightened out, and the country was opened up rapidly.

#### PROGRESS IN NEW ZEALAND FROM 1870 to 1910.

In 1870 the railroads of New Zealand became the property of



It was re-established on the beach and hill to the west. The town

gradually expanded up the hills by terraces and on to reclaimed sea-land.

In 1848 a Scottish Colony was planned in Otago which forms

the southern part of South Island, by the Otago Association which sent

out a number of settlers. They established Dunedin. The settlers belonged

to the Presbyterian Church of Scotland, so the Otago is the Scottish

part of the Dominion.

In 1850 a ship of English settlers landed at Port Cooper...

Christchurch. This settlement was established by the Canterbury Association.

and they were members of the Church of England. They tried to make

the place like an English Cathedral town.

In 1862 the first gold was discovered at Coromandel. In 1860

the colonists realized the possibilities of New Zealand for pasturing

stock, and introduced sheep. After 1860 the discovery of gold in other

sections, and the establishment of a number of industries gave a great

stimulus to immigration. In 1861 Gabriel Read discovered a rich gold-

bearing area at Tapanui in the Otago.

In 1862 the colonists and the Maori held friendly negotiations

at Hapier on Hawke Bay. This led to the establishment of a land settle-

ment there. In 1864 the Maori were commenced. In 1868 Tiroiti and his

band of Maori convicts escaped from Chatham Island. They reached the

mainland, and conducted a reign of terrorism and massacre of the white

settlers around Poverty Bay. Shortly afterwards all differences were

straightened out, and the country was opened up rapidly.

PROGRESS IN NEW ZEALAND FROM 1870 TO 1910.

In 1870 the railways of New Zealand became the property of



the government. In 1881 a land tax was established. This caused a number of large estates to be broken up. In 1892 the government purchased a number of large estates, and leased them in small parcels at nominal rentals. In 1893 an income tax was adopted, and women were given the right to vote for members of the General Assembly. In 1894 the government established compulsory arbitration of labour disputes. In 1898 Old age pensions were provided. In 1899 a minimum wage law was established. In 1908 property requirements were required by immigrants. In 1910 compulsory military training was established for boys between the ages of twelve and eighteen years.

#### THE GOVERNMENT:

In 1841 New Zealand was formally separated from New South Wales, and was placed under its own independent governor. In 1852 a constitution was drafted, and it received a responsible colonial government. In 1864 trouble with the natives of North Island about land gave rise to frequent Maori wars, and as late as 1866 a disturbance about land occurred. In 1865 the seat of government was removed from Auckland to Wellington. In 1890 a movement toward State Socialism became prominent.

On September 26, 1907, the Colony of New Zealand became the Dominion of New Zealand. The representative of the king is a Governor-General. There is a ministry that is responsible to the people. There is a General Assembly which is composed of two Houses..The Legislative Council and The House of Representatives.

#### NEW ZEALAND FROM 1900 to 1947:

Between 1900 and 1902 the New Zealanders helped the British



the government. In 1881 a land tax was established. This caused a number of large estates to be broken up. In 1893 the government purchased a number of large estates, and leased them in small parcels at nominal rentals. In 1893 an income tax was adopted, and women were given the right to vote for members of the General Assembly. In 1894 the government established compulsory arbitration of labour disputes. In 1898 Old age pensions were provided. In 1899 a minimum wage law was established. In 1908 property requirements were required by immigrants. In 1910 compulsory military training was established for boys between the ages of twelve and eighteen years.

#### THE GOVERNMENT

In 1841 New Zealand was formally separated from New South Wales, and was placed under its own independent governor. In 1852 a constitution was drafted, and it received a responsible colonial government. In 1864 trouble with the natives of North Island about land gave rise to frequent Maori wars, and as late as 1866 a disturbance about land occurred. In 1865 the seat of government was removed from Auckland to Wellington. In 1890 a movement toward State Socialism became prominent.

On September 26, 1907, the Colony of New Zealand became the Dominion of New Zealand. The representative of the King as a Governor-General. There is a ministry that is responsible to the people. There is a General Assembly which is composed of two Houses. The Legislative Council and The House of Representatives.

#### NEW ZEALAND FROM 1900 TO 1947

Between 1900 and 1902 the New Zealanders helped the British



in South Africa during the Boer War. From 1914 to 1918 they supported Great Britain in the First Great War. A number of their troops landed with the Allies at the Dardanelles. A New Zealand Expeditionary force seized the Bismarck Archipelago. While stationed in England for training, New Zealand troops cut a Kiwi which was one and a quarter acres in size, in the chalk hills of England to commemorate their occupation of the Sling/<sup>Military</sup>Camp at Bulford, England.

In 1923 the Otira Tunnel was completed in New Zealand. It was considered a great engineering achievement, and deals with construction of the tunnel that pierces the Southern Alps. The approaches that lead to this tunnel required considerable construction work, and when finished, led to one of the longest tunnels in the British Empire.

In 1940 New Zealand legislated conscription of man-power and wealth to help the Allies in the Second World War. Troops from this Dominion served throughout the entire period from 1939 to 1945 in various theatres of the war, and helped the allied cause considerably.

#### THE RELATIONS WITH THE NATIVES FROM 1860 to THE PRESENT:

In 1861 Lord Grey found the Maoris at War, and restored peace. In 1867 he allowed the Maori to become members of the Lower House. In 1872 he allowed them to become members of the Upper House. The Maori population to-day is about 65,000. Large districts in North Island have been reserved for their exclusive use, but there is a tendency for them to leave the reserves and adopt the white man's customs. As a result they are being absorbed in the white population. They are entering the professions, taking part in Public Affairs, and have their representatives in the Dominion Parliament. To-day they are



in South Africa during the Boer War. From 1914 to 1918 they supported Great Britain in the First Great War. A number of their troops landed with the Allies at the Dardanelles. A New Zealand Expeditionary Force sailed the Blenheim for England. While stationed in England for training, New Zealand troops cut a Kiwi which was one and a quarter acres in size, in the chalk hills of England to commemorate their occupation of the Blenheim at Bulford, England.

In 1923 the Otira Tunnel was completed in New Zealand. It was considered a great engineering achievement, and deals with construction of the tunnel that pierces the Southern Alps. The approaches that lead to this tunnel required considerable construction work, and when finished, led to one of the longest tunnels in the British Empire.

In 1940 New Zealand legislated conscription of man-power and wealth to help the Allies in the Second World War. Troops from this Dominion served throughout the entire period from 1939 to 1945 in various theatres of the war, and helped the allied cause considerably.

THE RELATIONS WITH THE NATIVES FROM 1860 TO THE PRESENT:  
In 1861 Lord Grey found the Maori at war, and restored peace. In 1867 he allowed the Maori to become members of the Lower House. In 1875 he allowed them to become members of the Upper House. The Maori population to-day is about 65,000. Large districts in North Island have been reserved for their exclusive use, but there is a tendency for them to leave the reserves and adopt the white man's customs. As a result they are being absorbed in the white population. They are entering the professions, taking part in public affairs, and have their representatives in the Dominion Parliament. To-day they are



law-abiding British subjects.

POLITICAL AND SOCIAL PROBLEMS:

These are very few because there is no racial problem, and the location of this Dominion prevents the usual trouble associated with immigration. New Zealand is a very progressive land in which a number of political and economic experiments have been made, and Old World prejudices have been cast away.



law-abiding British subjects.

# POLITICAL AND SOCIAL PROBLEMS:

There are very few because there is no racial problem, and the

location of this Dominion prevents the usual trouble associated with

immigration. New Zealand is a very progressive land in which a number

of political and economic experiments have been made, and Old World

prejudices have been cast away.











IRELAND







CONTENTS.

IRELAND.

Ireland (Geography)

General.

From Ancient Times to the Present.

Industries and Products.

Cities.

Transportation.

Trade.

Ireland (History)

Early History.

The Introduction of Christianity.

The Coming of Invaders.

The Relations between the Irish and the English.

Increasing Disaffection.

The Struggle for Better Conditions.

The Union of Ireland and England.

The Early Years of the Union.

The Demand for "Home Rule."

The Later Phases of the Home Rule Question.

Ireland and the First World War.

Since the First World War.

Ireland and the Second World War 1939-1945.

Social Conditions.

Eamon De Valera



CONTENTS

IRELAND

Ireland (Geography)

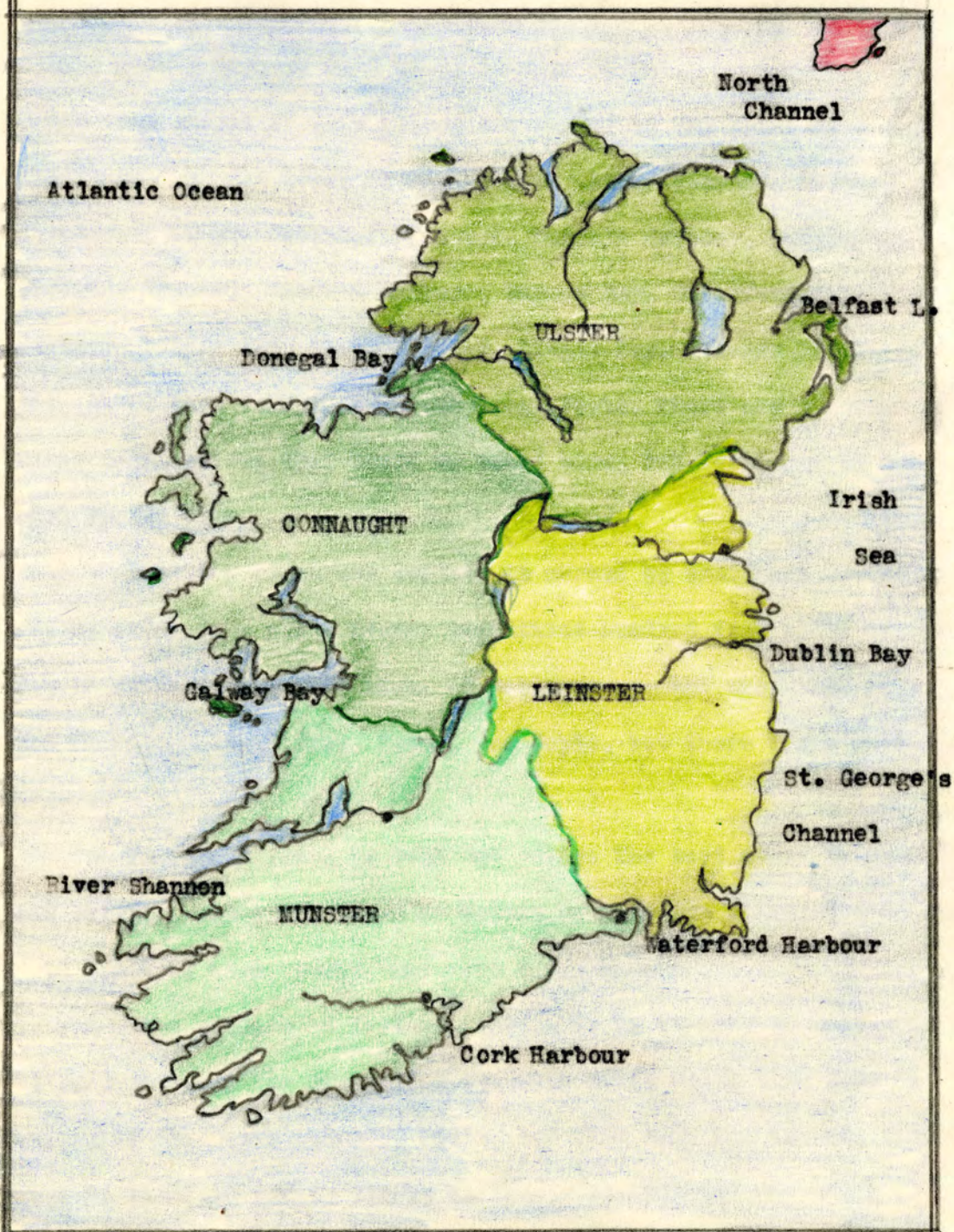
General.  
From Ancient Times to the Present.  
Industries and Products.  
Cities.  
Transportation.  
Trade.

Ireland (History)

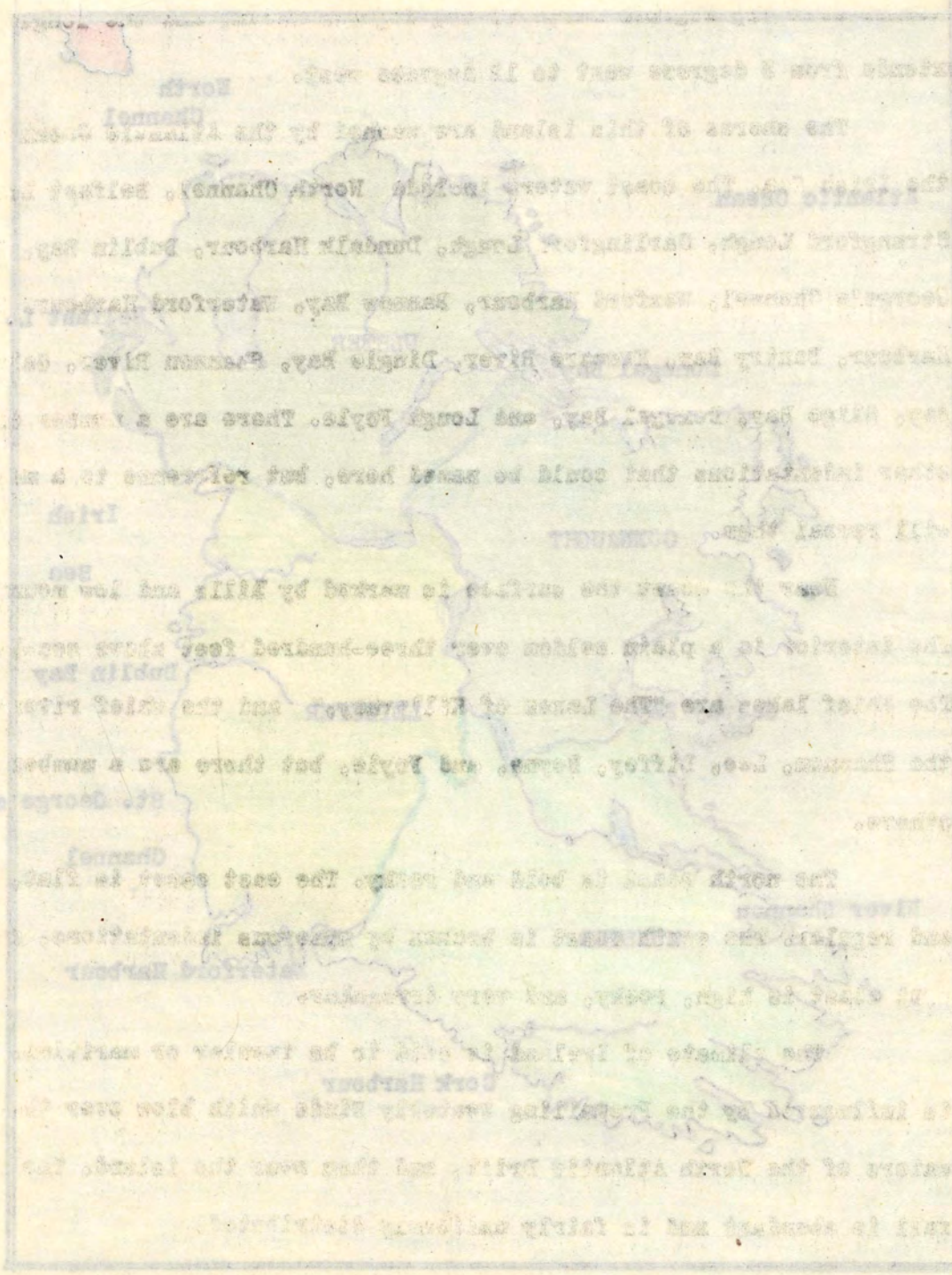
Early History.  
The Introduction of Christianity.  
The Coming of Invaders.  
The Relations between the Irish and the English.  
Increasing Disaffection.  
The Struggle for Better Conditions.  
The Union of Ireland and England.  
The Early Years of the Union.  
The Demand for "Home Rule."  
The Later Phases of the Home Rule Question.  
Ireland and the First World War.  
Since the First World War.  
Ireland and the Second World War 1939-1945.  
Social Conditions.  
Women De Votors



IRELAND NO. I.









## IRELAND.

Ireland lies to the west of England and Scotland. The latitude extends from  $51\frac{1}{2}$  degrees north to  $55\frac{1}{2}$  degrees north; and the longitude extends from 3 degrees west to 12 degrees west.

The shores of this island are washed by the Atlantic Ocean and the Irish Sea. The coast waters include North Channel, Belfast Lough, Strangford Lough, Carlingford Lough, Dundalk Harbour, Dublin Bay, St. George's Channel, Wexford Harbour, Bannow Bay, Waterford Harbour, Cork Harbour, Bantry Bay, Kenmare River, Dingle Bay, Shannon River, Galway Bay, Sligo Bay, Donegal Bay, and Lough Foyle. There are a number of other indentations that could be named here, but reference to a map will reveal them.

Near the coast the surface is marked by hills and low mountains. The interior is a plain seldom over three-hundred feet above sea-level. The chief lakes are "The Lakes of Killarney," and the chief rivers are the Shannon, Lee, Liffey, Boyne, and Foyle, but there are a number of others.

The north coast is bold and rocky. The east coast is flat, sandy, and regular. The south coast is broken by numerous indentations, and the west coast is high, rocky, and very irregular.

The climate of Ireland is said to be insular or maritime. It is influenced by the Prevailing Westerly Winds which blow over the warm waters of the North Atlantic Drift, and then over the island. The rainfall is abundant and is fairly uniformly distributed.

The large divisions of the country shown on Map No. 1 are.... Ulster, Connought, Leinster, and Munster, but the country is divided



IRELAND.

Ireland lies to the west of England and Scotland. The island extends from 51° degrees north to 55° degrees north; and the longitude extends from 3 degrees west to 12 degrees west.

The shores of this island are washed by the Atlantic Ocean and the Irish Sea. The coast waters include North Channel, Belfast Lough, Strangford Lough, Carrlingford Lough, Dundalk Harbour, Dublin Bay, St. George's Channel, Wexford Harbour, Bannew Bay, Waterford Harbour, Cork Harbour, Bantry Bay, Kenmare River, Dingle Bay, Shannon River, Galway Bay, Sligo Bay, Donegal Bay, and Lough Foyle. There are a number of other indentations that could be named here, but reference to a map will reveal them.

Near the coast the surface is marked by hills and low mountains. The interior is a plain seldom over three hundred feet above sea-level. The chief lakes are "The Lakes of Killarney," and the chief rivers are the Shannon, Lee, Liffey, Boyne, and Foyle, but there are a number of others.

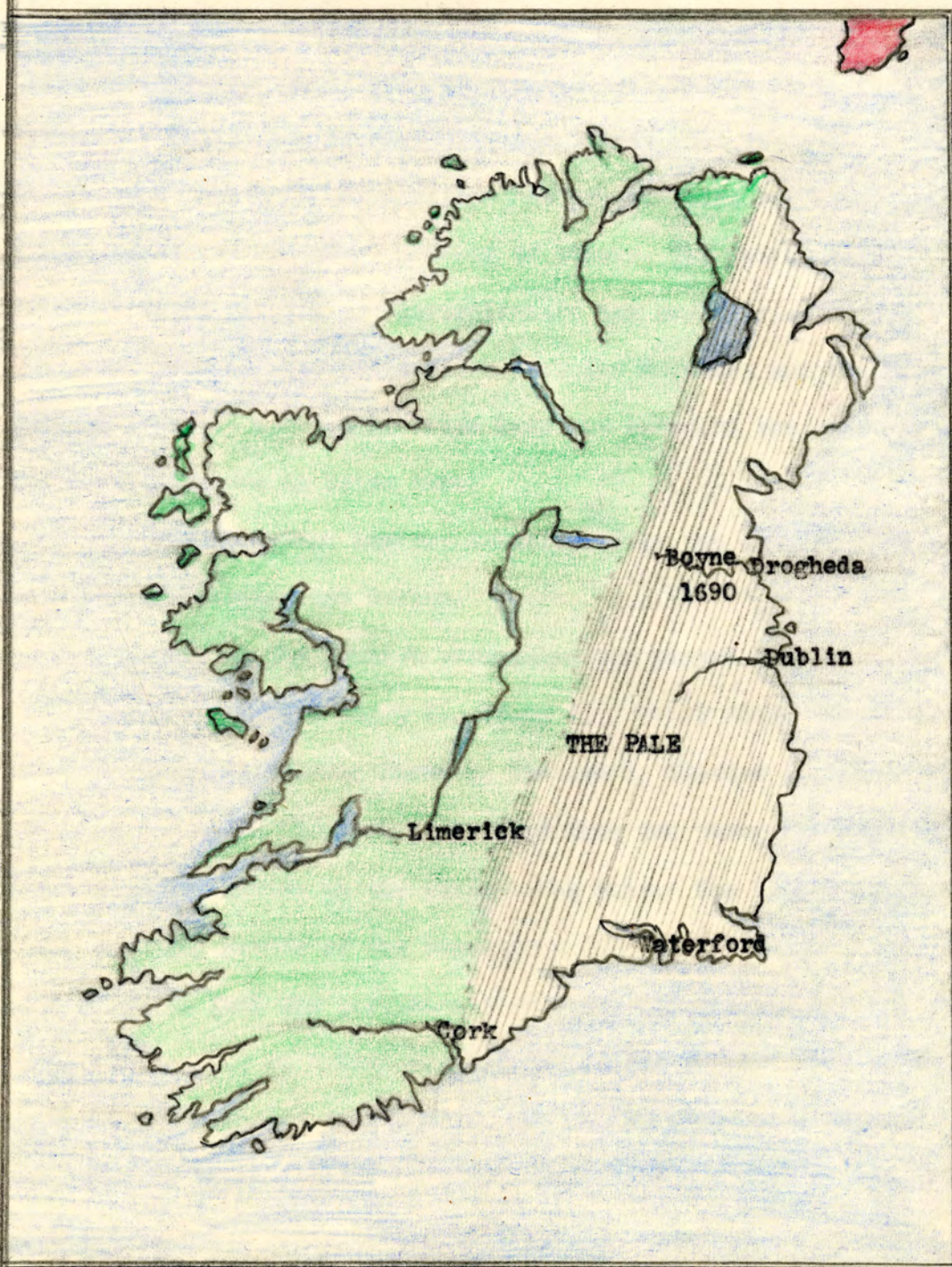
The north coast is bold and rocky. The east coast is flat, sandy and regular. The south coast is broken by numerous indentations, and the west coast is high, rocky, and very irregular.

The climate of Ireland is said to be insular or maritime. It is influenced by the prevailing westerly winds which blow over the waters of the North Atlantic Drift, and then over the island. The rainfall is abundant and is fairly uniformly distributed.

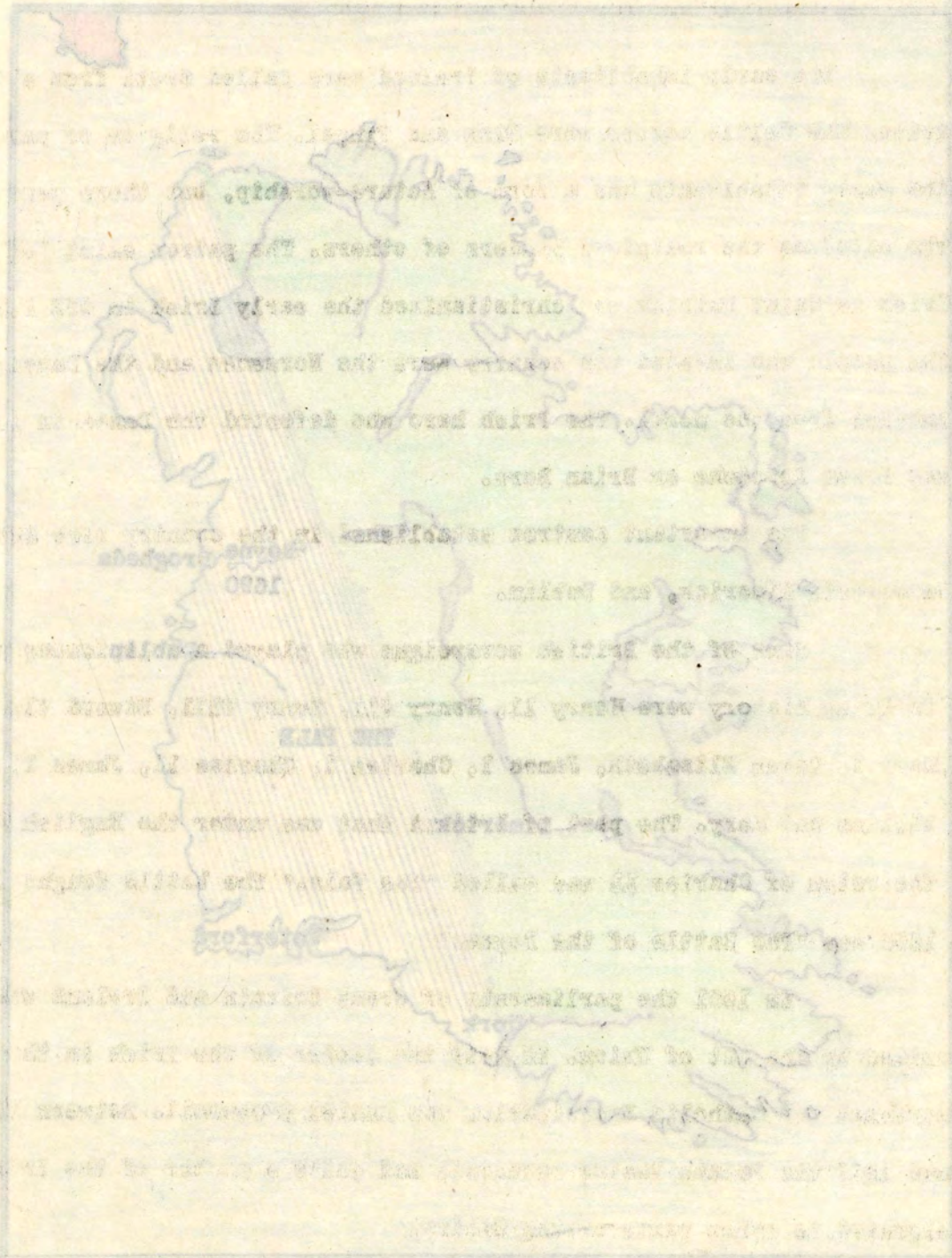
The large divisions of the country shown on Map No. 1 are... Ulster, Connaught, Leinster, and Munster, but the country is divided



IRELAND NO. 2.







THE  
1800  
1801  
1802  
1803  
1804  
1805  
1806  
1807  
1808  
1809  
1810  
1811  
1812  
1813  
1814  
1815  
1816  
1817  
1818  
1819  
1820  
1821  
1822  
1823  
1824  
1825  
1826  
1827  
1828  
1829  
1830  
1831  
1832  
1833  
1834  
1835  
1836  
1837  
1838  
1839  
1840  
1841  
1842  
1843  
1844  
1845  
1846  
1847  
1848  
1849  
1850  
1851  
1852  
1853  
1854  
1855  
1856  
1857  
1858  
1859  
1860  
1861  
1862  
1863  
1864  
1865  
1866  
1867  
1868  
1869  
1870  
1871  
1872  
1873  
1874  
1875  
1876  
1877  
1878  
1879  
1880  
1881  
1882  
1883  
1884  
1885  
1886  
1887  
1888  
1889  
1890  
1891  
1892  
1893  
1894  
1895  
1896  
1897  
1898  
1899  
1900



into Northern Ireland and Irish Free State or Eire.

IRELAND....FROM ANCIENT TIMES TO THE PRESENT:

The early inhabitants of Ireland were called Scoti from a Celtic tribe. The Celtic heroes were Finn and Fingal. The religion of part of the early inhabitants was a form of Nature-worship, but there were Druids who acted as the religious leaders of others. The patron saint of the Irish is Saint Patrick who christianized the early Irish in 432 A.D. The people who invaded the country were the Norsemen and the Danes. They entered from the north. The Irish hero who defeated the Danes in 1014 was Brian Borcímhe or Brian Boru.

The important centres established in the country were Cork, Waterford, Limerick, and Dublin.

Some of the British sovereigns who played a conspicuous part in Irish history were Henry II, Henry VII, Henry VIII, Edward VI, Queen Mary I, Queen Elizabeth, James I, Charles I, Charles II, James II, and William and Mary. The part of Ireland that was under the English during the reign of Charles II was called "The Pale." The battle fought in 1690 was "The Battle of the Boyne."

In 1801 the parliaments of Great Britain and Ireland were united by the Act of Union. In 1829 the leader of the Irish in the movement for Catholic Emancipation was Daniel O'Connell. Between 1845 and 1847 the Potato Famine occurred, and quite a number of the Irish migrated to other parts of the Empire.

The comparatively recent political issue associated with Ireland was "The Home Rule Question." In 1916 an uprising in Ireland was staged by the Sinn Féiners.



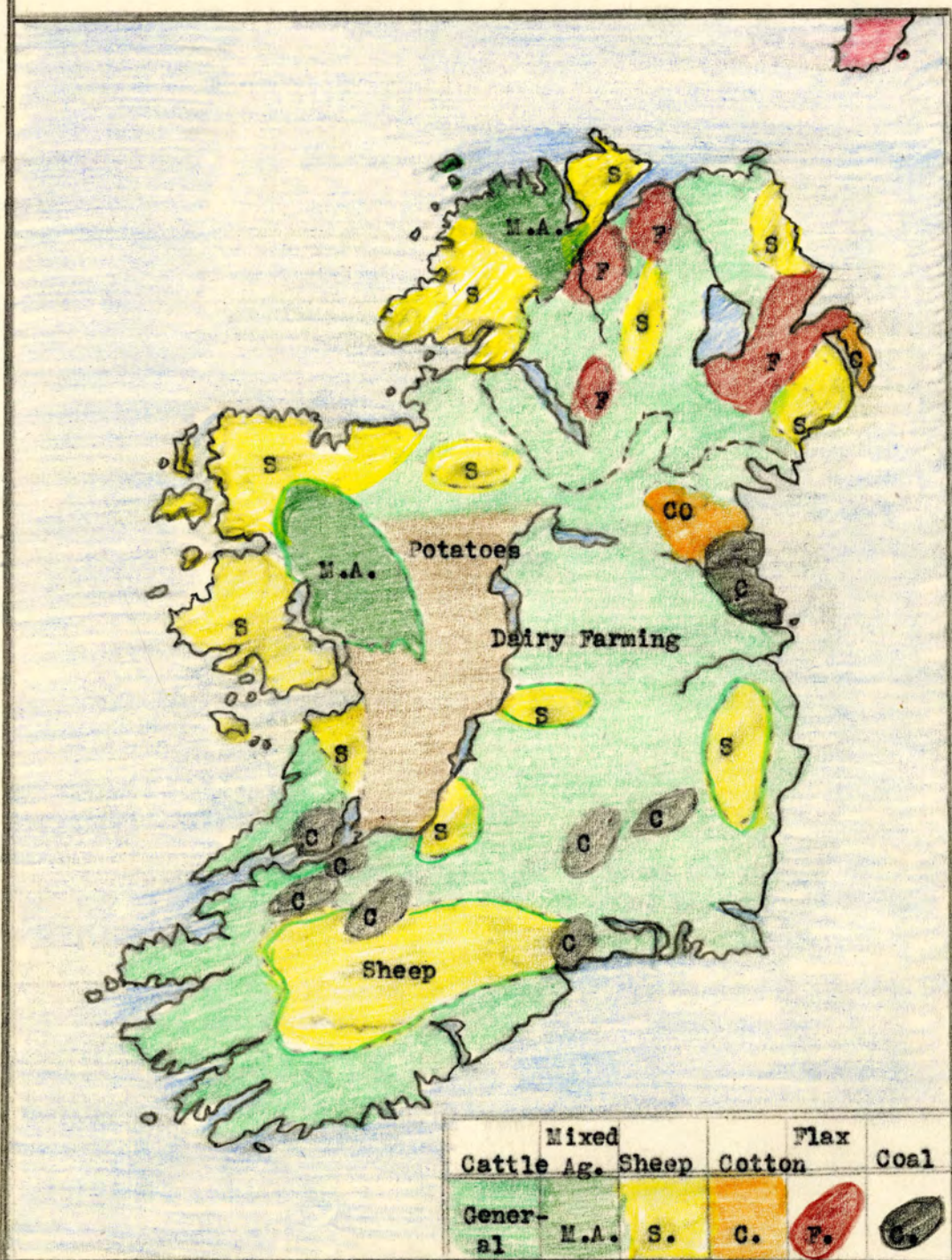
into Northern Ireland and Irish Free State or Eire.

## IRELAND...FROM ANCIENT TIMES TO THE PRESENT:

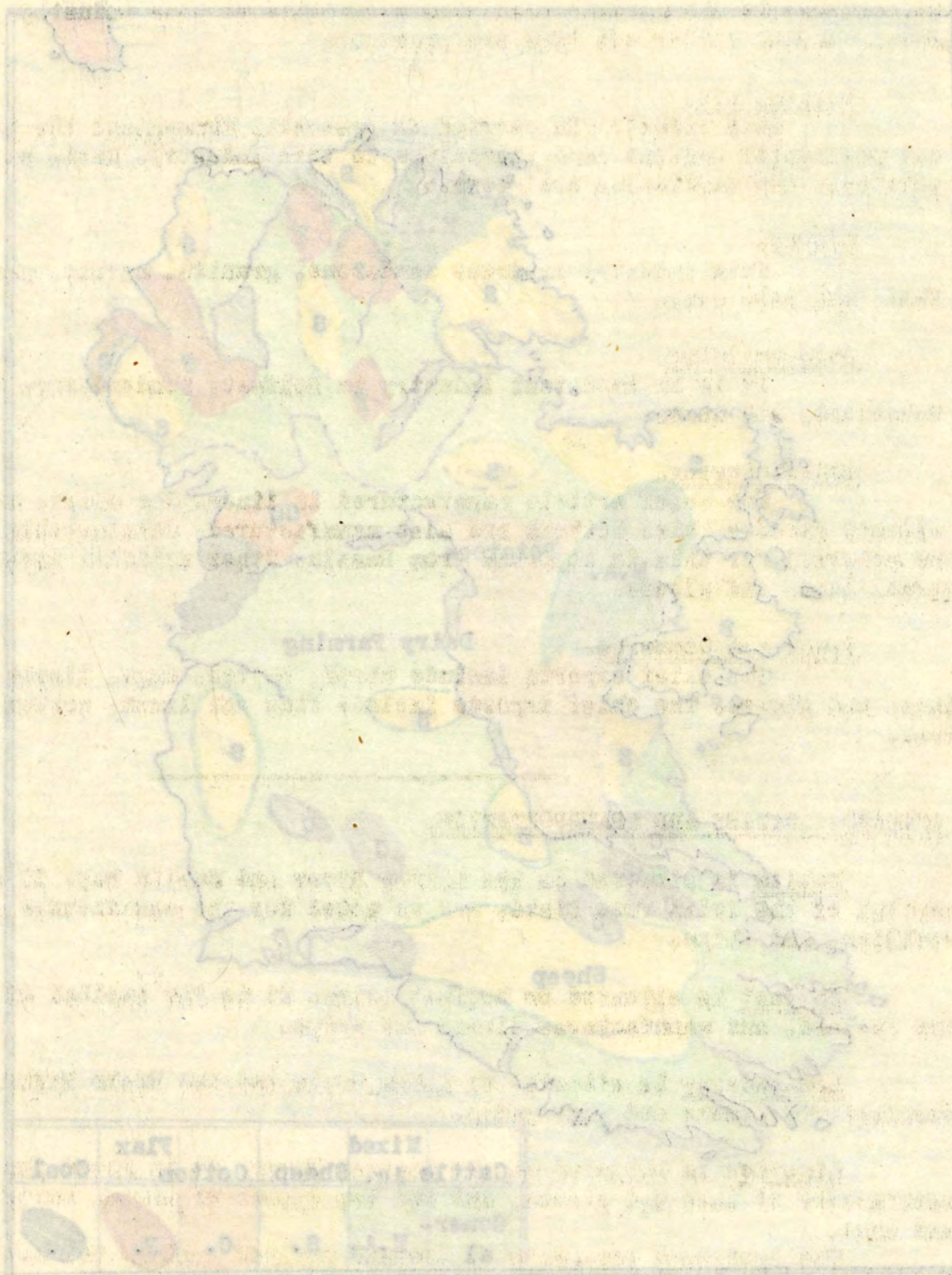
The early inhabitants of Ireland were called Scott from a Celtic tribe. The Celtic heroes were Finn and Fingal. The religion of part of the early inhabitants was a form of Nature-worship, but there were Druids who acted as the religious leaders of others. The patron saint of the Irish is Saint Patrick who christianized the early Irish in 432 A.D. The people who invaded the country were the Norsemen and the Danes. They entered from the north. The Irish hero who defeated the Danes in 1014 was Brian Boru or Brian Borca. The important centres established in the country were Cork, Waterford, Limerick, and Dublin. Some of the British sovereigns who played a conspicuous part in Irish history were Henry II, Henry VII, Henry VIII, Edward VI, Queen Mary I, Queen Elizabeth, James I, Charles I, Charles II, James II, and William and Mary. The part of Ireland that was under the English during the reign of Charles II was called "The Pale." The battle fought in 1890 was "The Battle of the Boyne." In 1801 the parliaments of Great Britain and Ireland were united by the Act of Union. In 1829 the leader of the Irish in the movement for Catholic Emancipation was Daniel O'Connell. Between 1845 and 1847 the Potato Famine occurred, and quite a number of the Irish migrated to other parts of the Empire. The comparatively recent political issues associated with Ireland was "The Home Rule Question." In 1916 an uprising in Ireland was staged by the Sinn Féin.



IRELAND NO. 3.









## IRELAND....INDUSTRIES AND PRODUCTS.

### Stock-raising.

The warm, moist climate favours the growth of grass, and four-fifths of the agricultural land is devoted to this industry. Cattle, sheep, bacon, butter and eggs are produced.

### Agriculture.

This industry is carried on generally throughout the island, but particular regions lend themselves to this industry. Oats, barley, potatoes, and vegetables are grown.

### Mining.

This industry produces sandstone, granite, marble, peat for fuel, and some coal.

### Ship-building.

It is an important industry in Belfast, Londonderry, Dublin, Waterford, and Cork.

### Manufacturing.

The chief article manufactured is linen. The moist, moderate climate favours this. Cottons are also manufactured. Considerable of the raw material for this is imported from Russia. Other articles include yarns, lace, and gloves.

### Trade and Commerce.

The chief exports include bacon, butter, eggs, linens, yarn, lace, and gloves. The chief imports include flax for linen, cotton, and coal.

---

## IRELAND...CITIES AND TRANSPORTATION.

Dublin is situated on the Liffey River and Dublin Bay. It is the capital of the Irish Free State, and is noted for the manufacture of silk, woollens, and ships.

Belfast is situated on Belfast Lough. It is the capital of Northern Ireland, and manufactures linens and ships.

Londonderry is situated on Lough Foyle and the Foyle River. It manufactures linens and flax yarns.

Limerick is situated on the Shannon River. It is noted for the manufacture of lace and gloves, and for the export of bacon, butter, and eggs.

The important sea-ports of Ireland include Dublin, Belfast, Cork, Queenston, Londonderry, Limerick, and Waterford.

### TRANSPORTATION AND TRADE:

Ireland has a network of rivers, canals, and railroads. A long canal connects Dublin with the Shannon River. Shorter canals connect



IRELAND...INDUSTRY AND PRODUCTS.

Stock-raising.

The warm, moist climate favors the growth of grass, and four-fifths of the agricultural land is devoted to this industry. Cattle, sheep, bacon, butter and eggs are produced.

Agriculture.

This industry is carried on generally throughout the island, but particular regions lend themselves to this industry. Oats, barley, potatoes, and vegetables are grown.

Mining.

This industry produces sandstone, granite, marble, peat for fuel, and some coal.

Ship-building.

It is an important industry in Belfast, Londonderry, Dublin, Waterford, and Cork.

Manufacturing.

The chief article manufactured is linen. The moist, moderate climate favors this. Cottons are also manufactured. Considerable of the raw material for this is imported from Russia. Other articles include yarns, lace, and gloves.

Trade and Commerce.

The chief exports include bacon, butter, eggs, linens, yarns, lace, and gloves. The chief imports include flax for linen, cotton, and coal.

IRELAND...CITIES AND TRANSPORTATION.

Dublin is situated on the Liffey River and Dublin Bay. It is the capital of the Irish Free State, and is noted for the manufacture of silk, woollens, and ships.

Belfast is situated on Belfast Lough. It is the capital of Northern Ireland, and manufactures linens and ships.

Londonderry is situated on Lough Foyle and the Foyle River. It manufactures linens and flax yarns.

Limerick is situated on the Shannon River. It is noted for the manufacture of lace and gloves, and for the export of bacon, butter, and eggs.

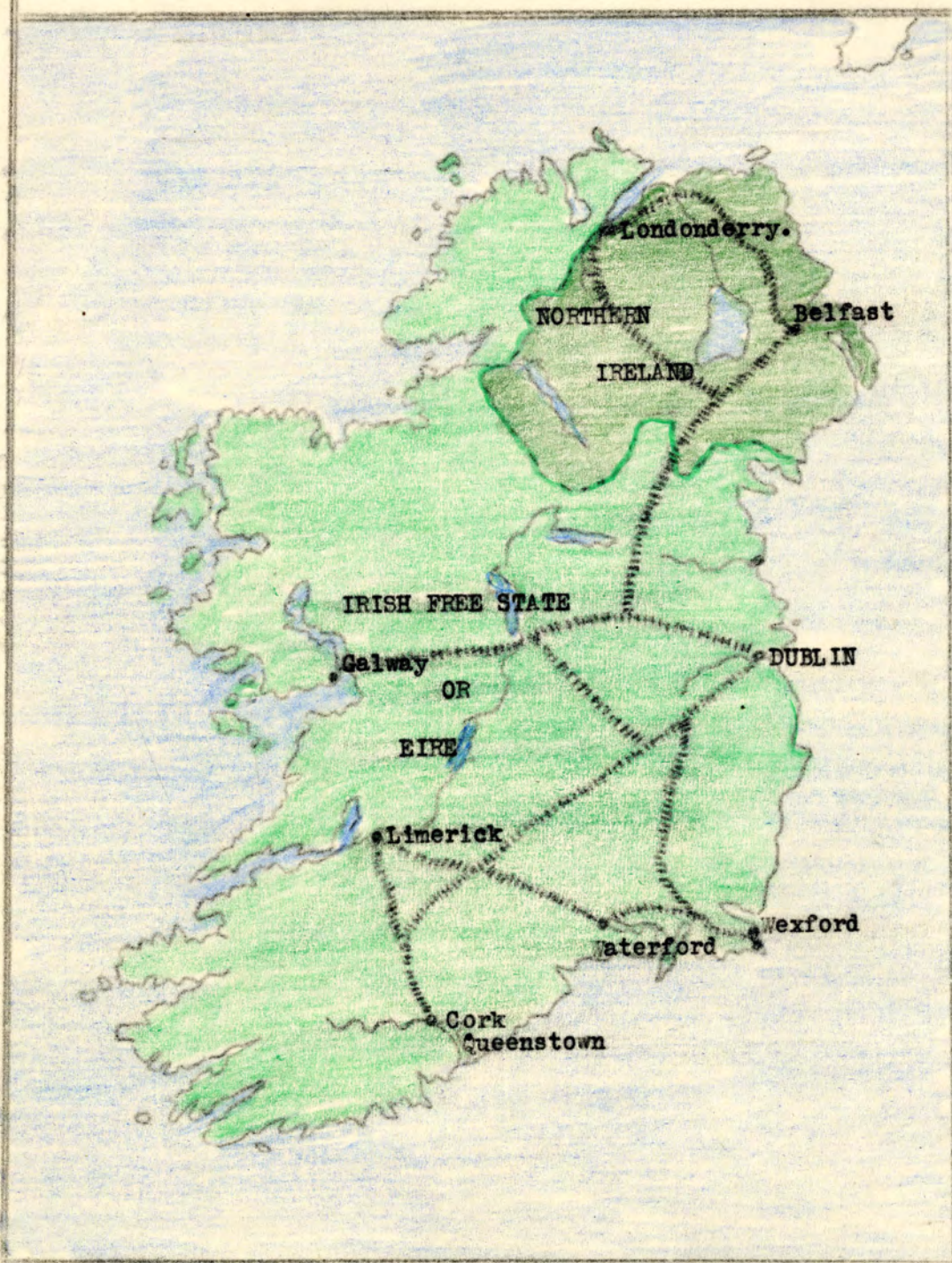
The important sea-ports of Ireland include Dublin, Belfast, Cork, Queenstown, Londonderry, Limerick, and Waterford.

TRANSPORTATION AND TRADE:

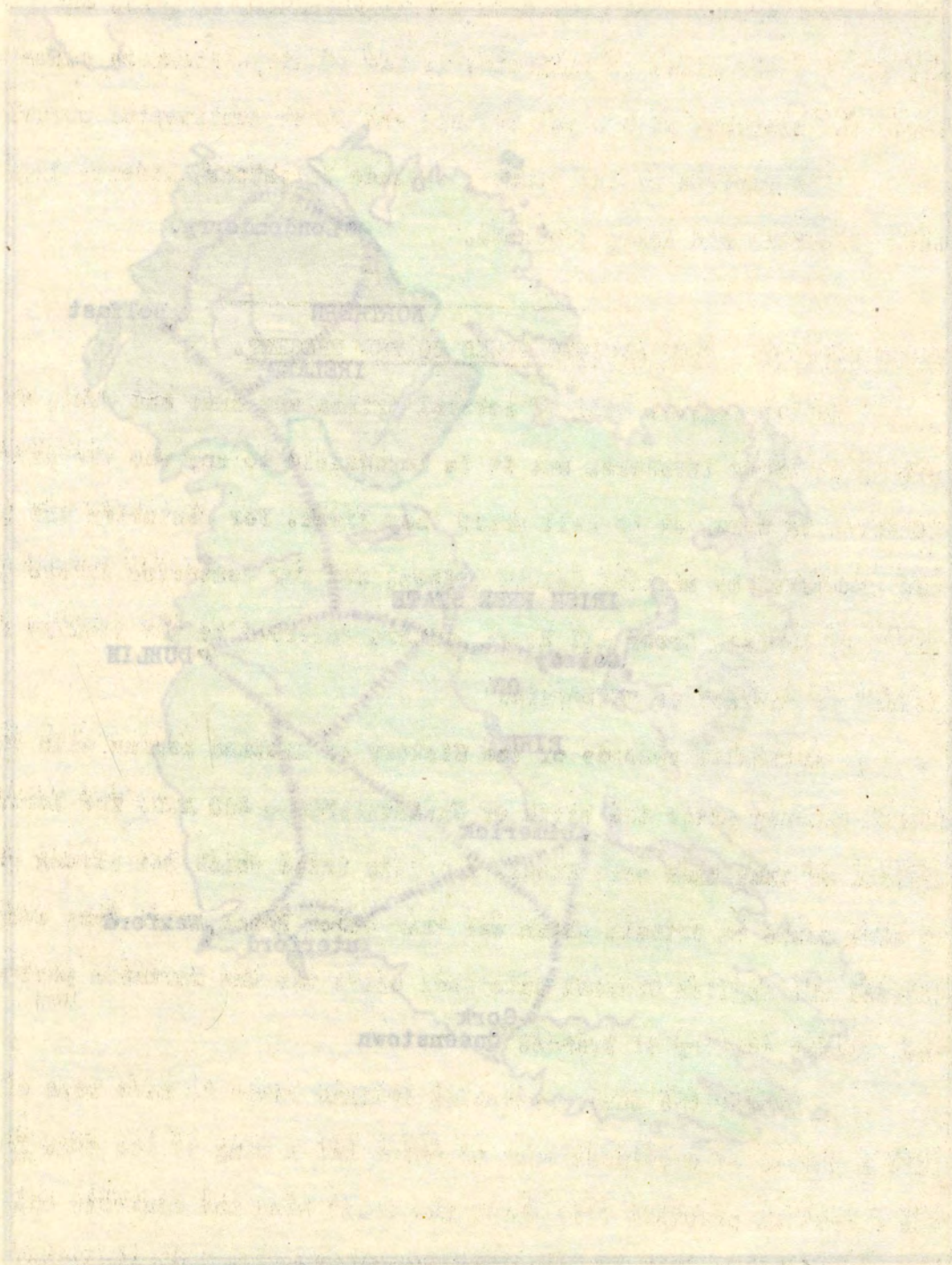
Ireland has a network of rivers, canals, and railways. A long canal connects Dublin with the Shannon River. Shorter canals connect



IRELAND NO. 4.









practically all of the important streams on the Island. The railroad system is composed of a number of small connecting systems, and there are about 3,403 miles of railroads in the country. Steamers connect the important seaports with Great Britain and other continental ports.

The exports of the country include livestock, linens, liquor, meat products, and dairy products.

---

EARLY HISTORY: FROM ANCIENT TIMES TO THE PRESENT.

Native legends tell of several tribes who came and went, driven out by stronger invaders, but it is impossible to say who the first inhabitants were, or to tell where they lived. For centuries the island was inhabited by various Celtic tribes, and for centuries before the birth of Christ, Greek and Roman writers referred to the country as the Island of "Ierne" or "Hibernia."

Authentic records of the History of Ireland begins with the fourth century after the birth of Christ...300 - 400 A.D. The lords of Ireland of that time were Scoti, a Celtic tribe which was strong enough to make raids on Britain which was then under Roman rule. They even crossed the English Channel into Gaul which was the northern part of the present country of France.

During the early centuries Ireland seems to have been divided into a number of provinces each of which had a king of its own. There was a central province over which the chief king had control, and the king or chief of each province was chosen from its most important family. Some of the Celtic heroes like Finn and Fingal had wild legends woven about their names, and these were recorded by later writers.



practically all of the important streets on the island. The railroad system is composed of a number of small connecting systems, and there are about 2,400 miles of railroads in the country. Steamers connect the important seaports with Great Britain and other continental ports. The exports of the country include livestock, linens, liquor, meat products, and dairy products.

#### EARLY HISTORY: FROM ANCIENT TIMES TO THE PRESENT

Native legends tell of several tribes who came and went, driven out by stronger invaders, but it is impossible to say who the first inhabitants were, or to tell where they lived. For centuries the island was inhabited by various Celtic tribes, and for centuries before the birth of Christ, Greek and Roman writers referred to the country as the island of "Ierne" or "Hibernia". Authentic records of the history of Ireland begin with the fourth century after the birth of Christ... 500 - 400 A.D. The lords of Ireland of that time were Scotts, a Celtic tribe which was strong enough to make raids on Britain which was then under Roman rule. They even crossed the English Channel into Gaul which was the northern part of the present country of France.

During the early centuries Ireland seems to have been divided into a number of provinces each of which had a king of its own. There was a central province over which the chief king had control, and the king or chief of each province was chosen from its most important family. Some of the Celtic heroes like Finn and Fingal had wild legends woven about their names, and these were recorded by later writers.



The Scoti possessed the rudiments of agriculture, and had definite systems of government and religion. Each clan had a chief who advised his followers and led them in war. The religion of early Ireland was predominately a form of nature-worship. The priests were called Druids. The priests and the poets or bards held positions which almost equalled that of the king in honour.

#### THE INTRODUCTION OF CHRISTIANITY:

By the middle of the fourth century, christianity had made considerable progress, and conversion to this form of religion was effected without bloodshed. About 432 A.D. Saint Patrick who became the patron saint of Ireland, began his great mission in Ireland. The Irish accepted christianity, and sent out missionaries from their newly established monasteries. They went to Iona in the Hebrides, to Britain, and to the continent. In the sixth century other missionaries continued the work, and numerous churches and monasteries were founded. Religious learning flourished in the monasteries, and students went to Ireland to be educated. At that time Ireland played an outstanding part in the history of the world.

#### THE COMING OF INVADERS:

In the eighth century Norsemen and Danes invaded the country. The Scandinavian tribes established themselves on the north coast and even around the eastern and southern coasts. They built Cork, Waterford, and Dublin. Then they penetrated the interior and built Limerick. They established a kingdom in the interior, and ravaged the country. They even attacked and plundered the monasteries. It is probable that the



The Scott possessed the rudiments of agriculture, and had definite systems of government and religion. Each clan had a chief who advised his followers and led them in war. The religion of early Ireland was predominantly a form of nature-worship. The priests were called Druids. The priests and the poets or bards held positions which almost equalled that of the king in honour.

#### THE INTRODUCTION OF CHRISTIANITY:

By the middle of the fourth century, Christianity had made considerable progress, and conversion to this form of religion was effected without bloodshed. About 432 A.D. Saint Patrick who became the patron saint of Ireland, began his great mission in Ireland. The Irish accepted Christianity, and sent out missionaries from their newly established monasteries. They went to Iona in the Hebrides, to Britain, and to the continent. In the sixth century other missionaries continued the work, and numerous churches and monasteries were founded. Religious learning flourished in the monasteries, and students went to Ireland to be educated. At that time Ireland played an outstanding part in the history of the world.

#### THE COMING OF INVADERS:

In the eighth century Norsemen and Danes invaded the country. The Scandinavian tribes established themselves on the north coast and even around the eastern and southern coasts. They built Cork, Waterford, and Dublin. Then they penetrated the interior and built Limerick. They established a kingdom in the interior, and ravaged the country. They even attacked and plundered the monasteries. It is probable that the



famous round towers of Ireland were built in the eighth and ninth centuries, and were used as defences against the fierce invaders. For more than two centuries the Danes harryassed the island. In 1014 Brian Boromhe, more commonly known as Brian Boru, a celebrated Irish hero defeated the Danes. He united the majority of Ireland under his rule, but he died in the hour of victory, and the island slipped back into its former state of division and anarchy. This condition continued for a century and a half.

The English then invaded Ireland, and a new phase of Irish History was started. In 1155 Pope Hadrian IV gave Henry II of England permission to subdue the island. Dermot Macmurrough, a deposed Irish king took refuge in England and asked for aid. Henry II allowed him to call for volunteers. The leader of these was Richard Clare, Earl of Pembroke, who was known as "Strongbow." He placed Dermot on the throne; married his daughter, and later succeeded him. His English subjects were allowed to settle in eastern Ireland. In 1172 Henry II visited Ireland. He received homage from the great princes, and was recognized as "Lord of Ireland."

#### THE RELATION OF THE IRISH AND THE ENGLISH:

Norman nobles and their followers were given large grants of land in Ireland by the King of England. After they had put down the opposition of the natives, they allied themselves with them, and began to defy the power of the king. They adopted the customs and the language of the natives, and became more Irish than the English. That meant that the English hold on the island grew gradually weaker. By the times of the Wars of the Roses 1455-1485, the only part of Ireland over which



stone tower of Ireland were built in the eighth and ninth centuries, and were used as fortresses against the Norse invaders. For more than two centuries the Danes harassed the island. In 1014 Brian Boru, more commonly known as Brian Boru, a celebrated Irish hero, defeated the Danes. He united the majority of Ireland under his rule, but he died in the hour of victory, and the island slipped back into its former state of division and anarchy. This condition continued for a century and a half.

The English then invaded Ireland, and a new phase of Irish history was started. In 1155 Pope Adrian IV gave Henry II of England permission to subdue the island. Dermot MacMurrough, a deposed Irish king took refuge in England and asked for aid. Henry II allowed him to call for volunteers. The leader of these was Richard Clare, Earl of Pembroke, who was known as "Strongbow." He placed Dermot on the throne; married his daughter, and later succeeded him. His English subjects were allowed to settle in eastern Ireland. In 1172 Henry II visited Ireland. He received homage from the great princes, and was recognized as "Lord of Ireland."

#### THE INFLUENCE OF THE IRISH AND THE ENGLISH:

Norman nobles and their followers were given large grants of land in Ireland by the King of England. After they had put down the opposition of the natives, they allied themselves with them, and began to help the power of the king. They adopted the customs and the language of the natives, and became more Irish than the English. That meant that the English hold on the island grew gradually weaker. By the times of the Wars of the Roses 1455-1485, the only part of Ireland over which



England had any real authority, was the Pale which had shrunk to a small district in Eastern Ireland which contained a few towns on the coast and the larger centres of Dublin and Drogheda.

The Irish in the rest of Ireland lived according to their old customs, and in manners and mode of life they were totally uncivilized. Under Henry VII a law was enacted by the British Parliament making the Irish Parliament dependent upon the English King. Then the power of the English became somewhat stronger. Sir Edward Poynings was placed in charge, and he enacted several measures in Ireland to strengthen the power of England. The Irish did not understand or appreciate the laws and customs of the English that were established.

Henry VIII was wise in his dealings with Ireland. He provided that Irish law instead of English should be enforced in the untamed districts outside of the Pale, and he allowed representatives of various regions to become members of the parliament. In 1541 the mixed Irish parliament conferred upon him the title "King of Ireland." He tried to force the reformed faith on the Irish. Monasteries were destroyed, and their wealth was confiscated. This wealth was used to purchase the good will of the Irish chiefs by sharing it with them.

Edward VI tried to suppress the Roman Catholic religion there. Queen Mary tried to suppress the Protestant religion, and Queen Elizabeth imposed the Protestant clergy upon them. Her reign was marked by a series of uprisings which ended in the reduction of the whole island to a state of subjection. Great stretches of land were taken from the Irish chiefs and given to English nobles who were to settle their new estates with English farmers. The Anglican Church was made the established church.



England had any real authority, was the Pale which had shrunk to a small district in Eastern Ireland which contained a few towns on the coast and the larger centres of Dublin and Drogheda.

The Irish in the rest of Ireland lived according to their old customs, and in manners and mode of life they were totally uncivilized. Under Henry VII a law was enacted by the British Parliament making the Irish Parliament dependent upon the English King. Then the power of the English became somewhat stronger. Sir Edward Poyning was placed in charge, and he enacted several measures in Ireland to strengthen the power of England. The Irish did not understand or appreciate the laws and customs of the English that were established.

Henry VIII was wise in his dealings with Ireland. He provided that Irish law instead of English should be enforced in the unimproved districts outside of the Pale, and he allowed representatives of various regions to become members of the parliament. In 1541 the mixed Irish parliament conferred upon him the title "King of Ireland." He tried to force the reformed faith on the Irish. Monasteries were destroyed, and their wealth was confiscated. This wealth was used to purchase the good will of the Irish chiefs by sharing it with them.

Edward VI tried to suppress the Roman Catholic religion there. Queen Mary tried to suppress the Protestant religion, and Queen Elizabeth imposed the Protestant clergy upon them. Her reign was marked by a series of uprisings which ended in the reduction of the whole island to a state of subjection. Great stretches of land were taken from the Irish chiefs and given to English nobles who were to settle their new estates with English farmers. The Anglican Church was made the established church.



The Roman Catholics were denied all rights, and they were excluded from all public offices.

#### INCREASING DISAFFECTION:

Under James I and Charles I Irish lands were confiscated, and the Roman Catholics were suppressed. The Scots moved over into Ulster and established colonies there. The Earl of Stafford, the Viceroy of Charles I, brought order to Ireland, but when his strong hand was removed, rebellion broke out in the country. The Irish were partly successful, but dissensions broke out among them, and the English took advantage of the situation.

In 1649 Oliver Cromwell was sent over with the Model Army, and really reduced the Irish to a state of subjection. Additional land was confiscated, and more English became land-owners there. At that time almost nine-tenths of the land was held by Protestants, but the majority of the Irish were Roman Catholics. Laws were passed that refused to allow the Catholics to hold any sort of Public Office or to acquire land.

James II was a Roman Catholic, and he favoured the Catholics in Ireland. As a result, he found enthusiastic supporters there when he arrived there after he was deposed by William of Orange and his daughter, Mary. In 1690 in the Battle of the Boyne, James was completely defeated, and by 1691 Ireland was completely subdued. The treaty that was passed, allowed the Irish Catholics to regain possession of much of their land, and they were allowed religious liberty. The parliaments of England and Ireland refused to abide by the terms of the treaty, and the British parliament passed cruel laws that crushed the industries of the island, and forced a number of the better class of people to emigrate.



The Roman Catholics were denied all rights, and they were excluded from all public offices.

#### INCREASING DISSENT:

Under James I and Charles I Irish lands were confiscated, and the Roman Catholics were suppressed. The Scots moved over into Ulster and established colonies there. The Earl of Stafford, the Viceroy of Charles I, brought order to Ireland, but when his strong hand was removed, rebellion broke out in the country. The Irish were partly successful, but dissension broke out among them, and the English took advantage of the situation.

In 1649 Oliver Cromwell was sent over with the Model Army, and really reduced the Irish to a state of subjection. Additional land was confiscated, and more English became land-owners there. At that time almost nine-tenths of the land was held by Protestants, but the majority of the Irish were Roman Catholics. Laws were passed that refused to allow the Catholics to hold any sort of public office or to acquire land.

James II was a Roman Catholic, and he favoured the Catholics in Ireland. As a result, he found enthusiastic supporters there when he arrived there after he was deposed by William of Orange and his daughter, Mary. In 1690 in the Battle of the Boyne, James was completely defeated, and by 1691 Ireland was completely subdued. The treaty that was passed, allowed the Irish Catholics to regain possession of much of their land, and they were allowed religious liberty. The Parliament of England and Ireland refused to abide by the terms of the treaty, and the British Parliament passed cruel laws that orphaned the industries of the island, and formed a number of the better class of people to emigrate.



The first half of the eighteenth century is the darkest period of Irish history.

#### THE STRUGGLE FOR BETTER CONDITIONS:

Frequent uprisings occurred in the country. In 1778 the Irish parliament passed a Relief Act to relieve the situation. The Roman Catholics were allowed to hold land and to practice their religion. There was a demand for legislative freedom. This demand was under the leadership of Henry Grattan who led an armed force to force its granting. In 1782 the Irish parliament was declared independent of the British parliament. In 1798 the Irish revolted again. This revolution was prompted and stirred by the excitement associated with the revolution in France. William Pitt then proposed a legislative union of the Irish and the English, and the emancipation of the Catholics. In 1801 the Act of Union was passed by both parliaments on January 1, and the united kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland was proclaimed.

#### THE EARLY YEARS OF THE UNION:

Robert Emmet led the dissatisfied Irish in a struggle to gain more freedom, but it was without success. In 1829 Daniel O'Connell led the movement for Catholic Emancipation. As a result the Catholics were given the right to hold office and to sit in parliament. The Catholics were still forced to pay tithes to the Established Church...The Anglican Church. The Irish resented this, so in 1871 disestablishment was brought about.

The reforms established in 1832 helped the Irish slightly. Then there was a demand for Home Rule. Between 1845 and 1847 the suffer-



The first half of the eighteenth century is the darkest period of Irish history.

#### THE STRUGGLE FOR BETTER CONDITIONS

Present conditions occurred in the country. In 1773 the Irish parliament passed a Relief Act to relieve the situation. The Roman Catholics were allowed to hold land and to practice their religion. There was a demand for legislative freedom. This demand was under the leadership of Henry Grattan who led an armed force to force its granting. In 1782 the Irish parliament was declared independent of the British parliament. In 1793 the Irish revolted again. This revolution was prompted and stirred by the excitement associated with the revolution in France. William Pitt then proposed a legislative union of the Irish and the English, and the emancipation of the Catholics. In 1801 the Act of Union was passed by both parliaments on January 1, and the united Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland was proclaimed.

#### THE EARLY YEARS OF THE UNION

Robert Emmet led the dissatisfied Irish in a struggle to gain more freedom, but it was without success. In 1823 Daniel O'Connell led the movement for Catholic Emancipation. As a result the Catholics were given the right to hold office and to sit in parliament. The Anglicans were still forced to pay tithes to the Established Church. The Anglican Church. The Irish resented this, so in 1871 disestablishment was brought about. The reforms established in 1832 helped the Irish slightly. Then there was a demand for Home Rule. Between 1845 and 1847 the potato-



ings of the Irish became terrible because the potato crop failed. Famine resulted. Thousands died, and hundreds of thousands emigrated. The English then gradually granted reforms so that the agricultural and industrial conditions of the country improved, and the struggle for Home Rule became more intense.

#### THE LATER PHASES OF THE HOME RULE QUESTION.

The Home Rule Question dominated Irish political history during the last half of the century. In 1886 William Ewart Gladstone became Prime Minister of Great Britain. He introduced a Bill providing for the Legislative Independence or Home Rule for Ireland, but it was rejected. However Acts for the advancement of Ireland were passed. A Department of Agriculture was established. In 1898 the Local Government Act allowed local communities to look after their own affairs. In 1903 The Land Purchase Bill allowed tenants to purchase their holdings from the great land-owners. In 1912 The Government of Ireland Bill which was the Third Home Rule Bill, was introduced by Premier Asquith. It stirred up a protest in the Irish Province of Ulster. The Protestant population there did not want Home Rule. They wanted to enjoy equal citizenship in the United Kingdom.

The Home Rule Bill was passed by the British House of Commons twice, but it was rejected by the House of Lords, but on its third reading in 1914 it passed, and became law. The Ulster Unionists refused to be bound by the terms of the Bill, so amendments were made, and Ulster was excluded from the jurisdiction of the New Irish Parliament. The outbreak of the First World War brought a truce. The Unionists and the



ings of the Irish became terrible because the potato crop failed. Famines resulted. Thousands died, and hundreds of thousands emigrated. The English then gradually granted reforms so that the agricultural and industrial conditions of the country improved, and the struggle for Home Rule became more intense.

#### THE LATER PHASES OF THE HOME RULE QUESTION.

The Home Rule Question dominated Irish political history during the last half of the century. In 1886 William Ewart Gladstone became Prime Minister of Great Britain. He introduced a Bill providing for the legislative independence or Home Rule for Ireland, but it was rejected. However Acts for the advancement of Ireland were passed. A Department of Agriculture was established. In 1898 the Local Government Act allowed local communities to look after their own affairs. In 1903 The Land Purchase Bill allowed tenants to purchase their holdings from the great land-owners. In 1912 The Government of Ireland Bill which was the Third Home Rule Bill, was introduced by Premier Asquith. It stirred up a protest in the Irish Province of Ulster. The Protestant population there did not want Home Rule. They wanted to enjoy equal citizenship in the United Kingdom.

The Home Rule Bill was passed by the British House of Commons twice, but it was rejected by the House of Lords, but on its third reading in 1914 it passed, and became law. The Ulster Unionists refused to be bound by the terms of the Bill, so amendments were made, and Ulster was excluded from the jurisdiction of the new Irish Parliament. The outbreak of the First World War brought a truce. The Unionists and the



Nationalists offered to assist Great Britain. In 1919 a plan was made to make Ireland into a Dominion with powers similar to those enjoyed by Canada.

#### IRELAND AND THE FIRST WORLD WAR.

The Irish dropped their political differences, and thousands of them volunteered and joined the armies which saw service in France, Belgium, Egypt, Asia Minor, and the Balkan Peninsula. In 1916 when conscription was ordered, Ireland was excluded from the provisions of the Act. In the same year a rebellion broke out in Dublin. It was led by armed members of the Sinn Fein Society, but it was promptly quelled by the British authorities. The Sinn Fein Society was an Irish society which wanted to establish an Irish Ireland. It opposed control of any part of Ireland by the British, and worked for complete Irish independence. The words "Sinn" and "Fein" are from the Gaelic language, the ancient tongue of Ireland, and mean "Ourselves Alone." Over five-hundred people were killed in the course of the uprising, and several million dollars' worth of property was destroyed. Sir Roger Casement, the chief leader of the uprising, and several of his confederates were found guilty of treason and were executed.

#### SINCE THE FIRST WORLD WAR:

In January 1919 the Sinn Fein Society gained a victory in the election. They proclaimed themselves an Irish Parliament, and they established the Republic of Ireland. Eamon De Valera was elected President. In 1921 after civil war, the English proposed plans for peace. The Irish delegates accepted the status of a Dominion similar to Canada and South



Nationalists offered to assist Great Britain. In 1919 a plan was made to make Ireland into a Dominion with powers similar to those enjoyed by

Canada.

## IRELAND AND THE FIRST WORLD WAR

The Irish dropped their political differences, and thousands

of them volunteered and joined the armies which saw service in France,

Belgium, Egypt, Asia Minor, and the Balkan Peninsula. In 1916 when

conscription was ordered, Ireland was excluded from the provisions of

the Act. In the same year a rebellion broke out in Dublin. It was led

by armed members of the Sinn Féin Society, but it was promptly quelled

by the British authorities. The Sinn Féin Society was an Irish society

which wanted to establish an Irish Ireland. It opposed control of any

part of Ireland by the British, and worked for complete Irish independ-

ence. The words "Sinn" and "Féin" are from the Gaelic language, the

ancient tongue of Ireland, and mean "Ourselves Alone." Over five hundred

people were killed in the course of the uprising, and several million

dollars' worth of property was destroyed. Sir Roger Casement, the chief

leader of the uprising, and several of his confederates were found

guilty of treason and were executed.

## SINCE THE FIRST WORLD WAR

In January 1919 the Sinn Féin Society gained a victory in the

election. They proclaimed themselves an Irish Parliament, and they out-

lined the Republic of Ireland. Eamon De Valera was elected President.

In 1921 after civil war, the English proposed plans for peace. The Irish

delegation accepted the status of a Dominion similar to Canada and South



Africa, with a government similar to the government of either of them. Civil war continued. There were numerous clashes between the Free State Forces and the opposition. In December 1922 the final stages of the necessary legislation were passed in London. Timothy Healy was appointed Governor-General of the Irish Free State, and peace seemed to reign.

In 1921 a parliament was organized for Northern Ireland or Ulster with headquarters in Belfast. A Cabinet was formed with Sir James Craig as Prime Minister.

There are two separate governments in Ireland. Northern Ireland or Ulster has its capital in Belfast, while Southern Ireland, the Irish Free State, or Eire has its capital in Dublin.

During recent years the Outlawed Irish Republican Army has caused a number of explosions in Great Britain, and numbers have been imprisoned for their part in them.

#### THE SECOND WORLDWAR ...1939-1945.

During this period Northern Ireland sent troops to aid the Allies, and provided bases for operations within the country. American forces were stationed there for considerable time, and other allied troops were trained there. Southern Ireland remained neutral during the war, and Eamon De Valera says that he is satisfied to leave the part played by the Irish of the Free State to the verdict of history. It is admitted that the Free State rendered substantial economic aid, and shipped enormous supplies of food stuffs to England. A <sup>number</sup> of men and women war workers went to England to work on the farms and in the factories, and 150,000 I



...with a government similar to the government of either of them.

Civil war continued. There were numerous clashes between the Free State

forces and the opposition. In December 1922 the final stage of the

necessary legislation were passed in London. Timothy Healy was appointed

as Governor-General of the Irish Free State, and peace seemed to reign.

In 1921 a parliament was organized for Northern Ireland or

Ulster with headquarters in Belfast. A Cabinet was formed with Sir James

Craig as Prime Minister.

There are two separate governments in Ireland. Northern

Ireland or Ulster has its capital in Belfast, while Southern Ireland

the Irish Free State, or Eire has its capital in Dublin.

During recent years the outlawed Irish Republican Army has

caused a number of explosions in Great Britain, and members have been

imprisoned for their part in them.

THE SECOND WORLD WAR ... 1939-1945.

During this period Northern Ireland sent troops to aid the

Allies, and provided bases for operations within the country. American

forces were stationed there for considerable time, and other allied

troops were trained there. Southern Ireland remained neutral during

the war, and Eamon De Valera says that he is satisfied to leave the

part played by the Irish of the Free State to the verdict of history.

It is admitted that the Free State rendered substantial economic aid,

and shipped enormous supplies of food stuffs to England. A number of

men and women war workers went to England to work on the farms and in

the factories, and 150,000 I



Irish volunteers served in the Allied armed forces.

#### SOCIAL CONDITIONS:

To-day there is no State Church in Ireland. The Irish are a kindly people and industrious. They have emigrated to various countries and have become useful and leading citizens. The life of the poorer classes has been one continuous struggle so that it has established a part of the national character. Friction between the Protestants and the Catholics has caused considerable suffering.

The population in 1821 was 6,800,000. In 1841 it was 8,196,000. Between 1845 and 1847 the potato crop failed. Famine occurred. Emigration started, and every census since has shown a decline. In 1911 the population was 4,390,219. Between 1926 and 1936 it declined by 3,572, so one may conclude that the Irish population has been decreasing at an alarming rate.

Over two-thirds of the people in Ireland live under rural conditions, but there is a general movement from the rural areas to the towns and cities with the result that the rural sections are suffering. The educational system is strongly centralized. A board of commissioners has absolute control.

In western Ireland some of the counties became so over-crowded because poor tenants who had been evicted from their holdings moved there. These had lived in the more fertile districts, and they had to move into less fertile areas so that there was wide-spread suffering. During the harvest season there was a regular migration of these people to England and Scotland where they worked in the fields.

A Congested District Board was created in 1891. It had as its



Irish volunteers served in the Allied armed forces.

## SOCIAL CONDITIONS

To-day there is no State Church in Ireland. The Irish are a

kindly people and industrious. They have emigrated to various countries

and have become useful and leading citizens. The life of the poorer

classes has been one continuous struggle so that it has established a

part of the national character. Friction between the Protestants and

the Catholics has caused considerable suffering.

The population in 1821 was 6,800,000. In 1841 it was 8,125,000.

Between 1845 and 1847 the potato crop failed. Famine occurred. Emigration

started, and every census since has shown a decline. In 1911 the population

was 4,300,000. Between 1926 and 1938 it declined by 3,375,000, so one may

conclude that the Irish population has been decreasing at an alarming rate.

Over two-thirds of the people in Ireland live under rural

conditions, but there is a general movement from the rural areas to the

towns and cities with the result that the rural sections are suffering.

The educational system is strongly centralized. A board of commissioners

has absolute control.

In western Ireland some of the counties became so over-crowded

because poor tenants who had been evicted from their holdings moved there.

These had lived in the more fertile districts, and they had to move into

less fertile areas so that there was wide-spread suffering. During the

harvest season there was a regular migration of these people to England

and Scotland where they worked in the fields.

A Congested District Board was created in 1891. It had as its



function the bettering of conditions in the congested regions. Some families were induced to move; others were given larger holdings, and better agricultural methods were introduced. Over \$1,000,000 is expended annually by the Board, and it is felt that the results have fully justified the outlay.

---

EAMON DE VALERA.....1883...Present Time.

He was born in Brooklyn sixty four years ago. His father was Spanish, and his mother was Irish. His father died when he was two years of age, and he was taken to Ireland and raised by his grand-mother. He was a brilliant student, and won his education through scholarships until he could earn his schooling by teaching Latin, Greek, and mathematics. Prior to 1916 he was teaching higher mathematics in the cloisters of Maynooth, the great Irish school for educating priests.

In 1916 he was one of the commanders of the revolutionary forces that seized Dublin on Easter Monday, when the Irish rose against the English. From 1917 to 1922 he was head of the revolutionary movement and government, and from 1922 to 1932 he was second only to President Cosgrave. He has been the leader of the Government in Southern Ireland for the past fourteen years.

He is a statesman and a politician. To his intimates he is referred to as "Dev," or he is given his official title which is "An Taoiseach" which is pronounced "On Thee-shuk." This title is Gaelic for the leader or the chieftain of the clan.

All agree that he is a trifle mystical and stubborn, a bit grand, gloomy, and peculiar, but they attribute these qualities to his Irish and Spanish ancestry. Some say that he is a dictator, but he is



in the bettering of conditions in the congested regions. Some families were induced to move; others were given larger holdings, and better agricultural methods were introduced. Over \$1,000,000 is expended annually by the Board, and it is felt that the results have fully justified the outlay.

RAMON DE VALERA...Present Time.

He was born in Barcelona sixty four years ago. His father was Spanish, and his mother was Irish. His father died when he was two years of age, and he was taken to Ireland and raised by his grand-mother. He was a brilliant student, and won his education through scholarships until he could earn his schooling by teaching Latin, Greek, and mathematics. Prior to 1916 he was teaching higher mathematics in the cloisters of Maynooth, the great Irish school for educating priests. In 1916 he was one of the commanders of the revolutionary forces that seized Dublin on Easter Monday, when the Irish rose against the English. From 1917 to 1922 he was head of the revolutionary movement and government, and from 1922 to 1923 he was second only to President Cosgrave. He has been the leader of the Government in Southern Ireland for the past fourteen years. He is a statesman and a politician. To his intimates he is referred to as "Dev," or he is given his official title which is "An Taoiseach," which is pronounced "On Thoo-shah." This title is Gaelic for the leader or the chieftain of the clan. All agree that he is a trifle mystical and stoic, a bit grand, gloomy, and peculiar, but they attribute these qualities to his Irish and Spanish ancestry. Some say that he is a dictator, but he is



the greatest popular leader of the Irish since the days of Parnell, and Daniel O'Connell.

He is credited with the manipulation of the economic war with England, with the elimination of the payment of land-purchase annuities; with persuading the English to remove their troops out of Irish ports; and with gaining a degree of self-sufficiency and freedom for the Irish that was undreamed of through centuries of struggle. During the Second World War his government remained neutral, and he says that he is willing to leave the verdict to history. On the record there is the evidence of the assistance rendered to the allies even though Southern Ireland wasn't actively engaged in hostilities. There was economic aid, enormous food shipments to England, the supply of an army of men and women war workers for English farms and factories, and 150,000 volunteers who served in the allied forces, and a great many airmen who were forced down on the soil of Irish Free State, who mysteriously found themselves transported back to allied headquarters in Northern Ireland.

De Valera has been Prime Minister of Eire in which the parliament is called the Dail (rhymes with Moll). He has been the leader of the Fianna Fail Party which controlled seventy-six seats of the possible one-hundred and thirty-eight.

As a statesman he has few equals in the world arena. As a politician he has none. The subtlety of his manoeuvres have won point after point, and have advanced the status of Eire step by step until it has reached its present place in world affairs.



the greatest popular leader of the Irish since the days of Parnell.

and Daniel O'Connell.

He is credited with the manipulation of the economic war with

England, with the elimination of the payment of land-purchase annuities;

with persuading the English to remove their troops out of Irish ports;

and with gaining a degree of self-sufficiency and freedom for the Irish

that was unknown of through centuries of struggle. During the second

world war his government remained neutral, and he says that he is willing

to leave the verdict to history. On the record there is the evidence of

the assistance rendered to the allies even though Southern Ireland wasn't

actively engaged in hostilities. There was economic aid, enormous food

shipments to England, the supply of an army of men and women war workers

for English farms and factories, and 150,000 volunteers who served in

the allied forces, and a great many airmen who were forced down on the

soil of Irish Free State, who mysteriously found themselves transported

back to allied headquarters in Northern Ireland.

De Valera has been Prime Minister of Eire in which the parliament

is called the Dail (Eireann with Hail). He has been the leader of the

Fianna Fail Party which controlled seventy-six seats of the possible

one-hundred and thirty-eight.

As a statesman he has few equals in the world arena. As a

politician he has none. The subtlety of his manoeuvres have won point

after point, and have advanced the status of Eire step by step until

it has reached its present place in world affairs.







